L Number	Hits	Search Text	DB	Time stamp
1	305	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:53
2	45	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:11
3	9	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:08
4	36	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:49
5	33	(((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT)) AND DELAY$6	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:56
6	3	(((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT)) NOT ((((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT)) AND DELAY$6)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:49
7	274	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND STROBE$6	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:55
8	13	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:53
9	4	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND JITTER) AND STROBE$6) AND AGILENT)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:53
10	333	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR (OPTICAL ADJ PULSE$6))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:05
11	272	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR (OPTICAL ADJ PULSE$6))) AND DELAY$6	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:56
12	230	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR (OPTICAL ADJ PULSE$6))) AND DELAY$6) AND PULSE$7	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 13:56

13	56	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR (OPTICAL ADJ PULSE$6))) AND DELAY$6) AND JITTER$7	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:06
14	1391	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTONIC$6)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:06
15	1430	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:14
16	113	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:08
17	12	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7) AND AGILENT	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:19
18	101	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7) AND AGILENT)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:08
19	1539	((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:56
21	1044	(MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:09
23	292	CONTROL$9 ADJ JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:17
24	0	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND (CONTROL$9 ADJ JITTER)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:21
22	9	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:17
25	2	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER)) AND AGILENT	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:19
26	7	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER)) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER)) AND AGILENT)	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 14:29

28	101	((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND JITTER) NOT ((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:21
29	10	(((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND JITTER) NOT ((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND ((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER))) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7) NOT (((((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8)) AND JITTER$7) AND AGILENT))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:21
27	110	(((SAMPLERS OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUITS) OR ((FIRST OR SECOND) ADJ (SAMPLER OR (SAMPLING ADJ CIRCUIT))))) AND (STROBE$6 OR OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6)) AND JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:26
30	7	(ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:40
31	1048	(((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER) OR ((ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:51
32	43	((((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER) OR ((ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER))) AND STROBE$8	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 15:52
33	101	((((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER) OR ((ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER))) AND (STROBE$6 OR ((OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6) ADJ PULSE$7))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:06
34	101	((((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER) OR ((ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER))) AND (STROBE$6 OR ((OPTICAL$6 OR PHOTON$8 OR LASER$6) ADJ PULSE$7))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:08
35	523	(STROBE$6 WITH ((GENERAT$8 OR TRIGGER$8) ADJ PULSE$7))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:09
36	13	((STROBE$6 WITH ((GENERAT$8 OR TRIGGER$8) ADJ PULSE$7))) AND JITTER	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:22
37	2	((STROBE$6 WITH ((GENERAT$8 OR TRIGGER$8) ADJ PULSE$7))) AND ((((MEASUR$9 OR CALCULAT$9 OR DETERMIN$9) ADJ JITTER) OR ((ASSESS$9) ADJ JITTER)))	USPAT; US-PGPUB; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	2004/03/17 16:22

PAT-NO: JP02002139553A

DOCUMENT-IDENTIFIER: JP 2002139553 A

TITLE: APPARATUS FOR SPECIFYING END POSITION OF ELECTRONIC CIRCUIT ELEMENT AND FOR MEASURING JITTER

PUBN-DATE: May 17, 2002

INVENTOR-INFORMATION:

NAME	COUNTRY
WEST, BURNELL E	N/A

ASSIGNEE-INFORMATION:

NAME	COUNTRY
SCHLUMBERGER TECHNOL INC	N/A

APPL-NO: JP2001252110

APPL-DATE: August 22, 2001

PRIORITY-DATA: 2000064871 6 (August 25, 2000)

INT-CL (IPC): G01R031/28, G01R029/02 , G01R031/319

ABSTRACT:

PROBLEM TO BE SOLVED: To accurately measure a delay in propagation, setup
time, and retention time of an electronic circuit element such as IC with an automatic inspection apparatus.

SOLUTION: This apparatus includes a strobe source 10 connected to the control terminal of a pattern source 1 and to the input terminal of a variable clock signal delaying means 12. The strobe source 10 triggers the pattern source so that signals consisting of a series of logic '0' and '1' are output to the input terminal of a device (DUT) 4 to be tested. The DUT 4 propagates this logic series to a flip-flop 6. The signals which have propagated the first and second flip-flops 6 and 8 are corrected after delay. By matching clock signal ends to the flip-flops with data signal ends, the delay time of the DUT is calculated.

(19)日本国特許庁（ＪＰ）　(12) **公開特許公報（Ａ）**　(11)特許出願公開番号
特開2002－139553
（P2002－139553A）
(43)公開日　平成14年５月17日(2002.5.17)

(51)Int.Cl.'	識別記号	ＦＩ		テーマコード'(参考)
Ｇ０１Ｒ　31/28		Ｇ０１Ｒ　29/02	Ｌ	２Ｇ１３２
29/02		31/28	Ｈ	
31/319			Ｒ	

審査請求　未請求　請求項の数27　ＯＬ　（全 18 頁）

(21)出願番号　特願2001－252110(P2001－252110)
(22)出願日　平成13年８月22日(2001.8.22)
(31)優先権主張番号　０９／６４８７１６
(32)優先日　平成12年８月25日(2000.8.25)
(33)優先権主張国　米国（ＵＳ）

(71)出願人　500361319
シュルンベルジェ　テクノロジーズ，インコーポレーテッド
アメリカ合衆国　カリフォルニア州　95134－2302　サンホゼ，ベイテック　ドライブ　150
(72)発明者　バーネル　イー．ウェスト
アメリカ合衆国　カリフォルニア州　94539　フリーモント，センティネル　ドライブ　46750
(74)代理人　100065916
弁理士　内原　晋

Ｆターム(参考)　2G132 AD07 AG02 AG08 AL11

(54)【発明の名称】　電子回路素子の端部位置特定およびジッタの測定装置

(57)【要約】　（修正有）
【課題】自動検査装置によるＩＣなど電子回路素子の伝播遅延、セットアップ時間および保留時間の正確な測定。
【解決方法】この装置は、パターン源（１）の制御端子および可変クロック信号遅延手段（１２）の入力端子に接続しているストローブ源（１０）を含む。ストローブ源（１０）は、パターン源をトリガして論理「０」および「１」の系列から成る信号を被試験デバイス（ＤＵＴ）（４）の入力端子に出力させる。ＤＵＴ（４）は、この論理系列をフリップフロップ（６）に伝播する。第１および第２のフリップフロップ（６），（８）を伝播した信号を遅延の後補足する。フリップフロップへのクロック信号端をデータ信号端と一致させることによってＤＵＴの遅延時間を算出する。

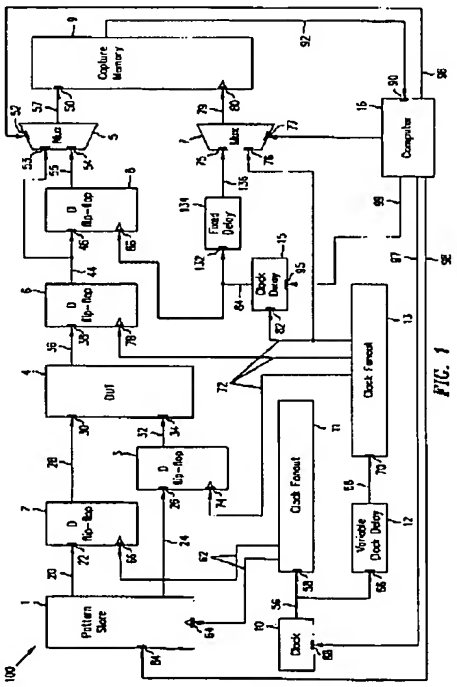


FIG. 1

1

【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項１】被検電子回路素子の特性を測定する装置であって、

出力端子を有するストローブ源と、

前記被検電子回路素子の入力端子に接続される出力端子と、前記ストローブ源の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子とを有するパターン源と、

前記ストローブ源の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、出力端子とを有する可変遅延手段と、

前記被検電子回路素子の出力端子に接続される入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、出力端子とを有する第１の蓄積素子と、

前記第１の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、出力端子とを有する第２の蓄積素子とを含む測定装置。

【請求項２】前記第２の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子とを有するメモリをさらに含む請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項３】前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子と前記第２の蓄積素子の前記クロック端子との間に接続した遅延手段をさらに含む請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項４】前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子と前記第２の蓄積素子の前記クロック端子との間に接続したゲート手段であって、

前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と出力端子とを有するカウンタと、

前記カウンタの前記出力端子に接続した第１の入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続した第２の入力端子と前記第２の蓄積素子の前記クロック端子に接続した出力端子とを有するＡＮＤゲートとを含むゲート手段をさらに含む請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項５】前記第２の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記ゲート手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子とを有するメモリをさらに含む請求項４記載の装置。

【請求項６】前記ゲート手段の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記メモリの前記クロック端子に接続した出力端子とを有する遅延手段をさらに含む請求項５記載の装置。

【請求項７】前記ストローブ源がゲート回路付きのリング発振器を含む請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項８】前記可変遅延手段が、

その可変遅延手段の前記入力端子となる第１の端部と第２の端部とを有する第１の可調整空気誘電体遅延線と、

前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子となる第１の端部と第２の端部とを有する第２の可調整空気誘電体遅延線と、

前記第１および第２の遅延線の各々の前記第２の端部を結合する結合点と、

2

前記第１および第２の遅延線の各々の前記第１の端部を取り付けた基底板と、

前記第１および第２の遅延線の前記結合した第２の端部を取り付けた直線状位置定め台とを含む請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項９】前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子を前記被検電子回路素子のクロック端子に接続される請求項１記載の装置。

【請求項１０】前記第１の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子を有するメモリをさらに含む請求項９記載の装置。

【請求項１１】前記パターン源の第２の出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、前記被検電子回路素子のクロック端子に接続される出力端子とを有する第３の蓄積素子をさらに含む請求項９記載の装置。

【請求項１２】前記ストローブ源の入力端子に接続した出力端子を有するコンピュータをさらに含み、それによって前記ストローブ源のストローブ動作の開始および終了を制御する請求項２記載の装置。

【請求項１３】前記メモリを前記コンピュータの入力端子に接続した出力端子を有する請求項１２記載の装置。

【請求項１４】被検電子回路素子の特性を測定する装置であって、

出力端子を有するストローブ源と、

前記被検電子回路素子の入力端子に接続される出力端子と、前記ストローブ源の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子とを有するパターン源と、

前記ストローブ源の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記被検電子回路素子のクロック端子に接続される出力端子とを有する可変遅延手段と、

前記被検電子回路素子の出力端子に接続される入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、出力端子とを有する第１の蓄積素子とを含む測定装置。

【請求項１５】前記第２の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子とを有するメモリをさらに含む請求項１４記載の装置。

【請求項１６】前記パターン源の第２の出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記可変遅延素子の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、前記被検電子回路素子のクロック端子に接続される出力端子とを有する第２の蓄積素子をさらに含む請求項１４記載の装置。

【請求項１７】前記ストローブ源がゲート回路付きのリング発振器を含む請求項１４記載の装置。

【請求項１８】前記可変遅延手段が、

その可変遅延手段の前記入力端子となる第１の端部と第２の端部とを有する第１の可調整空気誘電体遅延線と、

前記可変遅延手段の前記出力端子となる第１の端部と第

2の端部とを有する第2の可調整空気誘電体遅延線と、前記第1および第2の遅延線の各々の前記第2の端部を結合する結合点と、

前記第1および第2の遅延線の各々の前記第1の端部を取り付けた基底板と、

前記第1および第2の遅延線の前記結合した第2の端部を取り付けた直線状位置定め台とを含む請求項14記載の装置。

【請求項19】前記第1の蓄積素子の前記出力端子に接続した入力端子と、前記クロック遅延素子の前記出力端子に接続したクロック端子と、前記捕捉メモリの前記入力端子に接続した出力端子とを有する第2の蓄積素子をさらに含む請求項14記載の装置。

【請求項20】前記ストローブ源の入力端子に接続した出力端子を有するコンピュータをさらに含み、それによって前記ストローブ源の開始および終了を制御する請求項19記載の装置。

【請求項21】前記捕捉メモリを前記コンピュータの入力端子に接続した出力端子を有する請求項19記載の装置。

【請求項22】被検電子回路素子の特性を測定する方法であって、

前記被検電子回路素子に入力信号を第1の時点で供給する過程と、

前記被検電子回路素子の出力信号を前記第1の時点のあとの第2の時点で第1の蓄積素子経由で伝搬させる過程と、

前記第1の蓄積素子の出力信号を前記第2の時点のあとの第3の時点で第2の蓄積素子経由で伝搬させる過程と、

前記第2の蓄積素子の前記出力信号を前記第3の時点のあとの第4の時点で蓄積する過程とを含む方法。

【請求項23】請求項22記載の前記諸過程を繰り返す過程をさらに含む請求項22記載の方法。

【請求項24】前記第1の時点と第2の時点との間の時間長を変動させる過程と、請求項22記載の諸過程を繰り返す過程とをさらに含む請求項22記載の方法。

【請求項25】被検電子回路素子の特性を測定する方法であって、

前記被検電子回路素子に入力信号を第1の時点で供給する過程と、

前記被検電子回路素子を前記第1の時点のあとの第2の時点でクロックする過程と、

前記第1の素子の出力信号を前記第2の時点のあとの第3の時点で蓄積素子経由で伝搬させる過程と、

前記第1の蓄積素子の前記出力信号を前記第3の時点のあとの第4の時点で蓄積する過程とを含む方法。

【請求項26】請求項25記載の前記諸過程を繰り返す過程をさらに含む請求項25記載の方法。

【請求項27】前記第1の時点と第2の時点との間の時間長を変動させる過程と、請求項25記載の諸過程を繰り返す過程とをさらに含む請求項25記載の方法。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は概括的には電子回路素子の試験に関し、より詳しくいうと試験対象の電子回路素子の伝搬遅延、セットアップ時間および保留時間を測定する装置および方法に関する。

【0002】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】最新の電子装置およびそれら電子装置の試験システムの設計には電子回路素子の伝搬遅延、セットアップ時間および保留時間の正確な測定が必要である。信号のタイミングの測定は、ディジタルシステムにおける論理0と論理1とを表す二つの電圧レベルの遷移である信号端として信号を特徴づけ、特定の位置を基準としてその信号端を位置特定する精度を特定することと説明できる。

【0003】半導体集積回路（IC）の特徴把握および品質検査合否判定のための自動検査装置は±50ピコ秒（ps）単位で測定した信号端位置特定精度を仕様書でしばしば求められる。それら自動検査システムの信号端位置特定精度は、その自動検査システムのタイミング経路で多数の互いに異なる回路素子に起因する累積誤差を伴う。それら回路素子の特徴把握および合否判定は自動検査装置の性能よりもずっと高い精度で行われなければならない。すなわち、それら回路素子の各々に起因する誤差が上記経路で累積されるからである。また、それら誤差が構造的なものである場合は、その性質に応じて直接に加算される。さらに、それら誤差がランダム雑音に起因する場合は2乗の和の平方根をとる形で加算される。したがって、自動検査装置のタイミング経路の中の回路素子全部によるタイミング誤差の構造的成分およびランダム成分を高精度で把握することが、自動検査装置の上記信号端位置特定の所要精度を充足するために必要である。

【0004】電気信号のタイミング特性の測定装置としては、リアルタイムオシロスコープ、サンプリングオシロスコープ、時間間隔測定装置、スペクトル分析器など種々の装置がある。それら装置の精度および安定度の測定には、高精度の既知の遅延量を有する遅延経路を通過した信号を測定する手法が用いられる。これら装置による測定値を上記遅延経路の既知の長さから導いた遅延量と比較する。その遅延経路は例えば同軸信号線で構成する。同軸信号線においては、電気信号の伝搬遅延は、真空中の光速に同軸信号線内側導体と外側導体との間の誘電体の誘電率の平方根の逆数を乗算した値であることが周知である。この誘電体は同軸信号線が剛性の金属である場合は空気とすることもできる。空気の誘電率は任意の温度および湿度について既知である。周知の同軸信号線の一例としては、U字型接続点で対にした二つの可変

長剛性空気誘電体遅延線、通称「トロンボーン」が挙げられる。

【０００５】慣用の高性能オシロスコープの精度は１／２乃至１ピコ秒である。より高精度の自動試験装置に対する需要が高まるに伴って、自動試験装置の構成部分の特徴把握および合否判定に用いられるより高精度の装置に対する需要が高まっている。したがって、自動試験装置の電子回路素子（集積回路や個別部品など）を高精度で特徴把握して合否判定できる装置および方法が必要になっている。

【０００６】

【課題を解決するための手段】この発明によると、トランジスタ、集積回路、集積回路配線などの電子回路素子による信号伝搬遅延を比較する装置が得られる。この装置は、パターン源の制御端子および可変クロック信号遅延手段の入力端子に接続した出力線を備えるストローブ源を含む。ストローブ源はパターン源をトリガして論理「０」および「１」の系列から成る信号を被検デバイス（ＤＵＴ）の入力端子に出力させる。ＤＵＴはこの論理「０」および「１」の系列をフリップフロップ（またはそれ以外の蓄積素子）に伝搬する。第１のフリップフロップはＤＵＴからの信号をその第１のフリップフロップが可変クロック信号遅延手段でクロックされる度ごとに第２のフリップフロップ（またはそれ以外の蓄積素子）に伝搬する。第２のフリップフロップは第１のフリップフロップからの信号をクロック信号受信に応答して伝搬する。

【０００７】ＤＵＴの伝搬遅延の比較のために、パターン源は論理「０」および「１」の同じ系列を各ＤＵＴに供給する。クロック信号端を第１のフリップフロップとの間で動かすように可変クロック信号遅延手段を用い、第１のフリップフロップがクロック信号端とデータ信号端（すなわち、ＤＵＴ出力信号に生ずる一つの論理状態からもう一つの論理状態への遷移）とをほぼ同時に受けるようにする。このタイミング一致はフリップフロップをトリガしてメタ安定状態と呼ばれる短時間の既知の中間状態にする。第２のフリップフロップは第１のフリップフロップの出力信号を蓄積して第１のフリップフロップのメタ安定状態を終了させる。

【０００８】第１のフリップフロップがクロック信号端およびデータ信号端をほぼ同時に受けると、第１のフリップフロップの出力信号は、その第１のフリップフロップのセットアップ時間またはホールド時間が確保されなかった場合に第１のフリップフロップの正常伝搬遅延で不安定になる（すなわち、論理「０」と「１」との間で変動する）。クロック信号端とデータ信号端とが正常伝搬遅延で出力信号を予測不可能にするほど接近する時間範囲はメタ安定性領域と呼ばれる。クロック信号端とデータ信号端とが正常伝搬遅延よりもずっと長い時間の経過後に出力信号を予測不可能にするほど接近する範囲は曖昧領域と呼ばれる。フリップフロップの出力信号の安定に要する通常の伝搬遅延以上の時間を与えればこの曖昧領域は狭くできる。クロック信号端を時間的に第１のフリップフロップに向けて前後に動かすことによって、第２のフリップフロップの記録した第１のフリップフロップの出力信号から曖昧領域（データ信号端を含む）を算定する。したがって、第２のフリップフロップが第１のフリップフロップの正常伝搬時間以上の延長時間（延長遅延）のあと第１のフリップフロップの出力信号を伝搬させればデータ信号端の生起時点を高精度で特定できる。

【０００９】一つの実施例では、可変クロック遅延信号で第１のフリップフロップおよび第２のフリップフロップを同時にクロックし、これによって、第１のフリップフロップの出力信号の伝搬にクロック信号繰返し周期一つ分の遅延を第２のフリップフロップが与える。１クロック周期の遅延はデータ信号端の到達時点特定のための短い曖昧領域の形成に必要な延長遅延を与える。同じ入力および同じ延長遅延の下でＤＵＴのための曖昧領域を形成する可変クロック遅延の遅延量を把握したのち、どのＤＵＴの伝搬遅延が最小であるかを判定するようにそれら遅延量を比較する。したがって、この発明の装置および方法は互いに異なるＤＵＴの伝搬遅延を高精度で特性把握し合否判定する。

【００１０】また、この発明によるとＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間の比較装置を提供できる。一つの実施例では、可変クロック遅延手段がクロック信号をＤＵＴに供給する。ＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を比較するために、パターン源から論理「０」および「１」の同じ系列を各ＤＵＴに供給する。可変クロック遅延手段は、ＤＵＴがクロック信号端とデータ信号端（すなわち、ＤＵＴ入力の一つの論理状態からもう一つの論理状態への遷移）とをほぼ同時に受けるようにクロック信号端を各ＤＵＴに向けて前後に動かすのに用いられる。第１のフリップフロップはＤＵＴからの出力の記録に用いられる。

【００１１】ＤＵＴがクロック信号端をデータ信号端とほぼ同時に受けると、ＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間が確保されなかった場合にＤＵＴ伝搬遅延では予測不可能になる（すなわち、論理「０」と「１」との間で変動する）。ＤＵＴのセットアップ時間は、クロック信号端の到達時点がデータ信号端よりも十分あとでない場合は、不十分である。ＤＵＴのホールド時間は、クロック信号端の到達時点がデータ信号端よりも十分に前でない場合は不十分である。したがって、クロック信号端とデータ信号端との時間間隔がＤＵＴ出力信号を予測不可能にするほど短くなる時間範囲（曖昧範囲）は、第１のフリップフロップによるＤＵＴ出力信号記録時の伝搬遅延でのＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間の和である。クロック信号端を前後に動かすこ

とによって、同じ伝搬遅延での各ＤＵＴの曖昧領域は、第１のフリップフロップの記録したＤＵＴ出力信号から定まる。

【００１２】一つの実施例では、ＤＵＴと第１のフリップフロップとを可変クロック遅延手段でクロックし、それによって第１のフリップフロップのＤＵＴ出力信号記録時の伝搬遅延に１クロック周期分の遅延を与える。すなわち、各ＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を１クロック周期の伝搬遅延で算定する。ＤＵＴの曖昧領域全てをこの伝搬遅延で生ずる可変クロック遅延の遅延量が算定すると、どのＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間が最小であるかを判定するための比較が可能になる。したがって、この発明の装置および方法は、互いに異なるＤＵＴのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間の特性把握および合否判定を高精度で行うことができる。

【００１３】

【発明の実施の形態】同一構成要素には全図を通じて同一参照数字を付けて示した図面の図１にこの発明による試験装置１００のブロック図を示す。パターン蓄積装置１は信号端によりトリガされるＤフリップフロップの入力端子２２に接続した出力線２０を備える。パターン蓄積装置１は信号端トリガを受けるもう一つのＤフリップフロップ３の入力端子２６に接続した出力線２４を併せ備える。パターン蓄積装置１は、被検デバイス（ＤＵＴ）４を試験するための論理「０」および「１」のパターン（テストパターン）一つ以上を蓄積している。パターン蓄積装置１はポート８４経由で慣用のコンピュータ１６からテストパターンを受ける。パターン蓄積装置１は、例えばIllinois州Schaumburg所在のMotorola社製Motorola MC10H145型１６×４ビットレジスタファイルで構成する。フリップフロップ２および３は、例えばMotorolaMC10EL52型差動データクロックＤフリップフロップで構成する。ＤＵＴ４としては、集積回路、プリント板配線層、固定遅延線、コネクタ、電光変換器ほかの電子部品、すなわち授受信号の伝搬の特性捕捉および合否判定を要する電子部品がある。当業者には明らかなとおり、装置１００の機能の制御用に、慣用のコンピュータの代わりにマイクロプロセッサまたはマイクロコントローラを用いることもできる。

【００１４】フリップフロップ２はＤＵＴ４（装置１００の一部ではない）の入力端子３０に接続した出力線２８を備える。フリップフロップ３はＤＵＴ４の入力端子３４に接続した出力線３２を備える。一つの構成例では、端子３４はクロック入力端とする。その構成例では、フリップフロップ２はＤＵＴ４への入力（データ）信号を供給し、フリップフロップ３はＤＵＴ４へのクロック信号を供給する。ＤＵＴ４はそのピンに合致するソケット付きの慣用の試験用取付具を通じて装置１００に結合する。

【００１５】パターン蓄積装置１の出力線２０および２４はそれぞれの入力端子に直結できる。しかし、テストパターンが複雑になると、パターン蓄積装置１の出力信号タイミングの精度は低下する。したがって、パターン蓄積装置１の出力信号タイミングに追加の制御をかけるようにフリップフロップ２および３を用いる。これらフリップフロップ２および３は、パターン蓄積装置１と同じくロック信号を受けるので、パターン蓄積装置１からの信号を１クロック周期遅延を伴ってＤＵＴ４に伝搬させる。

【００１６】ＤＵＴ４は信号端トリガを受けるＤフリップフロップ６の入力端子３８に接続した出力線３６を備える。フリップフロップ６は信号端トリガを受けるＤフリップフロップ８の入力端子４６およびマルチプレクサ（Ｍｕｘ）５の入力端子５３に接続した出力線４４を備える。フリップフロップ８はＭｕｘ５の入力端子に接続した出力線５５を備える。Ｍｕｘ５は捕捉メモリ９の入力端子５０に接続した出力線５７を備える。Ｍｕｘ５は制御端子５２を通じてコンピュータ１６で制御する。捕捉メモリ９はパターン蓄積装置１と同じ種類のもので構成する。フリップフロップ６および８はフリップフロップ２および３と同じ種類のもので構成する。

【００１７】クロック信号源（ストローブ源）１０はクロックファンアウト１１のクロック端子５８および可変クロック遅延素子１２のクロック端子６６に接続した出力線５６を備える。クロック１０は慣用のコンピュータ１６により制御端子８８経由で制御する（例えば、他の構成要素のクロック信号供給の有無の制御）。クロックファンアウト１１は、例えばCalifornia州San Diego所在のEdge Semiconductor社製のEdgeE118型クロックファンアウトで構成する。

【００１８】図２は可変クロック遅延装置１２の構成を示す。この可変クロック遅延装置１２は、一方の端部をＵ字状結合部材２０６で互いに結合した直線状位置定め台２０８に取り付けるとともに他方の端部を基底板２１０に取り付けた二つの可調整剛性空気誘電体遅延線２０２および２０４を備える（この構成全体がトロンボーンという通称で知られる）。このトロンボーンは、例えばNew Jersey州Livingston所在のMicrofab/FXR社製のST-05SMA型装置で構成できる。直線状位置定め台２０８は、分解能少なくとも０.０２mmのバーニャ調節機構で調節可能であり、これによってトロンボーン全体の総合遅延量の分解能を少なくとも１２フェムト秒としている。

【００１９】クロックファンアウト１１はパターン蓄積装置１のクロック端子６４とフリップフロップ２のクロック端子６６とに接続したクロック出力線６２を有する。パターン蓄積装置１はクロックされると論理「０」または「１」をフリップフロップ２に出力する。クロック遅延装置はクロックファンアウト１１と同種の装置であるクロックファンアウト１３のクロック端子７０に接

続したクロック出力線６８を有する。クロックファンアウト１３はフリップフロップ3のクロック端子７４、フリップフロップ6のクロック端子７８、クロック遅延素子１５のクロック端子８２およびＭｕｘ７の入力端子７６に接続したクロック出力線７２を有する。クロック遅延素子１５はフリップフロップ8のクロック端子８６および固定遅延素子１３４の入力端子１３２に接続したクロック出力線８４を有する。固定遅延素子１３４はＭｕｘ７の入力端子に接続した出力線１３６を有する。固定遅延素子は例えば約０．５ナノ秒（例えば長さ３インチ）のプリント板導体線条で構成される。Ｍｕｘ７は制御端子７７を通じてコンピュータ９０から制御を受ける。

【００２０】図３Ａは以下クロック遅延素子１５－１と呼ぶクロック遅延素子１５の構成を示す。クロック遅延素子１５－１では、端子８２を出力線８４に直結する。クロック遅延素子１５－１は、フリップフロップ6からフリップフロップ8に伝搬する信号にクロック繰返し周期一つ分の遅延を与えるのにＤフリップフロップの動作を利用する。クロック遅延素子１５－１を用いる場合はフリップフロップ6および8を同じクロック信号でクロックする。したがって、フリップフロップ6がフリップフロップ8に信号を出力する場合は、フリップフロップ8は次のクロックでクロックされるまでその信号を伝搬させない。

【００２１】図３Ｂは以下クロック遅延素子１５－２と呼ぶクロック遅延１５のもう一つの構成例を示す。クロック遅延素子１５－２は線１０６経由で端子８２に接続した入力端子１０４を有するＡＮＤゲート１０２を含む。ＡＮＤゲート１０２はプログラマブルカウンタ１１２の出力線に接続した入力端子１０８を備える。カウンタ１１２は線１０６経由で端子８２に接続した入力端子１１８に受けるクロックパルスの数をカウントする。カウンタ１１２は、予め設定されたカウントに達すると、線１１０に活性状態の信号を出力する。ＡＮＤゲート１０２は、端子８２からも活性状態の信号を受けると、出力線８４に活性状態の信号を出力する。カウント１１２は、バス１１４経由でポート９５に接続したポート１１６を通じてコンピュータ１６により上記所定の値にセットされる。また、コンピュータ１６はカウンタ１１２の現時点のカウントをポート１１６を通じてリセットする。カウンタ１１２は例えばMotorola MC10E016型８ビット同期２進アップカウンタで構成できる。

【００２２】コンピュータ１６は装置１００の動作を制御する。コンピュータ１６は、Ｍｕｘ７の制御端子７７に接続した出力線９４と、Ｍｕｘ５の制御端子５２に接続した出力線９６と、クロック遅延素子１５のポート９５に接続したバス９９と、クロック源１０の制御端子８８に接続した制御線９７と、パターン蓄積装置１のポート８４に接続したバス９８とに接続した出力線９４を有する。また、コンピュータ１６は捕捉メモリ９の記録した出力結果を受けるように捕捉メモリ９のバス９２に接続したポート９０を備える。一つの構成例では、コンピュータ１６は入出力線制御用の入出力信号レジスタカードを備える。入出力信号レジスタカードは、例えばTexas州Austin所在のNational Instrument社製PCI-6601型カードで構成する。

【００２３】フリップフロップのメタ安定状態は次式、すなわち

$$TW(TD)=TP*10-(\Delta t/\tau)$$

で与えられる。ここでTWは曖昧領域であり、TDは延長遅延であり、TPは正常伝搬遅延であり、Δtは過剰遅延（TD－TP）であり、τはフリップフロップの分解能時定数である。図４はフリップフロップのメタ安定状態で生じた伝搬遅延をクロック入力時点基準のデータ入力時点の関数として示したグラフである。曖昧領域TWは延長遅延TDでフリップフロップの出力信号が予測不可能（「０」と「１」との間で変動する）となるクロック入力時点T0を基準としたデータ入力時点の範囲である。すなわち、延長遅延TDではフリップフロップの出力信号はデータ信号端が範囲TW内のクロック入力時点T0の前か後に到達する場合は予測不可能になる。

【００２４】フリップフロップのこれらの特徴を、ＤＵＴ４のデータ出力時点対応のフリップフロップ6のデータ入力時点（データ信号端）の特定に用いる。装置１００の試験するＤＵＴ全てに同じ入力信号を加える場合は、ＤＵＴの出力信号時点は相対的伝搬遅延に対応する。フリップフロップ6は、遅延線２０２および２０４を変動させることにより可変クロック遅延素子１２で生じた遅延経由で制御したクロック信号入力（クロック信号端）時点の範囲で各ＤＵＴの出力信号を捕捉（伝搬）する。各クロック入力時点のフリップフロップ6の出力を延長遅延TDで繰り返し捕捉する。クロック遅延素子１５は、フリップフロップ6の出力信号を延長遅延TDで捕捉メモリ９に伝搬させるように延長遅延TDでフリップフロップ8にクロック信号を送る。捕捉メモリ９はフリップフロップ8の出力信号を記録し、コンピュータ１６はコンピュータメモリ９の記録データを読み出す。コンピュータ１６は記録データを分析して延長遅延TDの下での曖昧領域、すなわちフリップフロップ6から予測不可能な出力信号を生じさせる少なくとも二つのクロック入力時点（すなわち可変クロック遅延素子１２の二つの遅延設定点）の間に位置する曖昧領域の特定のために、蓄積ずみデータを分析できる。

【００２５】クロック遅延素子１５－２を用いた場合は、フリップフロップ8および捕捉メモリ９は、プログラムカウンタが予め定めたカウントに達した後だけクロックする。クロック遅延素子１５－２を用いると、フリップフロップ8には出力信号１個だけが記録されるのでメモリ節約となる。

【００２６】フリップフロップ８への延長遅延ＴＤはデータ入力時点特定の分解能（データ信号端分解能）を設定する。図４に示すとおり、延長遅延ＴＤをＴＤ１からＴＤ２に増加させると、曖昧領域はＴＷ１からＴＷ２に減少する。上述の実施例は繰返し周期一つ分の延長遅延ＴＤを用いているが、より大きい延長遅延ＴＤもデータ信号端分解能上昇のためにより大きい延長遅延を用いることもできる。しかし、データ信号端分解能は、クロック入力時点調整の分解能（クロック信号端分解能）よりも大きくならないようにする。データ信号端分解能がクロック信号端分解能よりも大きい場合は、出力信号測定値を曖昧領域の片方のデータ入力時点およびもう一方のデータ入力時点に記録することによって省略できる。上述のトロンボーン（図２）はクロック信号端の遅延に高い分解能をもたらし、したがって装置１００を用いて高い分解能でデータ信号端の位置を特定できる。

【００２７】図５はＤＵＴ４への入力信号、ＤＵＴ４の出力信号（フリップフロップ６への入力信号）、フリップフロップ６への種々のクロック信号およびフリップフロップ８の捕捉したフリップフロップ６の出力信号のタイミング図である。時点Ｔ１およびＴ２においては、クロック信号端１２０および１２２は、フリップフロップ６のセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を満たしフリップフロップ６の出力信号が延長遅延ＴＤ（クロック１周期）におけるフリップフロップ８による捕捉時に常に論理「１」になるようにデータ信号端１３０よりも十分に前に到達している。時点Ｔ６においては、クロック信号端１２４はデータ信号端１３０とほぼ同時に到達し、フリップフロップ６のセットアップ時間またはホールド時間が確保されない。このように、フリップフロップ６の出力信号は延長遅延ＴＤにおけるフリップフロップ８による捕捉時に「１」と「０」との間で変動する（図５においてフリップフロップ６の出力に「？」で表示）。時点Ｔ１０およびＴ１１においては、クロック信号端１２６および１２８はデータ信号端１３０よりも十分遅れてフリップフロップ６に到達し、フリップフロップ６のセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を満たし、フリップフロップの出力は延長遅延ＴＤ２におけるフリップフロップ８による捕捉時に常に論理「０」になる。

【００２８】図６は、ＤＵＴ４について遅延２から遅延１０の延長遅延ＴＤで記録した論理「１」の百分比としてフリップフロップ６の出力信号のグラフを示す。一つの構成例では、フリップフロップ６の出力信号を少なくとも１００回測定する。遅延２では、フリップフロップ６の出力信号は全部１である。遅延３から６の範囲では、フリップフロップの出力信号は「１」と「０」との組合せであり、論理「１」の百分比は遅延３から遅延６に向かって減少する。遅延１０ではフリップフロップ６の出力信号は全部「０」になる。このように、少なくとも遅延２と遅延１０との間で延長遅延ＴＤにおいて曖昧領域が位置特定される。またこれは、ＤＵＴ４のデータ出力時点、すなわちＤＵＴ４の伝搬遅延対応のデータ出力時点が分解能ＴＷで遅延２と遅延４との間で位置特定されることを意味する。上述のとおり、延長遅延ＴＤによってはＴＷは小さい時間領域であり得る。Motorola MC10EL52型Ｄフリップフロップでτを２００ps、ＴＰを３６５ps、Δｔ（ＴＤ－ＴＰ）を２.５nsとすると、曖昧領域はわずかに約８フェムト秒に留まる。

【００２９】一つのＤＵＴについての伝搬遅延を可変クロック遅延素子１２（例えば遅延２および遅延１０）の二つの遅延設定の間で位置特定すると、もう一つのＤＵＴを同じセットアップで試験して可変クロック遅延素子１２の遅延設定を基準とした伝搬遅延の位置特定ができる。第１のＤＵＴの遅延設定が第２の遅延設定よりも短い場合は、第１のＤＵＴの伝搬遅延は第２のＤＵＴのそれよりも短い。このようにしてＤＵＴ相互間の相対的伝搬遅延量を算定できる。

【００３０】図７は多様なＤＵＴの伝搬遅延を比較する方法１４０を示す。過程１４２においてコンピュータ１６はテストパターンを蓄積装置１にロードする。オプションの過程１４４において、コンピュータ１６は所定のカウントをクロック遅延素子１５－２にセットする。過程１４６において、コンピュータ１６はＭｕｘ５をセットしてフリップフロップ８の出力線５５を捕捉メモリ９の端子５０に接続する。過程１４８において、コンピュータ１６はＭｕｘ７をセットして固定遅延素子１３４の線１３６を捕捉メモリ９の端子８０に接続する。過程１５０において、装置１００の操作者は可変クロック遅延素子１２の遅延をバーニャ調節機構の手動操作により設定する。代わりに、コンピュータ１６で制御するステップモータをこの可変クロック遅延素子１２のこのバーニャ調節機構に結合することもできる。

【００３１】過程１５２において、コンピュータ１６は上記以外の構成部分にクロック信号をクロック源１０から供給させる。過程１５４において、コンピュータ１６は所定時間の経過後、例えば３クロック周期後にそれら構成部分へのクロック信号の供給を終了させる。第１のクロック信号端では、パターン蓄積装置１はテストパターンの論理「１」を出力する。第２のクロック信号端では、Ｄフリップフロップ２がテストパターンの論理状態をＤＵＴ４に出力する。可変クロック遅延素子１２の生ずる第２のクロック信号端への遅延のあと、Ｄフリップフロップ６がＤＵＴ４の出力信号を捕捉する。その１クロック周期後（遅延ずみの第３のクロック信号端の時点）にＤフリップフロップ８はＤフリップフロップ６の出力信号を捕捉する。固定遅延素子１３４により生じた遅延ずみの第３のクロック信号端への追加の遅延のあと、捕捉メモリ９がＤフリップフロップ８の出力を記録する。

【００３２】過程１５６において、コンピュータ１６は

捕捉メモリ9から記録ずみのデータを読み出す。装置100がクロック遅延素子15－1を用いクロック遅延素子15が3クロック周期経過後にクロック信号供給を終了するようにコンピュータ16で制御する場合は、捕捉メモリ9で三つの論理状態ひと組、すなわち試験結果である最後の論理状態を含む三つの論理状態ひと組を蓄積する。試験を繰り返す度ごとに捕捉メモリは三つの論理状態の次のひと組を蓄積する。可変クロック遅延素子12の上記遅延設定により試験すべてから得た論理状態組の間の最後の論理の比較によって、その遅延設定が曖昧領域の一点に対応するか否かを判定できる。例えば、二つの論理状態組の間で上記最後の論理状態が変動する場合は、その遅延は図4、5および6に示した曖昧領域の中の点に対応する。クロック遅延素子15－1を用いた場合は、捕捉メモリ9は試験結果だけ（最後のビットで）を記録する。クロック遅延素子15－2によって1回だけクロックされるだけだからである。

【0033】過程158において、コンピュータ16（適宜プログラムしてある）は試験のn回目の繰返しが行われるかどうかを判定する。上述のとおり、nは例えば100である。すなわち、可変クロック遅延素子12の遅延設定の各々について、試験を100回繰り返す。現在の繰返しがn以下である場合は、過程158の次にオプションの過程160を行う。または過程158の次に過程162を続ける。オプションの過程160では、コンピュータ16がクロック遅延素子15－2のプログラマブルカウンタの現時点のカウントをリセットする。オプションの過程160のあと過程160を続け、上述の動作過程をn回の繰返し終了まで反復する。

【0034】過程162において、コンピュータ16は曖昧領域を位置特定したか否かを判定する。遅延設定が全部「1」の論理状態（例えば図5の遅延2）の試験結果を生じ、もう一つの論理設定が別の論理状態（例えば図5の遅延10）の試験結果を生じた場合は曖昧領域が位置特定できたことになる。図5に示すとおり、クロック遅延の精度が高いほど曖昧領域の位置特定の精度も高くなる。曖昧領域の位置特定が達成できた場合は、過程162の次に過程164を行い方法140を終了する。または、過程162の次に、可変クロック遅延12のためのもう一つの遅延を設定する過程150を続けて、上述の過程を曖昧領域の位置特定の達成まで反復する。

【0035】装置100のデータ経路の伝搬遅延が既知であれば、DUT4の実際の伝播遅延を算定できる。DUT4が入力を受ける時点は、クロック源10から線56、クロックファンアウト11、フリップフロップ2および線28経由でDUT4に至るデータ経路の通常の較正によって算定できる。DUT4を曖昧領域の中心に置くクロック信号端をフリップフロップが受ける時点は、クロック源10から線56、可変クロック遅延素子12（メタ安定状態を生ずる遅延量に設定してある）、線68、クロックファンアウト13および線72経由でフリップフロップ6に至るデータ経路の較正によって達成できる。DUT4の伝搬遅延はこれら二つの時点の減算によって慣用の較正の精度と同等の精度で算定できる。当業者には明らかなとおり、データ経路の較正は、（1）時間領域反射計測、（2）既知遅延量のDUT（基準ブロック）の挿入、（3）高性能オシロスコープなどの測定装置の利用によって達成できる。

【0036】セットアップ時間とはクロック供給前にデバイスの入力端子でデータが不変のまま留まるべき時間長をいう。ホールド時間とはクロック供給後にデバイス入力端子でデータが不変のまま留まるべき時間長をいう。セットアップ時間およびホールド時間は、そのデバイスが製造業者の特定する伝搬遅延（正常伝搬遅延）で適切な出力信号を生ずるようにするために順守しなければならない。

【0037】セットアップ時間とホールド時間とを測定するために、パターン蓄積装置1およびフリップフロップ2は「0」および「1」から成るテストパターンを生ずる。パターン蓄積装置1はパターン「10」をフリップフロップ2に供給し、DUT4はそのパターンをフリップフロップ2の出力線28から受ける。DUT4はフリップフロップ3の出力線32から端子34に遅延ずみのクロック信号も受ける。フリップフロップ3はパターン「01」をパターン蓄積装置1から受けてDUT4へのクロック信号を発生する。フリップフロップ3は可変遅延素子12で遅延を受けたクロック信号でクロックする。クロック信号端をフリップフロップ3とDUT4との間で授受しフリップフロップ2からDUT4へのデータ信号端と同期させるように可変遅延素子12を用いる。フリップフロップ6はDUT4の出力信号を捕捉する。フリップフロップ6とDUT4とは可変遅延素子12で遅延をかけたクロック信号端を共用するので、フリップフロップ6はDUT4の出力信号を1クロック周期のちに捕捉する。このようにしてセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を1クロック周期の伝搬遅延で測定する。

【0038】DUT4がデータ信号端とほぼ同時にクロック信号端を受けると、DUTのセットアップ時間またはホールド時間が確保できなかった場合に伝搬遅延でDUT4の出力信号が予測不可能になる（すなわち、「0」と「1」との間で変動する）。クロック信号端の到来がデータ信号端の到来よりも十分あとでない場合はDUTのセットアップ時間は確保されない。クロック信号端の到来がデータ信号端の到来よりも十分に前でなければDUTのホールド時間は確保されない。このように、DUTの出力信号が予測不可能になる（曖昧領域）ほどにクロック信号端とデータ信号端とが接近する時間範囲はその伝搬遅延におけるDUTのセットアップ時間とホールド時間との和である。クロック信号端を前後に

動かすことによって、同一伝搬遅延における各ＤＵＴの曖昧領域が第１のフリップフロップの記録したＤＵＴ出力信号から定まる。

【００３９】図８はＤＵＴ４への入力信号、ＤＵＴ４への諸クロック信号およびそれら諸クロック信号でクロックされたときのＤＵＴ４の出力信号のタイミング図である。時点Ｔ１２およびＴ１３（可変クロック遅延素子１２の遅延１２および１３にそれぞれ対応）において、それぞれのクロック信号端１７０および１７２はデータ信号端１７９よりも十分に前にフリップフロップ６に到達してＤＵＴ４のセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を確保しＤＵＴ４の出力信号は１クロック周期の伝搬遅延におけるフリップフロップ６による記録時に常に論理「０」になる。時点Ｔ１４において、クロック信号端１７４はデータ信号端１７９とほぼ同時にＤＵＴ４に到達し、セットアップ時間またはホールド時間は確保されない。したがって、ＤＵＴ４の出力信号は伝搬遅延におけるフリップフロップによる記録時に「１」と「０」との間で変動する（図８においてＤＵＴ４の出力の「？」で表示）。時点Ｔ１５およびＴ１６においては、それぞれのクロック信号端１７６および１７８はデータ信号端１７９よりも十分にあとでＤＵＴ４に到達し、ＤＵＴ４のセットアップ時間およびホールド時間を確保しＤＵＴ４の出力信号は延長遅延ＴＤ２におけるフリップフロップ６による記録時に常に論理「１」になる。このタイミング図において、セットアップ時間とホールド時間との和は最大でも時点Ｔ１３とＴ１５との間隔（可変クロック遅延素子１２で設定した遅延１３および１５に対応）である。ＤＵＴのセットアップ時間とホールド時間との正確な差は遅延１５と遅延１３との差である。

【００４０】図９はＤＵＴのセットアップ時間とホールド時間との比較の方法１８０を示す。過程１８２において、コンピュータ１６はテストパターンをパターン蓄積装置１にロードする。過程１８４において、コンピュータ１６はＤフリップフロップ６の線４４を捕捉メモリ９の端子５０に接続するようにＭｕｘ５をセットする。過程１８６において、コンピュータ１６はクロックファンアウト１３の線７２を捕捉メモリ９のクロック端子８０に接続するようにＭｕｘ７をセットする。過程１８８において、検査装置１００の操作者がバーニャねじ調節機構を手動操作して可変クロック遅延手段１２の遅延量を設定する。代わりに、コンピュータ１６で制御するステップモータを可変クロック遅延素子１２のバーニャねじ調節機構に結合することもできる。

【００４１】過程１９０において、コンピュータ１６は上記以外の構成部分にクロック信号をクロック源１０から供給させる。過程１９２において、コンピュータ１６は所定時間の経過後、例えば３クロック周期後にそれら構成部分へのクロック信号の供給を終了させる。第１のクロック信号端では、パターン蓄積装置１はテストパターンの論理「１」を出力する。第２のクロック信号端では、Ｄフリップフロップ２がテストパターンの論理状態をＤＵＴ４に出力する。可変クロック遅延素子１２の生ずる第２のクロック信号端への遅延のあと、Ｄフリップフロップ６がＤＵＴ４の出力信号を捕捉する。その１クロック周期後（遅延ずみの第３のクロック信号端の時点）にＤフリップフロップ９がＤフリップフロップ６の出力信号を捕捉する。

【００４２】過程１９４において、コンピュータ１６は捕捉メモリ９から記録ずみのデータを読み出す。捕捉メモリ９はクロック源１０でクロックし、捕捉メモリ９で三つの論理状態ひと組、すなわち試験結果である最後の論理状態を含む三つの論理状態ひと組を蓄積する。試験を繰り返す度ごとに捕捉メモリ９は三つの論理状態の次のひと組を蓄積する。可変クロック遅延素子１２の上記遅延設定により試験すべてから得た論理状態組の間の最後の論理の比較によって、その遅延設定が１クロック周期の伝搬遅延におけるＤＵＴ４の曖昧領域（セットアップ時間とホールド時間との和）の一点に対応するか否かを判定できる。例えば、二つの論理状態組の間で上記最後の論理状態が変動する場合は、その遅延は図８に示した曖昧領域の中の点に対応する。

【００４３】過程１９６において、コンピュータ１６は試験のｎ番目の反復が行われたか否かを判定する。上述のとおり、ｎは例えば１００である。すなわち、可変クロック遅延素子１２の各遅延設定で１００回の試験を反復する。現時点の反復回数がｎ以下である場合は過程１９６のあとに過程１９０を続け、ｎ回反復の終了まで上述の過程を反復する。その他の場合は過程１９６のあと過程１９８を続ける。

【００４４】過程１９８において、コンピュータ１６は曖昧領域を位置特定したか否かを判定する。遅延設定が全部「１」の論理状態（例えば図８の時点Ｔ１３）の試験結果を生じ、もう一つの論理設定が別の論理状態（例えば図８の時点Ｔ１６）の試験結果を生じた場合は曖昧領域が位置特定できたことになる。曖昧領域の位置特定が達成できた場合は、過程１９８の次に過程２００を行い方法１８０を終了する。それ以外の場合は、過程１９８の次に、可変クロック遅延素子１２のためのもう一つの遅延を設定する過程１８８を続けて、上述の過程を曖昧領域の位置特定の達成まで反復する。

【００４５】この発明の実施例と特定の変形とを上に述べてきたが、上記以外の変形も可能である。上述のとおり装置１００はＤＵＴ４の伝搬遅延の高精度較正に用いることができる。したがって、特許請求の範囲の各請求項の真意と範囲を図示の諸変形の説明に限定すべきではない。

【図面の簡単な説明】

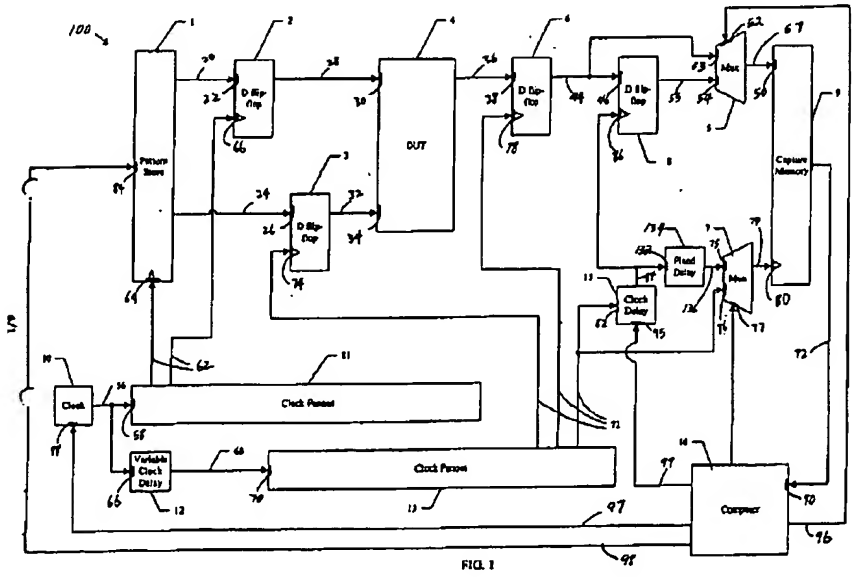
【図１】この発明の一つの実施例による検査装置のブロック図。

【図２】図１の可変クロック遅延手段の構成図。
【図３】図３Ａおよび図３Ｂは図１のクロック遅延手段の構成図。
【図４】クロック入力時点を基準としたデータ入力時点の関数として伝搬遅延を示す特性図。
【図５】被検デバイスの入力信号、出力信号、被検デバイスの出力信号の捕捉のための図１のフリップフロップへのクロック信号、およびフリップフロップの出力信号のタイミング図。
【図６】図１のフリップフロップがフリップフロップの種々のクロック信号でフリップフロップ出力信号から論理「１」を記録する確率を示す図。
【図７】この発明により被検デバイスの伝搬遅延を比較する方法の流れ図。
【図８】被検デバイスの入力信号およびクロック信号並びにフリップフロップの捕捉した出力信号のタイミング図。
【図９】この発明による被検デバイスのセットアップ時間およびホールド時間の比較方法の流れ図。
【符号の説明】

１００	自動検査装置
１	パターン蓄積装置
１０	クロック信号源
１１、１３	クロックファンアウト
１２	可変クロック遅延手段
２０２、２０４	空気誘電体遅延線
２０６	Ｕ字型結合部
２０８	直線状位置定め台
２１０	基体板

１５	クロック遅延手段
１０２	ＡＮＤゲート
１１２	カウンタ
１４０	諸ＤＵＴの伝搬遅延の比較方法
１４２、１８２	パターン蓄積装置にパターンをロードする
１４４	クロック遅延手段１５－２のカウンタに所定値をロードする
１４６	フリップフロップ８を捕捉メモリ９に接続するようにＭｕｘ５をセットする
１４８	クロック遅延手段１５を捕捉メモリ９に接続するようにＭｕｘ７をセットする
１５０、１８８	可変クロック遅延手段１２に遅延量をセットする
１５２、１９０	クロック源１０からのクロック供給を開始する
１５４、１９２	クロック源１０からのクロック供給を停止する
１５６、１９４	捕捉メモリ９からデータを読み出す
１５８、１９６	反復回数＞ｎ？
１６０	クロック遅延手段１５－２のカウンタをリセットする
１６２、１９８	曖昧領域の位置特定した？
１６４、２００	終了
１８４	フリップフロップ６を捕捉メモリ９に接続するようにＭｕｘ５をセットする
１８６	クロックファンアウト１３を捕捉メモリ９に接続するようにＭｕｘ５をセットする

【図１】



【図2】

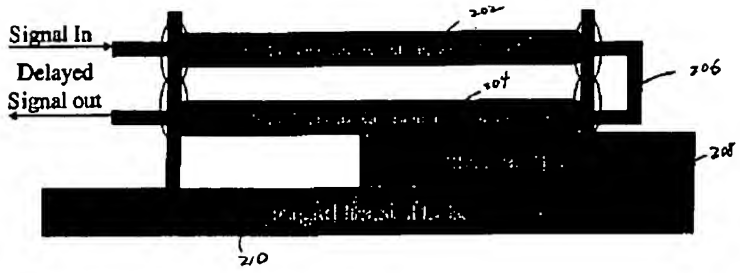


FIG. 2

【図3】

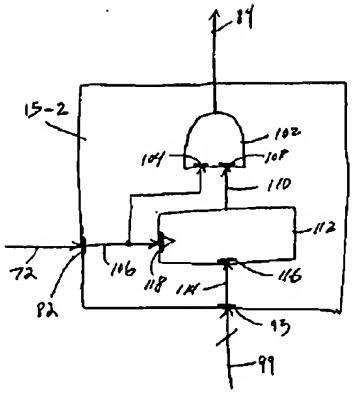


FIG. 3B

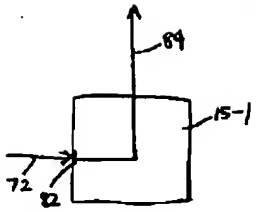


FIG. 3A

【図4】

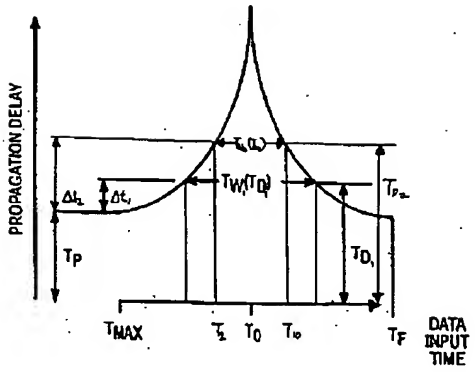


FIG. 4

【図6】

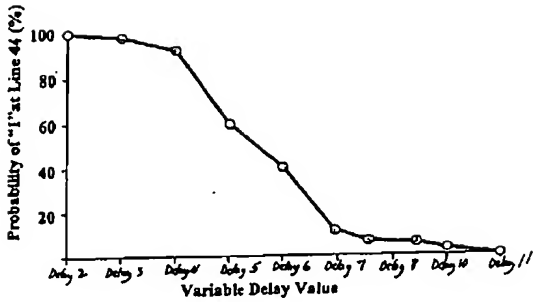


FIG. 6

【図5】

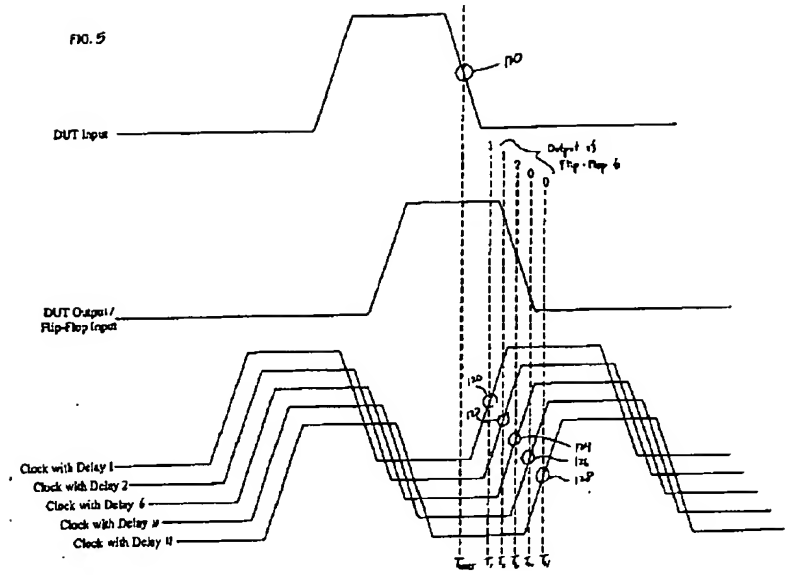


FIG. 5
DUT Input
DUT Output / Flip-Flop Input
Clock with Delay 1
Clock with Delay 2
Clock with Delay 6
Clock with Delay 9
Clock with Delay 11

【図8】

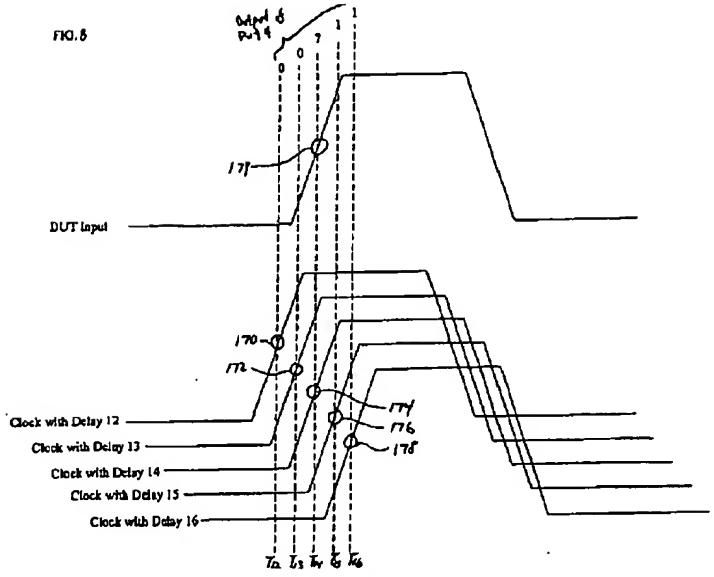


FIG. 8
DUT Input
Clock with Delay 12
Clock with Delay 13
Clock with Delay 14
Clock with Delay 15
Clock with Delay 16

【図7】

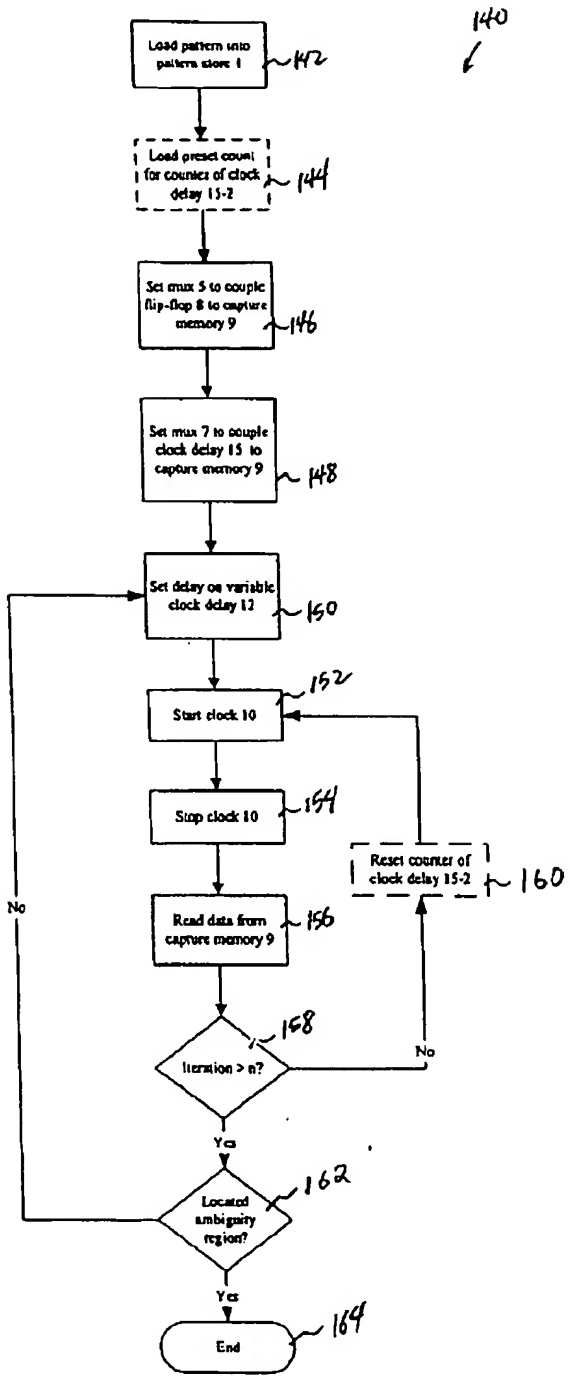

140
Load pattern into pattern store 1
142
Load preset count for counter of clock delay 15-2
144
Set mux 5 to couple flip-flop 8 to capture memory 9
146
Set mux 7 to couple clock delay 15 to capture memory 9
148
Set delay on variable clock delay 12
150
152
Start clock 10
Stop clock 10
154
Reset counter of clock delay 15-2
160
No
Read data from capture memory 9
156
158
Iteration > n?
No
Yes
Located ambiguity region?
162
Yes
End
164

FIG. 7

【図9】

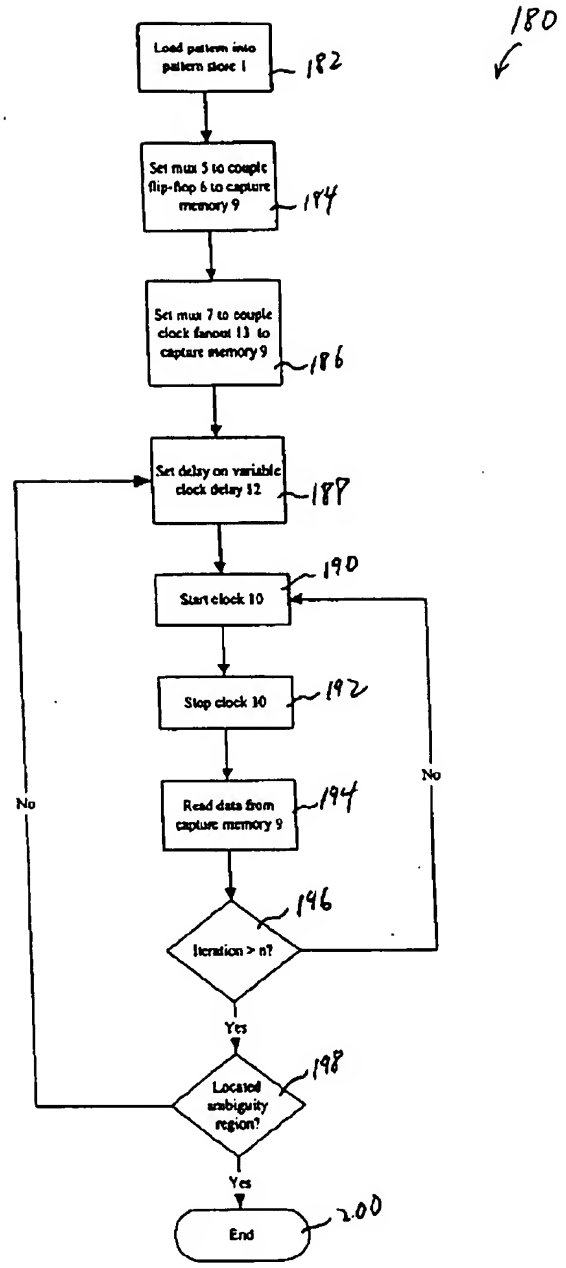

180
Load pattern into pattern store 1
182
Set mux 5 to couple flip-flop 6 to capture memory 9
184
Set mux 7 to couple clock fanout 13 to capture memory 9
186
Set delay on variable clock delay 12
188
Start clock 10
190
Stop clock 10
192
Read data from capture memory 9
194
Iteration > n?
196
No
Yes
Located ambiguity region?
198
No
Yes
End
200

FIG. 9

【手続補正書】
【提出日】平成13年10月26日(2001.10.26)
【手続補正1】
【補正対象書類名】図面
【補正対象項目名】全図
【補正方法】変更
【補正内容】

【図1】

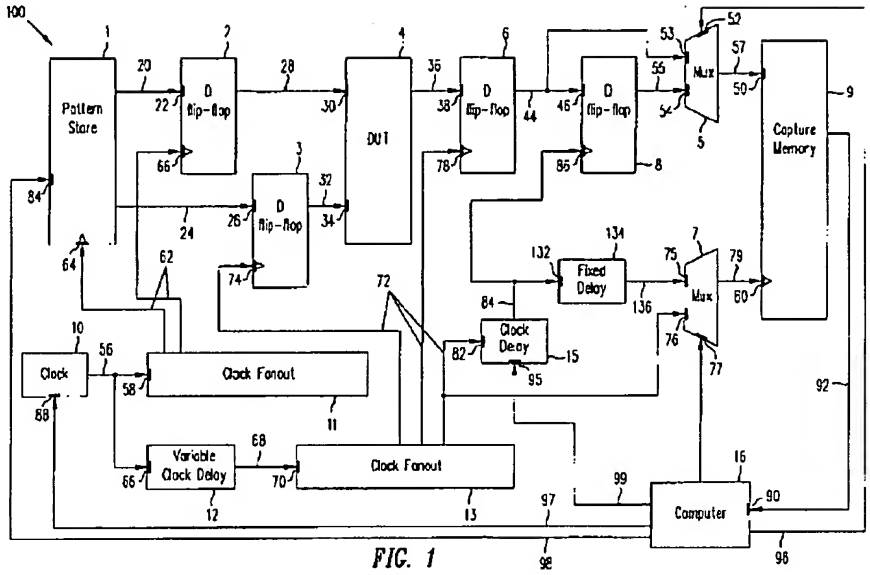


FIG. 1

【図2】

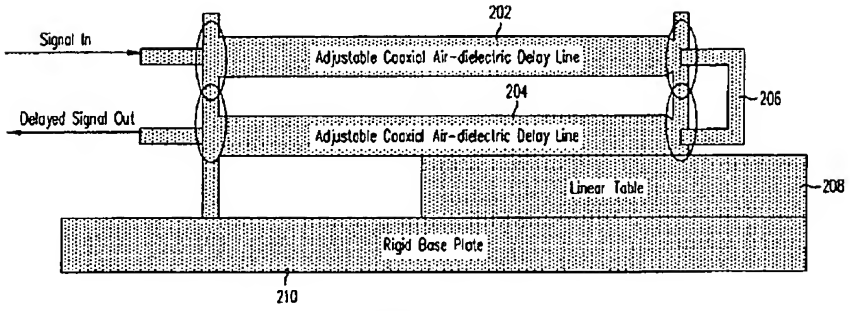


FIG. 2

【図3】

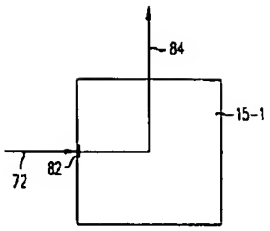


FIG. 3A

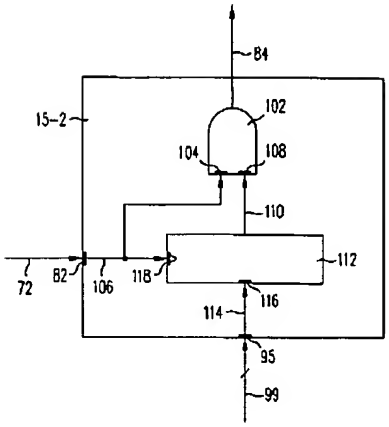


FIG. 3B

【図4】

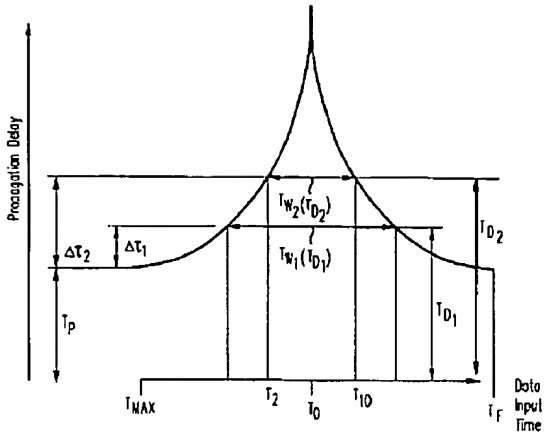


FIG. 4

【図5】

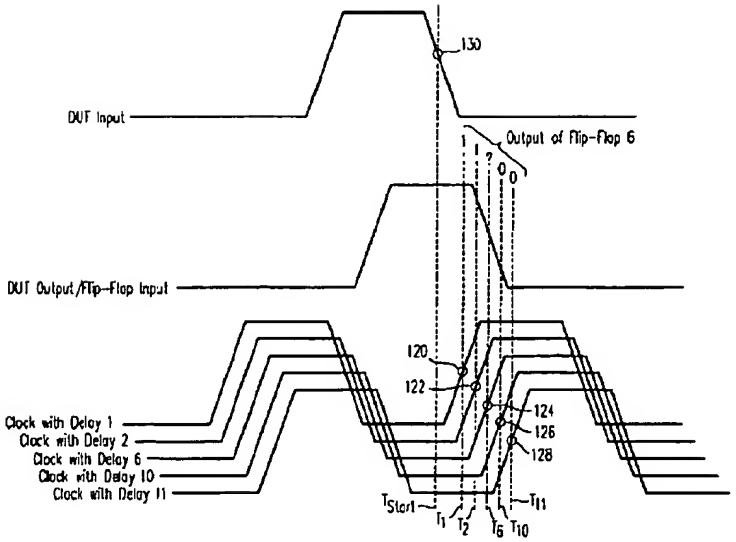


FIG. 5

【図6】

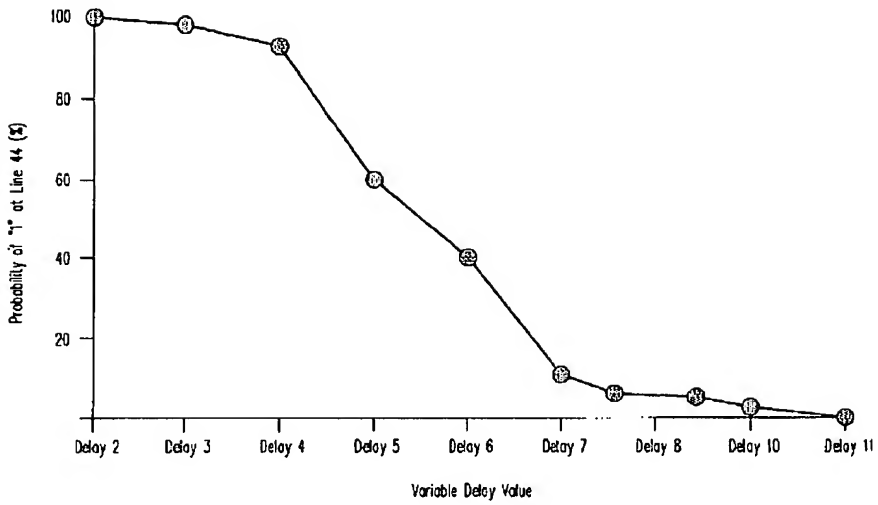


FIG. 6

【図7】

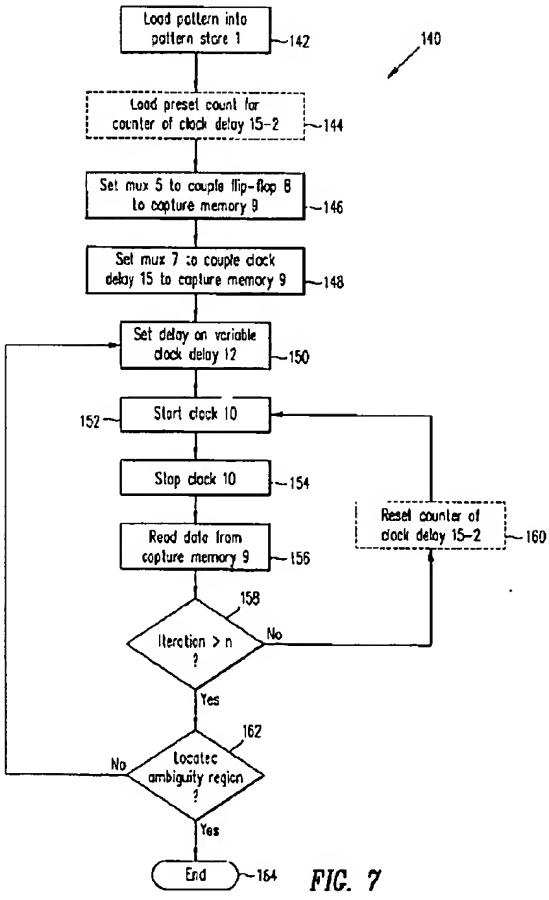


FIG. 7

【図9】

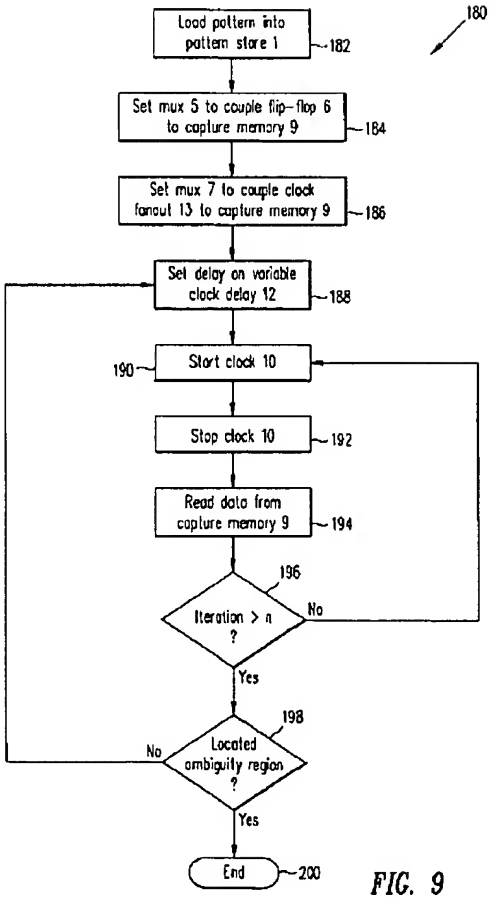


FIG. 9

US 20020075951A1

(19) United States

(12) Patent Application Publication (10) Pub. No.: US 2002/0075951 A1

Pearson (43) Pub. Date: Jun. 20, 2002

(54) METHOD AND APPARATUS TO MEASURE JITTER

(76) Inventor: Chris C. Pearson, Richardson, TX (US)

Correspondence Address:
TEXAS INSTRUMENTS INCORPORATED
P.O BOX 655474, M/S 3999
DALLAS, TX 75265

(21) Appl. No.: 09/974,697

(22) Filed: Oct. 10, 2001

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Non-provisional of provisional application No. 60/240,830, filed on Oct. 17, 2000.

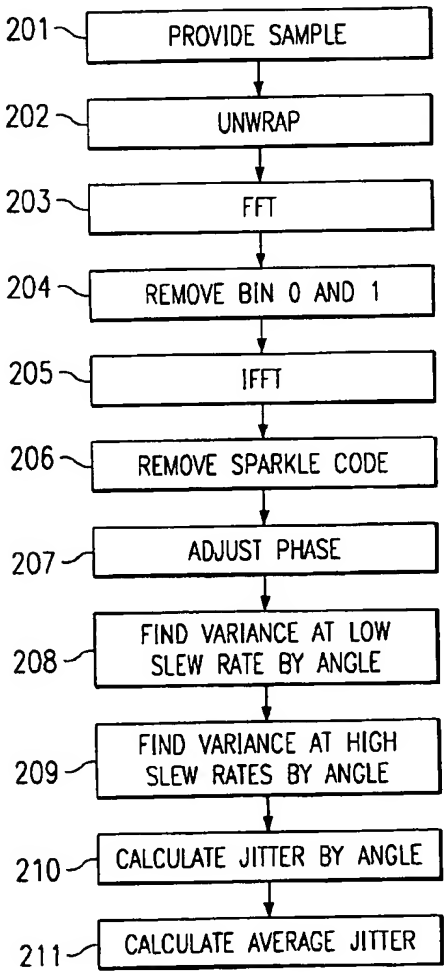
Publication Classification

(51) Int. Cl.[7] H04B 3/46; H04B 17/00

(52) U.S. Cl. 375/226

(57) ABSTRACT

A method of determining jitter is provided by providing a sample, performing an unwrap of the data and then performing a Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) of the data. The fundamental is filtered out and an inverst FFT is determined. The sparkle code is taken out and the phase is adjusted to a known phase. The noise difference at both the high and low rtates by angles is determined. The jitter by angle is calculated using the high slew variance and low slew variance. The average jitter is then calculated.



US005479120A

United States Patent [19]

McEwan

[11] Patent Number: 5,479,120

[45] Date of Patent: Dec. 26, 1995

[54] **HIGH SPEED SAMPLER AND DEMULTIPLEXER**

[75] Inventor: **Thomas E. McEwan**, Livermore, Calif.

[73] Assignee: **The Regents of the University of California**, Oakland, Calif.

[21] Appl. No.: **241,000**

[22] Filed: **May 11, 1994**

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 942,164, Sep. 8, 1992.

[51] **Int. Cl.**[6] **H03K 5/06**

[52] **U.S. Cl.** **327/91**; 327/94

[58] **Field of Search** 327/91, 94, 415, 327/92; 324/76.15

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,209,263	9/1965	Keiper, Jr.	327/277
4,833,445	5/1989	Buchele	327/91
4,866,441	9/1989	Conway et al.	341/122
4,866,711	9/1989	Borup et al.	370/108

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

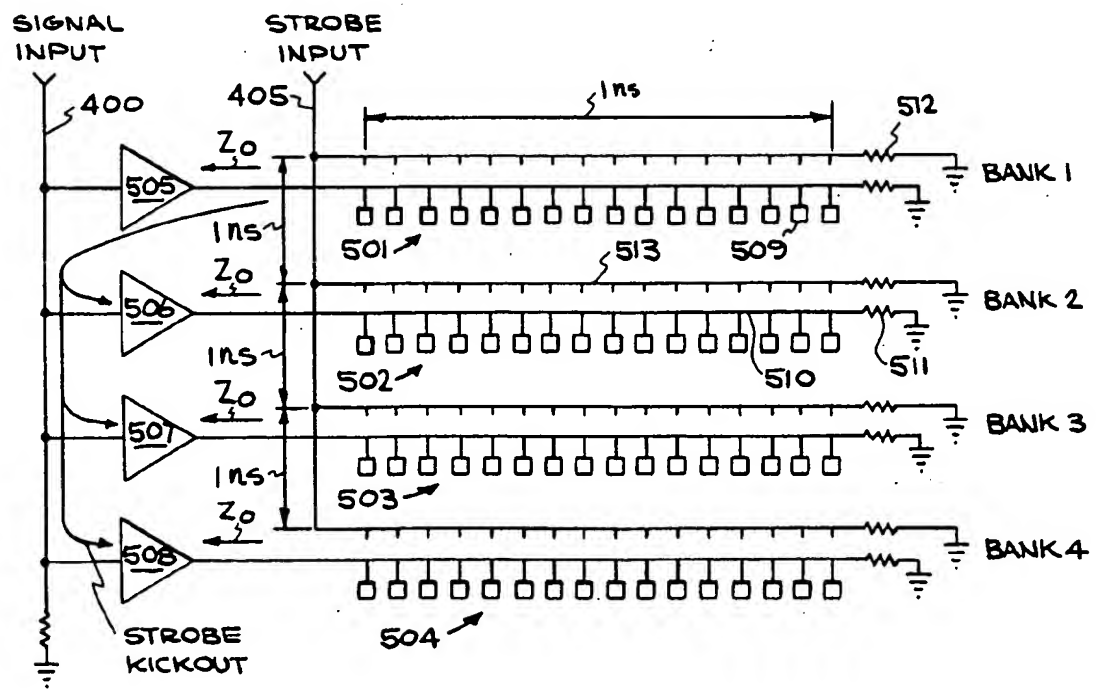
2249646	5/1992	United Kingdom	327/94

Primary Examiner—Andrew M. Dolinar
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Henry P. Sartorio

[57] **ABSTRACT**

A high speed sampling demultiplexer based on a plurality of sampler banks, each bank comprising a sample transmission line for transmitting an input signal, a strobe transmission line for transmitting a strobe signal, and a plurality of sampling gates at respective positions along the sample transmission line for sampling the input signal in response to the strobe signal. Strobe control circuitry is coupled to the plurality of banks, and supplies a sequence of bank strobe signals to the strobe transmission lines in each of the plurality of banks, and includes circuits for controlling the timing of the bank strobe signals among the banks of samplers. Input circuitry is included for supplying the input signal to be sampled to the plurality of sample transmission lines in the respective banks. The strobe control circuitry can repetitively strobe the plurality of banks of samplers such that the banks of samplers are cycled to create a long sample length. Second tier demultiplexing circuitry is coupled to each of the samplers in the plurality of banks. The second tier demultiplexing circuitry senses the sample taken by the corresponding sampler each time the bank in which the sampler is found is strobed. A plurality of such samples can be stored by the second tier demultiplexing circuitry for later processing. Repetitive sampling with the high speed transient sampler induces an effect known as "strobe kickout". The sample transmission lines include structures which reduce strobe kickout to acceptable levels, generally 60 dB below the signal, by absorbing the kickout pulses before the next sampling repetition.

31 Claims, 13 Drawing Sheets



US006411244B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Dobos et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,411,244 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Jun. 25, 2002**

(54) **PHASE STARTABLE CLOCK DEVICE FOR A DIGITIZING INSTRUMENT HAVING DETERMINISTIC PHASE ERROR CORRECTION**

(75) Inventors: **Laszlo Dobos**, Beaverton; **Raymond L. Veith**, Hillsboro, both of OR (US)

(73) Assignee: **Tektronix, Inc.**, Beaverton, OR (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/799,743**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 5, 2001**

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **H03M 1/12**

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **341/155**; 341/122; 341/118; 327/237; 327/306; 327/160; 327/161; 327/162; 327/165; 302/262; 302/529

(58) **Field of Search** 341/155, 122, 341/118; 327/160, 161, 162, 165, 237, 356; 307/262, 529

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,402,019 A		3/1995	Drummond
5,959,479 A		9/1999	Woodward
5,959,563 A	*	9/1999	Ring 341/155
6,069,578 A	*	5/2000	Liu et al. 341/122
6,204,784 B1	*	3/2001	Hatfield 341/118

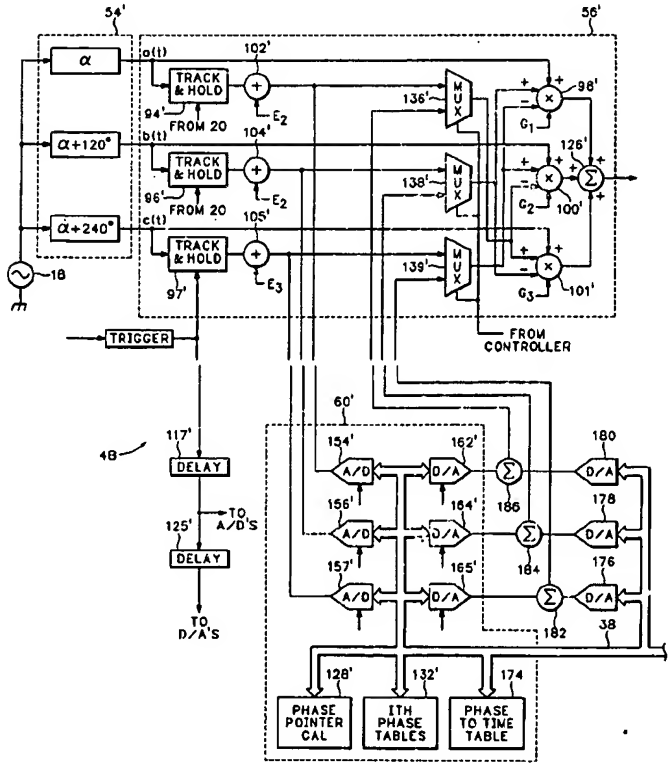
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Michael Tokar
Assistant Examiner—Lam T. Mai
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—William K. Bucher

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A phase stable clock circuit includes a phase gate having track-and-hold (T/H) circuits with each T/H circuit receiving a phase shifted continuous sinusoidal signal of predetermined phase and a control input signal to capture and hold phase samples of the sinusoidal signals. In alternative embodiments, a phase correction circuit provides phase correction values that are added to the held phase values to generate corrected phase values and time-error phase lookup table is used to generate time position correction values. The corrected phase values are applied to the phase gate remove deterministic phase errors to generate an output signal with a predetermined startup phase relative to the control input signal transition. The phase error-to-time lookup table adjusts the time placement of waveform record samples after the acquisition of the samples. An optional infinite track-and-hold circuit may be used to generate corrected replica phase values that replace the corrected phase values for longer sample delay periods.

28 Claims, 12 Drawing Sheets



US006384657B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Dobos

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,384,657 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: May 7, 2002**

(54) **PHASE STARTABLE CLOCK DEVICE HAVING IMPROVED STABILITY**

(75) Inventor: **Laszlo Dobos**, Beaverton, OR (US)

(73) Assignee: **Tektronix, Inc.**, Beaverton, OR (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/799,786**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 5, 2001**

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **G06F 1/04**
(52) **U.S. Cl.** **327/294**; 327/233
(58) **Field of Search** 327/293, 294, 327/299, 171, 129, 231, 298, 291, 233

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,084,681 A	*	1/1992	Kovalick et al.	327/106
5,402,019 A		3/1995	Drummond	327/237
5,644,260 A	*	7/1997	DaSilva et al.	327/238
5,701,393 A	*	12/1997	Smith, III et al.	704/258
5,939,916 A	*	8/1999	Jamal et al.	327/231
5,959,479 A		9/1999	Woodward	327/160
6,181,181 B1	*	1/2001	Tsukahara et al.	327/233
6,310,502 B1	*	10/2001	Klier	327/231

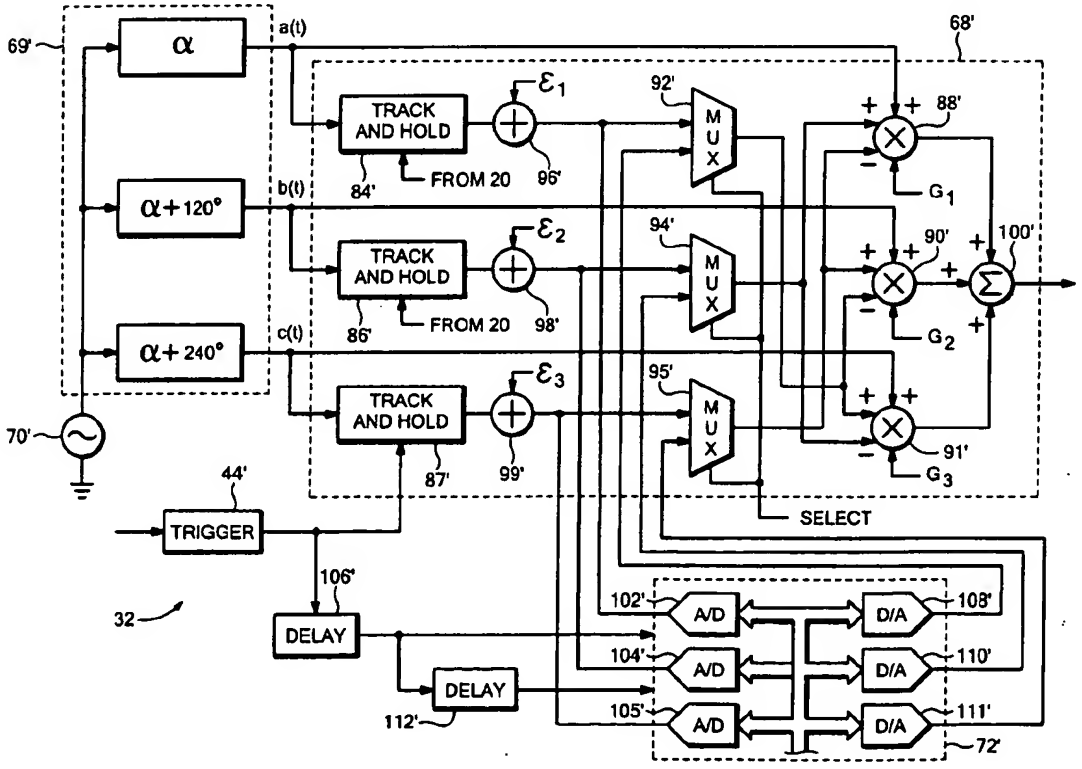
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Kenneth B. Wells
Assistant Examiner—Hai L. Nguyen
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—William K. Bucher

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A phase stable clock circuit includes a phase gate having track-and-hold (T/H) circuits with each T/H circuit receiving a phase shifted continuous sinusoidal signal of predetermined phase and a control input signal to hold, at a selected time during the signal epoch of the respective sinusoidal signals, phase values of the sinusoidal signals. The respective phase values are coupled to an infinite track-and-hold circuit to generate replicas of the phase values. The phase values and the replica phase values are coupled to respective multiplexers that selectively couple the phase values to multipliers during a first time period and replica phase values during a second time period. The output of each multiplexer is coupled to a multiplier that receives one of the phase shifted continuous sinusoidal signals. The output of the multipliers are summed in a summing circuit to generate an output signal with a predetermined stable startup phase relative to the transition. The use of the infinite track-and-hold improves the long-term stability of the output signal from the summing circuit.

22 Claims, 4 Drawing Sheets



US005519342A

United States Patent [19]

McEwan

[11] Patent Number: 5,519,342

[45] Date of Patent: May 21, 1996

[54] **TRANSIENT DIGITIZER WITH DISPLACEMENT CURRENT SAMPLERS**

[75] Inventor: **Thomas E. McEwan**, Livermore, Calif.

[73] Assignee: **The Regents of the University of California**, Oakland, Calif.

[21] Appl. No.: **240,999**

[22] Filed: **May 11, 1994**

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 942,164, Sep. 8, 1992, Pat. No. 5,471,162.

[51] **Int. Cl.**[6] **H03K 5/125**

[52] **U.S. Cl.** **327/94**

[58] **Field of Search** 327/91, 94, 92; 324/76.15

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

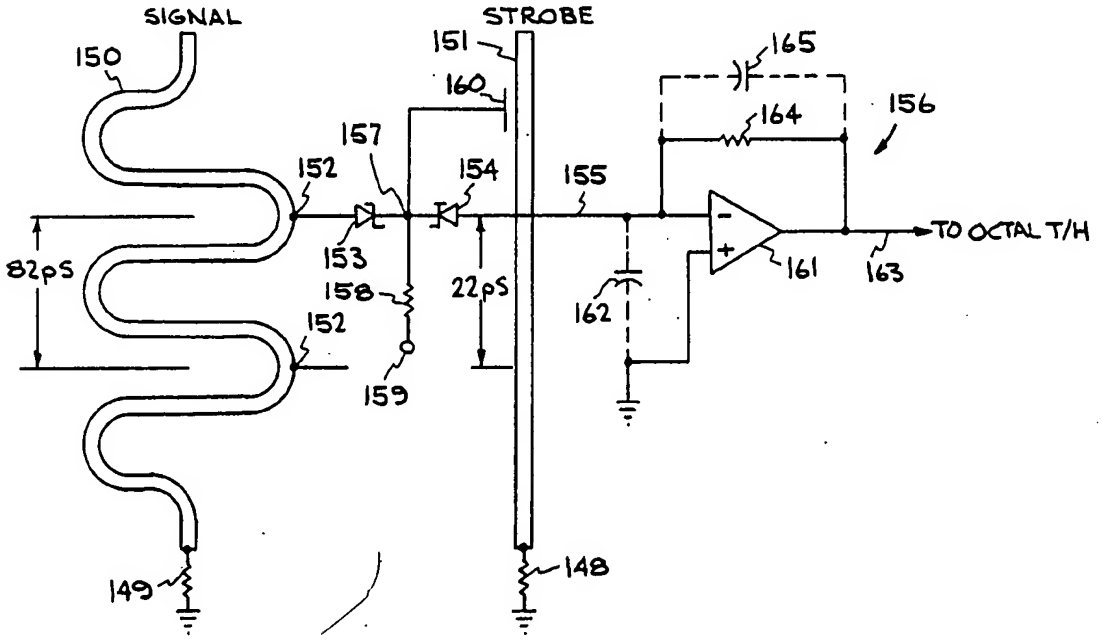
3,241,076	3/1966	Magleby et al.	327/91
3,629,731	12/1971	Frye	327/94
4,504,791	3/1985	Conway et al.	327/114
4,833,445	5/1989	Buchele	341/118
4,866,441	9/1989	Conway et al.	341/122
4,866,711	9/1989	Borup et al.	370/108

Primary Examiner—Andrew M. Dolinar
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Henry P. Sartorio

[57] **ABSTRACT**

A low component count, high speed sample gate, and digitizer architecture using the sample gates is based on use of a signal transmission line, a strobe transmission line and a plurality of sample gates connected to the sample transmission line at a plurality of positions. The sample gates include a strobe pickoff structure near the strobe transmission line which generates a charge displacement current in response to propagation of the strobe signal on the strobe transmission line sufficient to trigger the sample gate. The sample gate comprises a two-diode sampling bridge and is connected to a meandered signal transmission line at one end and to a charge-holding cap at the other. The common cathodes are reverse biased. A voltage step is propagated down the strobe transmission line. As the step propagates past a capacitive pickoff, displacement current i=c(dv/dT), flows into the cathodes, driving the bridge into conduction and thereby charging the charge-holding capacitor to a value related to the signal. A charge amplifier converts the charge on the charge-holding capacitor to an output voltage. The sampler is mounted on a printed circuit board, and the sample transmission line and strobe transmission line comprise coplanar microstrips formed on a surface of the substrate. Also, the strobe pickoff structure may comprise a planar pad adjacent the strobe transmission line on the printed circuit board.

19 Claims, 13 Drawing Sheets



US006549572B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Anderson et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,549,572 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Apr. 15, 2003**

(54) **METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR AUTOMATED TIME DOMAIN MONITORING IN OPTICAL NETWORKS**

(75) Inventors: **William T. Anderson**, Red Bank, NJ (US); **Thomas C. Banwell**, Madison, NJ (US); **Nim K. Cheung**, Short Hills, NJ (US); **James E. Hodge**, Red Bank, NJ (US)

(73) Assignee: **Telcordia Technologies, Inc.**, Morristown, NJ (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/304,274**

(22) Filed: **May 6, 1999**

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/085,347, filed on May 13, 1998.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **H04B 17/00**
(52) **U.S. Cl.** **375/225**
(58) **Field of Search** 375/376, 354, 375/360, 361, 225, 294; 356/73.1; 702/79

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,965,873 A		10/1990	White	360/41
5,838,749 A	*	11/1998	Casper et al.	331/18
5,963,312 A	*	10/1999	Roberts	250/227.17

* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Stephen Chin
Assistant Examiner—Kevin Kim
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Joseph Giordano; James W. Falk

(57) **ABSTRACT**

Methods and apparatuses are provided for determining characteristics of an input optical signal in an optical network. An optical signal monitoring apparatus estimates a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal, determines a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval, and performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal. The optical signal monitoring apparatus samples the input signal based on the determined clock signal and determines the characteristics of the input signal.

41 Claims, 6 Drawing Sheets

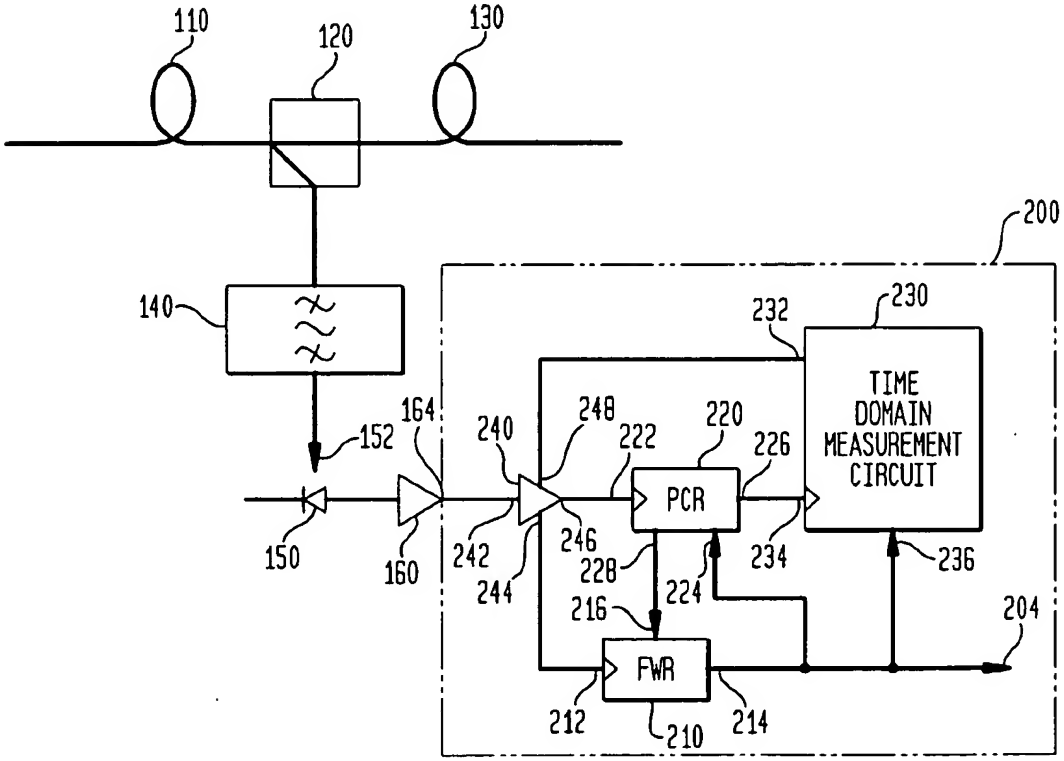


FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

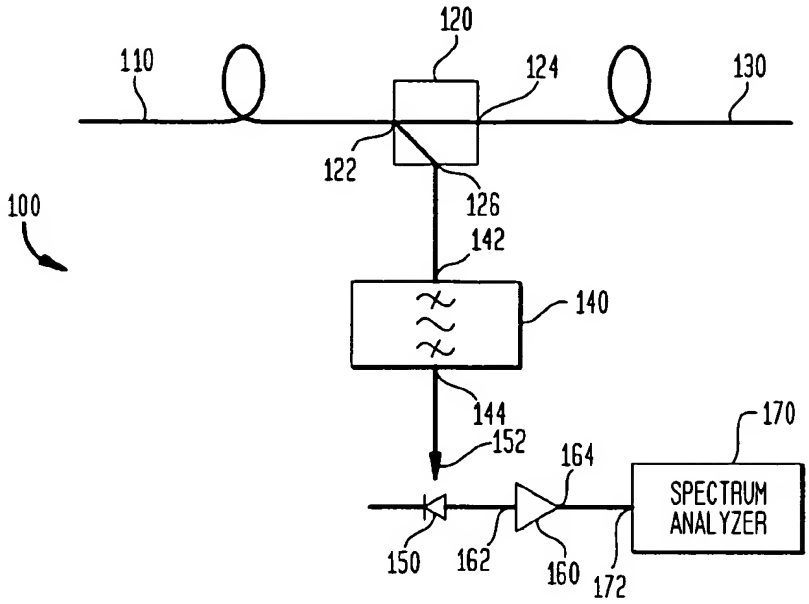


FIG. 2

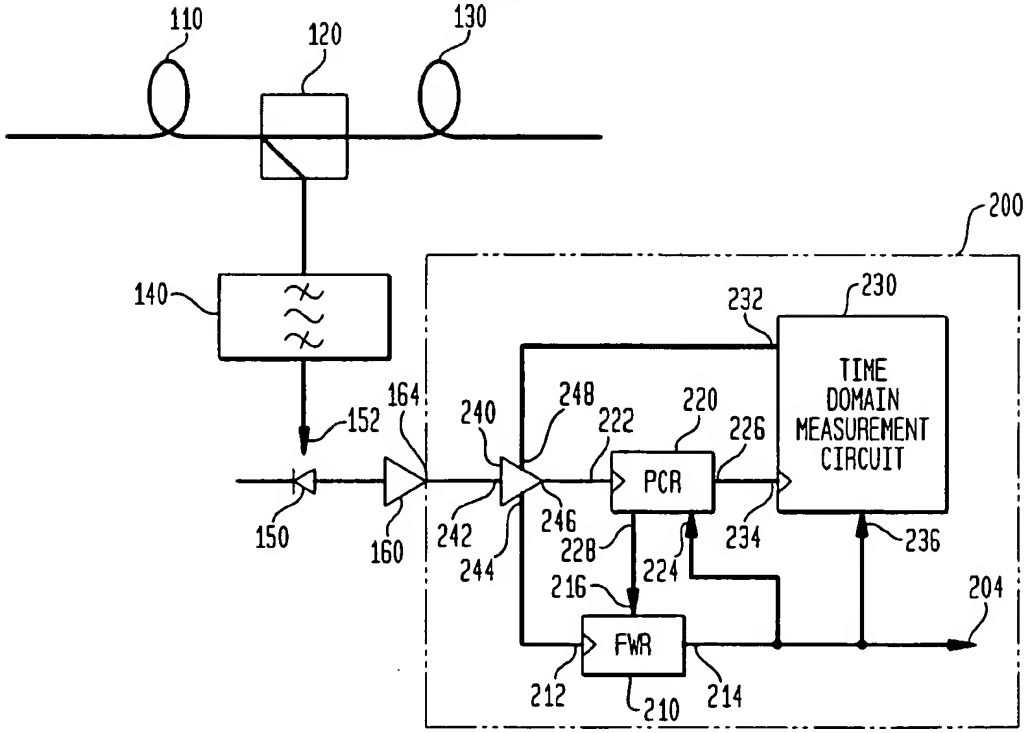


FIG. 3

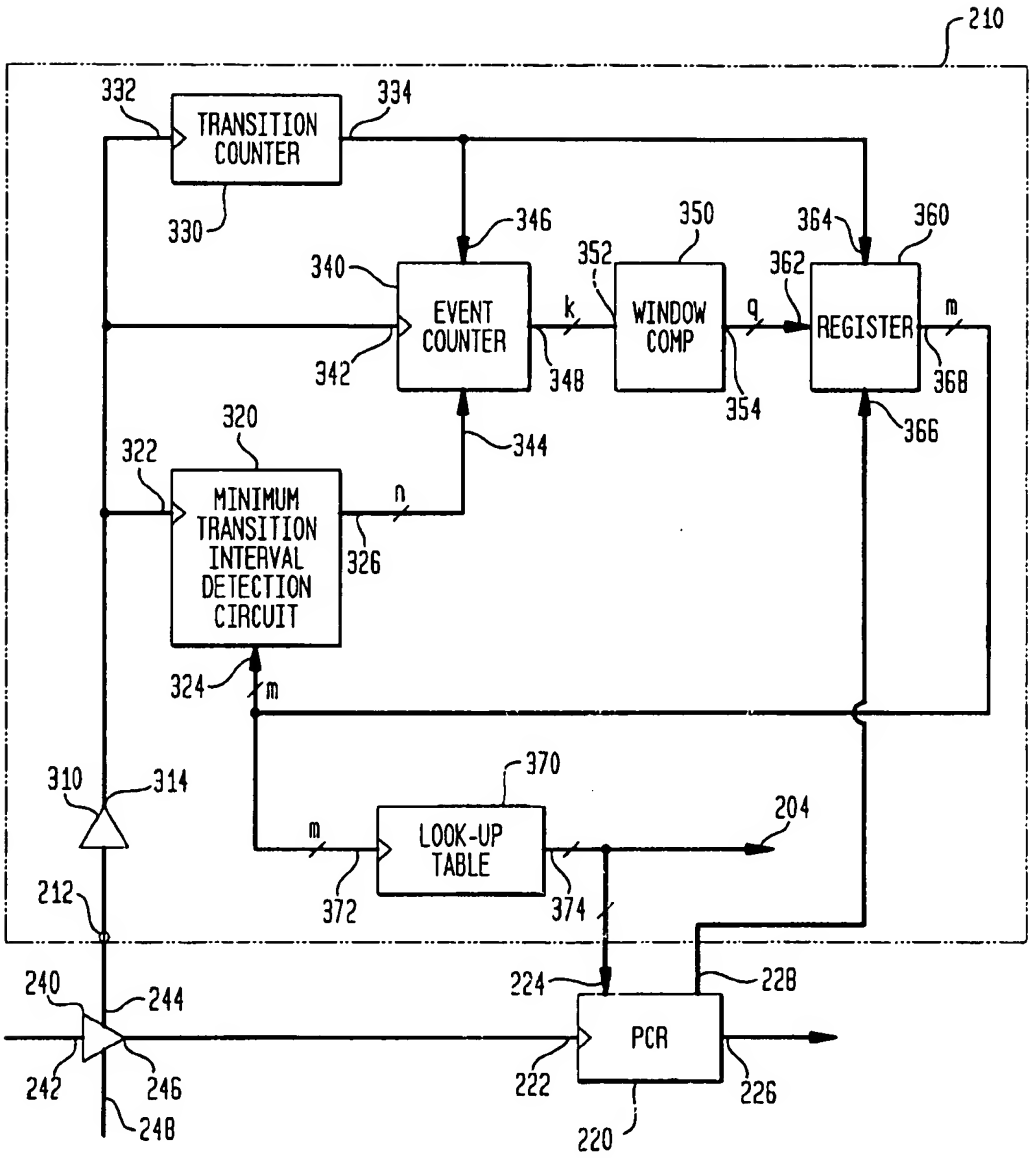
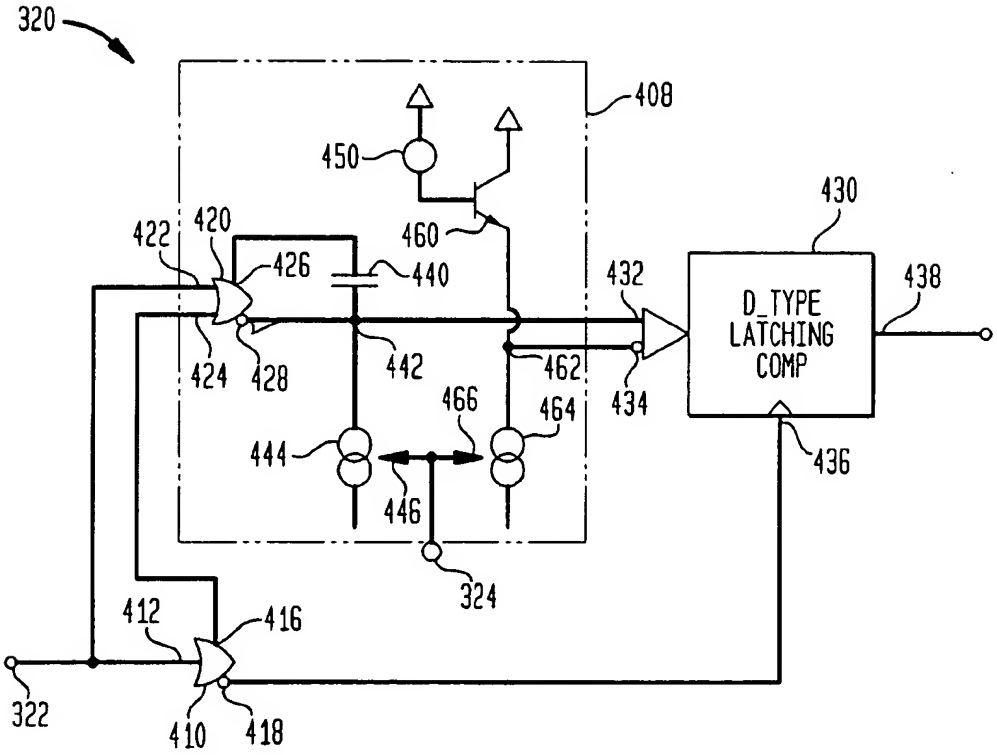

210
332
TRANSITION COUNTER
334
330
346
350
364
360
340
352
362
EVENT COUNTER
k
WINDOW COMP
q
REGISTER
m
342
348
354
368
366
320
322
344
MINIMUM TRANSITION INTERVAL DETECTION CIRCUIT
n
326
324
m
370
310
314
204
m
LOOK-UP TABLE
212
372
374
240
244
224
228
PCR
242
246
222
226
248
220

FIG. 4


320
408
450
460
430
422
420
426
440
432
438
D_TYPE
LATCHING
COMP
424
428
442
462
434
466
464
444
436
446
324
412
416
322
410
418

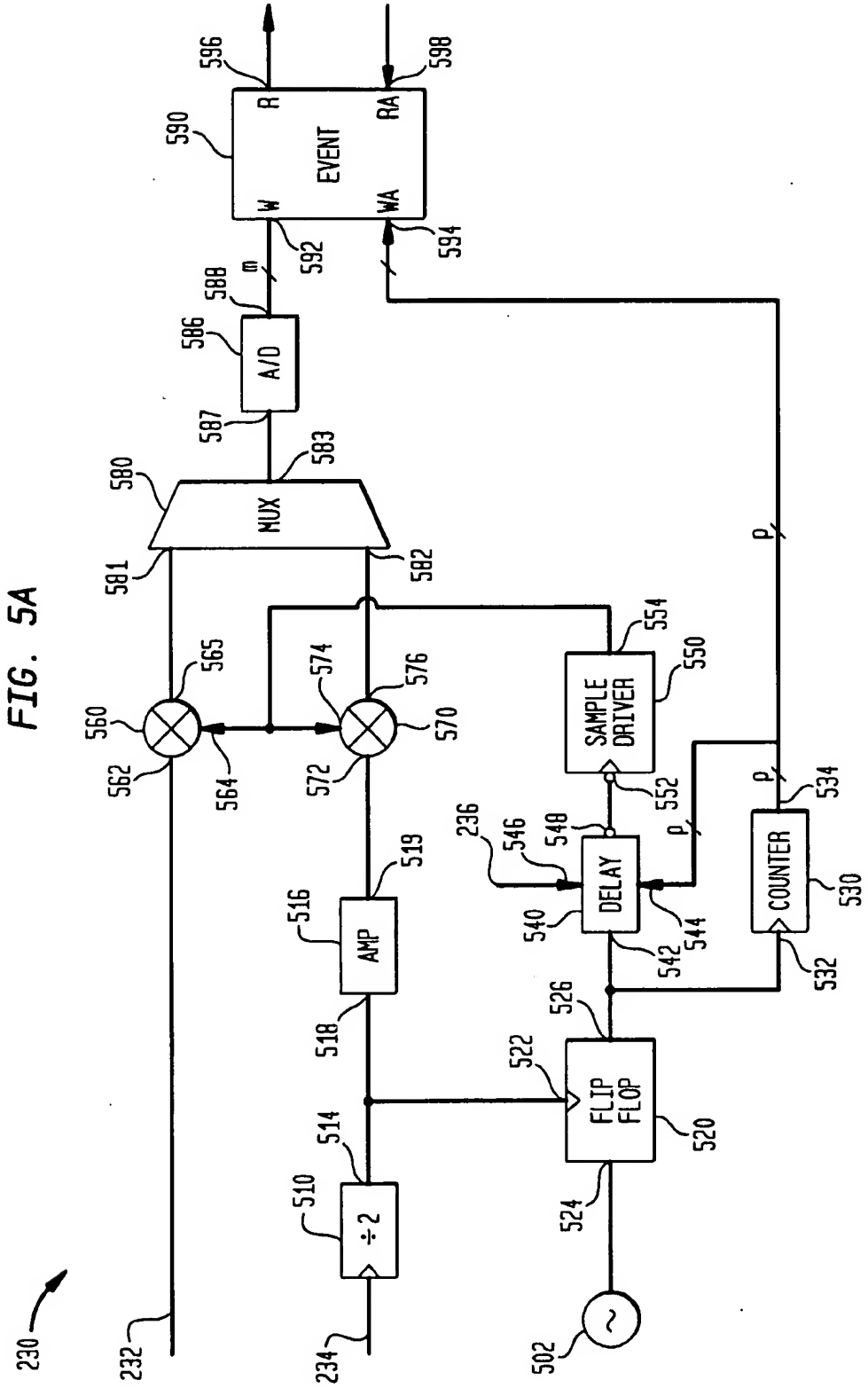

596
598
590
R
RA
EVENT
W
WA
592
594
588
m
586
A/D
587
583
580
MUX
581
582
p
554
565
574
576
560
570
SAMPLE DRIVER
550
562
564
572
552
534
236
546
548
p
519
516
AMP
DELAY
COUNTER
530
540
542
544
532
526
518
522
FLIP FLOP
520
514
510
÷2
524
230
232
234
502

FIG. 5A

FIG. 5B

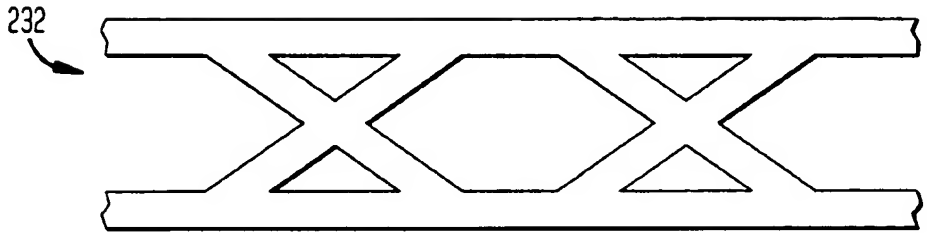


FIG. 5C

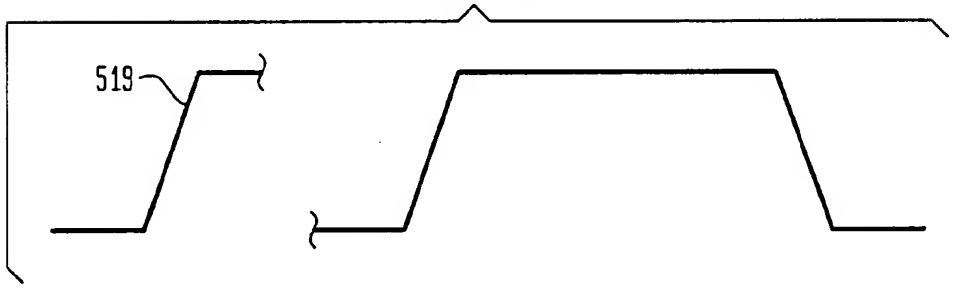
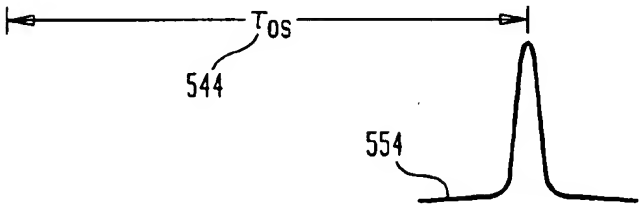


FIG. 5D



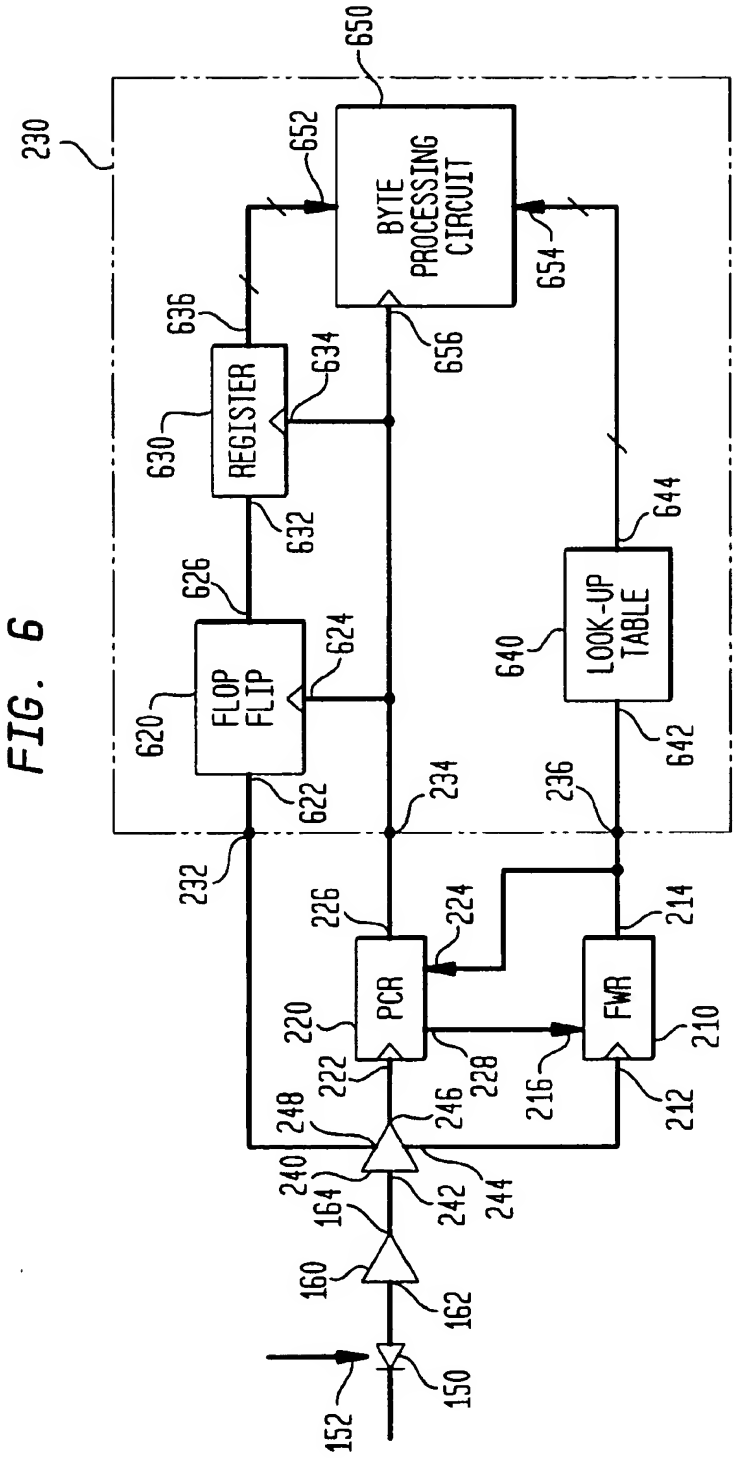

650
652
BYTE PROCESSING CIRCUIT
654
656
230
636
634
630
REGISTER
632
644
626
624
620
FLOP FLIP
640
LOOK-UP TABLE
642
622
234
236
232
226
224
214
PCR
FWR
220
210
222
228
216
212
248
246
240
242
244
164
160
162
150
152

FIG. 6

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR AUTOMATED TIME DOMAIN MONITORING IN OPTICAL NETWORKS

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/085,347, filed May 13, 1998, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference. This application is also related to U.S. application Ser. No. 09/199,480, entitled "Method and Apparatus for Variable Bit Rate Clock Recovery", filed Nov. 25, 1998, and now U.S. Pat. No. 6,285,722, Sep. 4, 2001, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates generally to optical networks and, more particularly, to a method and apparatus for automated time domain monitoring in optical networks.

Generally, digital transmission systems deliver information, which is encoded as quantized signals, from a sender to a receiver. There are several parameters that characterize the quality of the transmission in these systems. One such parameter is the "bit error ratio" or BER. BER can be measured at any point in a transmission system, and may be used for fault detection and isolation.

There are many effects that contribute to degradation of a measured BER. For example, signal attenuation reduces signal amplitude, dispersion alters pulse shape, receiver and amplifier noise increase signal level ambiguity, and jitter creates uncertainty in the sampling point and affects other aspects of synchronization.

In an optical network, such as a Wavelength Division Multiplexing (WDM) network, data passes through many different types of network elements: wavelength converters and filters, wavelength add-drop multiplexer (ADM), cross-connects, and optical amplifiers. The network elements may perform multiple optical to electronic (O/E) and electronic to optical (E/O) conversions, or alternatively, may process the data in optical form. Although it is preferable to perform signal monitoring at network elements that include O/E and E/O converters, one can also tap and detect a signal at any point in a WDM network.

FIG. 1 illustrates a prior art optical signal monitoring system **100**, which monitors optical signals on a fiber link by performing indirect SNR or average power level measurement. As shown, optical monitoring system **100** includes an optical fiber **110** carrying an input optical signal, optical power splitter **120**, optical fiber **130** carrying output optical signal, wavelength selective filter **140**, photodetector **150**, electrical amplifier **160**, and a spectrum analyzer **170**. An incident optical signal present in optical fiber **110** is conveyed to output fiber **130** via coupler **120**.

To monitor the input optical signal, an optical tap in coupler **120** extracts a small amount of signal power from optical fiber **110**. Wavelength selective filter **140** selects a desired wavelength, and photodetector **150** converts the light associated with the selected wavelength into an electrical signal. The current from photodetector **150** is amplified by electrical amplifier **160**, and subsequently measured by spectrum analyzer **170**, or alternatively, an average value meter.

One of the signal characteristics measured by spectrum analyzer **170** is an estimated signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), which is commonly used to characterize a link performance in a WDM network. Optical domain spectral monitoring is typically used to estimate the SNR in optical networks. The signal is spectrally narrow, typically a few GHz. Assuming that the noise is slowly varying with wavelength, the optical noise level is measured at a wavelength slightly away from the channel's signal, where the ratio of this noise to the optical signal represents the optical SNR.

Presently, an optical spectrum analyzer or an equivalent (e.g., a Hewlett Packard wavemeter) is used to measure the characteristics of an input optical signal in a WDM network. Such instruments, however, have a number of disadvantages. First, these instruments are expensive and slow (i.e., require scanning across all wavelengths). Second, there are well-known inaccuracies that result from such optical measurements. Third, some sources of signal noise are not detectable with these instruments. For example, interferometric intensity noise is one such source of signal noise, which is not detectable in the optical domain. Fourth, any induced jitter or wander cannot be detected using these instruments. Finally, the required optical SNR for low BER depends not only on the signal rate but also on the details of the receiver design.

Optical networks, such as WDM networks, can provide flexible broadband connectivity. A unique feature of WDM network technology is rate and format transparency. For example, the bit rate f_{bit} of a signal may range from 25 Mb/s to 10 Gb/s. Furthermore, reconfigurable WDM networks perform highly variable route selection, a feature that is profoundly different from traditional point-to-point networks. At the periphery of such networks, any one set of users may employ at most a few line rates and formats. Within the network core, however, the full mix of rates and formats is encountered by most network elements. The route, line-rate, and format can be highly unpredictable and rapidly changing at any network element within a reconfigurable WDM network.

Like all other communication networks, it is desirable to monitor network transmission performance in WDM networks to anticipate problems before a user experiences poor service. Signal integrity and network link performance are closely monitored in traditional transmission systems, which operate at fixed line rates. These systems possess embedded signaling channels for diagnosis of transmission impairment and exchange of fault information.

For example, in Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) systems, the frame interval is continuously monitored along with verification of parity calculated on subsets of the bits within a frame. In these systems, loss of signal, loss of frame, and Bit Interleaved Parity 8 (BIP8) error rates are monitored and reported. Other transmission formats have their own embedded error detection.

Unlike traditional networks, however, WDM networks have less direct control over critical transmission parameters. Although many of the proposed WDM networks perform signal level management, they do not perform retiming, which is highly rate dependent and usually restrictive. When a WDM network performs little or no retiming, jitter management is delegated entirely to receivers at the user end. Accordingly, if the quality of the signal could be verified without full regeneration so that faults could be isolated to one subnetwork, it would facilitate implementation of multi-vendor interfaces for reconfigurable WDM networks.

Finally, interaction among protocol layers, such as locating faults when Internet Protocol (IP) routers or Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) switches connect directly to

optical networks, would be easier if a WDM network could dynamically determine the type of traffic it carries and test the quality of the traffic by checking for proper frame format and presence of errors. For example, when a network element in a WDM network detects an error in a signal, the network element could generate an alarm, facilitating the identification of the fault at the higher layer.

DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

It is desirable to have a method and apparatus for performing automated time domain monitoring in optical networks that overcome the above and other disadvantages of the prior art. Methods and apparatuses consistent with the present invention determine characteristics of an input optical signal by estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal, determining a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval, and performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal.

In one embodiment, an optical signal monitoring apparatus comprises a forward rate detector, clock recovery circuit, and a time domain measurement circuit. The forward rate detector estimates the minimum time interval between transitions in an input optical signal. Based on the estimated minimum time interval, the clock recovery circuit extracts a clock signal from the input signal. Using the extracted clock signal, the time domain measurement circuit samples the input signal, and determines in time domain the characteristics of the input signal.

Methods and apparatuses consistent with the invention have several advantages over the prior art. In an optical network, many different time domain measurements may be performed on an optical signal once a clock is extracted. The clock is essential for measuring an eye-pattern, from which one can determine activity on a particular wavelength, directly calculate signal power levels and noise, and calculate jitter. With automated measurement, both instantaneous fault and average non-fault behavior may be used in fault isolation. The clock may be used to identify bit boundaries and to read the signal. Pattern detection may be used to recognize, for example, SONET A1A2 framing or the special symbols used in block coding. This would allow network elements to perform many of the conventional bit-level performance monitoring operations, even without benefit of information from network management.

One may determine the type of traffic present on a wavelength (if it is in a local catalog) and inform network management of the traffic type and quality. This would obviously be useful for preventing provisioning errors (by detecting that the traffic type present does not match the traffic expected) when jumpers are connected incorrectly. Also, this could provide a means for billing the customer, even though the customer has a transparent connection and can send a wide range of rates and types of traffic. It could also provide a near-real-time inventory of traffic statistics to network management. None of these things can be done today in the optical domain, and using inflexible fixed regeneration sacrifices transparency—the regeneration circuit would need to be changed whenever the traffic type or speed is changed.

When signals cross administrative boundaries, for example between a local exchange carrier (LEC) and an inter exchange carrier (IEC) or between a private network and an LEC, it is necessary to determine that the signal is not impaired before it leaves one network and enters another. Today, this requires full regeneration and well-defined single-wavelength interfaces, such as SONET OC-3 or electrical DS-1 or DS-3. As bandwidth demands grow, it is desirable to eliminate this regeneration and permit transparent, multi-wavelength access by measuring the quality of the signal.

The description of the invention and the following description for carrying out the best mode of the invention should not restrict the scope of the claimed invention. Both provide examples and explanations to enable others to practice the invention. The accompanying drawings, which form part of the description for carrying out the best mode of the invention, show several embodiments of the invention, and together with the description, explain the principles of the invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

In the Figures:

FIG. **1** illustrates a block diagram of a prior art optical signal monitoring system;

FIG. **2** illustrates a block diagram of a time domain optical signal monitoring apparatus, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. **3** illustrates a block diagram of a forward rate detector, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. **4** illustrates an emitter coupled logic (ECL) implementation of a minimum transition interval detection circuit, which uses pulse-width auto-correlations responsive to rising edge transitions, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

FIG. **5***a* illustrates a block diagram of a time domain measurement circuit, which performs self-calibrating waveform measurement suitable for network monitoring applications, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

FIGS. **5***b*, **5***c*, and **5***d* illustrate an eye-pattern for a signal at an input of a time domain measurement circuit, a synchronized calibration waveform, and a sampling pulse, respectively, in accordance with an embodiment of invention; and

FIG. **6** illustrates a block diagram of a time domain measurement circuit, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention.

BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

Reference will now be made in detail to the preferred embodiments of the invention, examples of which are illustrated in the accompanying drawings. Wherever possible, the same reference numbers will be used throughout the drawings to refer to the same or like parts.

FIG. **2** illustrates a block diagram of a time domain optical signal monitoring apparatus **200**, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Signal monitoring apparatus **200** comprises a forward rate detection and selection circuit (forward rate detector or FWR) **210**, programmable clock recovery circuit (PCR) **220**, time domain measurement circuit **230**, and a buffer amplifier **240**.

An optical signal sample **152** is incident on photodetector **150**, which produces a current received by a transimpedance amplifier **160**. An optical signal sample **152** is obtained via an optical power splitter **120** from an optical fiber **110** carrying an input optical signal using a wavelength selective filter **140**.

Output 164 of amplifier 160 connects to input 242 of buffer amplifier 240. Buffer amplifier 240 includes three equivalent analog outputs 244, 246 and 248. Output 244 connects to input 212 of forward rate detector 210. Output 246 connects to input 222 of clock recovery circuit 220. Output 248 connects to analog input 232 of time domain measurement circuit 230. The signal at input 242 of buffer amplifier 240 is an analog representation of optical signal sample 152.

Optical signal sample 152 can be characterized by a bit-rate f_{bit} when the optical signal sample 152 is a non-return-to-zero (NRZ) digital signal. Forward rate detector 210 produces a signal at output 214, which is an estimate of the bit-rate of the signal at input 242. In one embodiment, the signal at output 214 may be a digital representation of the estimated bit-rate.

Clock recovery circuit 220 includes a rate control input 224, which sets the particular frequency of operation in accordance with known techniques for clock recovery. Clock recovery circuit 220 generates a clock signal at output 226, which is synchronized with transitions in the signal at input 222 of clock recovery circuit 220 when rate control input 224 is set to a value that corresponds sufficiently close to f_{bit}. Rate control input 224 of clock recovery circuit receives a rate estimate signal from output 214 of forward rate detector 210.

As shown, clock recovery circuit 220 also includes a loss of lock signal output 228 that is active when clock output 226 is not synchronized to input 222. The signal at input 216 of forward rate detector 210 alters the algorithm used to determine the estimated bit rate of the signal applied to input 212. Different algorithms may be used depending on the current and past lock status of clock recovery circuit 220. In one embodiment, clock recovery circuit 220 may be implemented using known techniques for performing programmable clock recovery. Alternatively, clock recovery circuit 220 may be implemented in accordance with methods and apparatuses described in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/199,480, entitled "Method And Apparatus For Variable Bit Rate Clock Recovery."

Time domain measurement circuit 230 includes a clock input 234 and a rate input 236, which connect to output 226 of clock recovery circuit 220 and output 214 of forward rate detector 210, respectively. Using the clock signal at output 226 of clock recovery circuit 220, time domain measurement circuit 230 may perform waveform measurements on the analog signal at input 232. Time domain measurement circuit 230 may measure, for example, the eye-pattern in the optical signal sample 152, from which one can determine activity on a particular wavelength, directly calculate signal power levels and noise, and calculate jitter. Alternatively, time domain measurement circuit 230 may reconstruct the digital signal in optical signal sample 152 and subsequently assess particular characteristics of the digital signal.

Eye-pattern measurement is a time domain waveform measurement technique routinely employed to monitor and maintain digital transmission systems. The eye-pattern is an ensemble of average or superposition of pulse patterns corresponding to all different bit sequences. The ensemble may be obtained by sampling the signal waveform using a phase locked clock. The waveform can be characterized by the high and low mean signal levels μ_{hi} and μ_{lo}, and the variance in these levels σ_{hi} and σ_{lo}, respectively. The bit error rate (BER) of the signal can be accurately estimated from these eye-pattern parameters:

$$BER \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{Qopt/\sqrt{2}}^{\infty} e^{-u^2}\, du = \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{erfc}\left[\frac{Qopt}{\sqrt{2}}\right]$$

where

$$Qopt = \frac{\mu_{hi} - \mu_{lo}}{\sigma_{hi} + \sigma_{lo}}$$

In addition, jitter and wander can be assessed from the shape and variation of the transitions from low to high and vice versa. Eye-pattern measurements are an efficient diagnostic tool for assessing both slowly and rapidly changing transmission link performance. The eye-pattern provides a direct and consistent measure of signal parameters. An eye-pattern is especially important in WDM since the characteristics of the signal source and route may be highly variable.

The clock signal at output 226 of clock recover circuit 220 may be used to reconstruct the corresponding digital signal. Several measurements may be performed using the information contained in the recovered digital signal, depending on the transmission layer protocol. For example, byte alignment, framing, and error detection may be performed using a synchronized clock and knowledge of the bit rate. Pattern detection can be used to identify, for example, SONET A1A2 framing or the special symbols used in Gigabit Ethernet or Fiberchannel block coding. When the bit stream is associated with, for example, SONET, the error rate can be directly measured using the embedded Bit Interleaved Parity 8 (BIP8) bytes.

Furthermore, confirmation of bit synchronization may be used for rate reporting and as a criteria for usage billing. Additional monitoring functions could include determining source and destination address and cell or packet length and type. This information is useful for traffic monitoring and traffic characterization based on addressing and type as well as assessing network resource utilization.

FIG. 3 illustrates a block diagram of forward rate detector 210, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Alternatively, forward rate detector 210 may be implemented in accordance with methods and apparatuses described in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 09/199,480, entitled "Method And Apparatus For Variable Bit Rate Clock Recovery."

Forward rate detector 210 comprises a limiting amplifier 310, minimum transition interval detection circuit 320, transition counter 330, event rate counter 340, digital window comparator 350, successive approximation register 360, and a look-up table memory 370.

Forward rate detector 210 generates at output 204 a signal, which represents an estimate f_{est} for the value of the bit-rate f_{bit} of the signal applied at input 242. In one embodiment, the signal at output 204 has a binary weighted value that tracks the value of f_{bit}. In another embodiment, the signal at output 204 represents a set of one or more classifications of f_{bit}.

Minimum transition interval detection circuit 320 receives at input 322 an amplitude limited signal from amplifier 310 and at control signal input 324 a signal from register 360. The signal at control signal input 324 may, for example, include an m-bit wide digital word at lines 324_1–324_m (not shown), respectively. The signal at control input 324 programs n time reference intervals τ_{r_1}–τ_{r_n}. The signal at output 326 may, for example, include an n-bit wide digital word at lines 326_1–326_n (not shown), respectively

Minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** compares the time between consecutive transitions, Δt, of the signal at input **322** with each of the programmed time reference intervals τ_{r_1}–τ_{r_n}. Each of the n output lines 326_1–326_n corresponds to one of the n time interval comparisons. For each i=1, . . . , n, output 326_i may be high if $\Delta t<\tau_{r\_i}$ and may be low if $\Delta t>\tau_{r\_i}$. In particular, the probability that output 326_i assumes a high value following consecutive transitions at input **322** is a monotonic function of the difference $\Delta t-\tau_{r\_i}$.

Transition counter **330** generates a pulse at output **334** after a prescribed number, N_{i_tran}, of consecutive transitions have occurred at input **332**, where N_{i_tran} is an integer with a value of, for example, 32.

Event rate counter **340** includes inputs **342**, **344**, and **346**, which connect to output **314** of limiting amplifier **310**, output **326** of minimum transition interval circuit **320**, and output **334** of counter **330**, respectively.

Event counter **340** generates a k-bit word at output **348**, which includes lines 348_1–348_k, where the k-bit word depends on the number of times the output lines 326_1–326_n of transition detector **320** are high following a level transition in input signal **342** during the time interval between consecutive pulses at input **346**.

Window comparator **350** includes an input **352**, which connects to output **348** of event counter **340**. Window comparator **305** also includes an output **354**, which includes q signals in lines 354_1–354_q (not shown), respectively, where $2 \leqq q \leqq n$.

Register **360** includes inputs **362**, **364**, and **366**, which connect to output **354** of window comparator **350**, output **334** of counter **330**, and loss of lock output **228**, respectively. Register **360** also includes an output **368**, which connects to input **324** of detector **320** and input **372** of look-up table memory **370**. Output **374** of memory **370**, which represents the signal at rate estimate output **204**, connects to rate control input **224** of clock recovery circuit **220**.

Forward rate detector **210** detects the bit-rate of optical signal sample **152** by estimating the minimum time interval between input signal transitions. Consecutive transitions of optical signal sample **152** can be assigned a time interval Δt_i. For a sufficiently large sample of transitions N_{i_tran}, for example, N_{i_tran}=32, the minimum value of the observed Δt_i will be $1/f_{bit}$, which may be represented as

$$\min_{i=1,N_{i-tran}} \Delta t = 1/f_{bit}.$$

Minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** compares consecutive transition intervals against one or more reference time intervals. Event counter **340** and window comparator **350** classify the rate of responses from the interval comparisons present at output **326** of transition detector **320**. The estimated bit rate is classified according to its relationship with the rates $1/\tau_{r\_i}$ corresponding to the reference time intervals τ_{r_i}.

Forward rate detector **210** may estimate the bit-rate of optical signal sample **152** with m-bit resolution or may distinguish the bit-rate within a particular set of q+1 rate categories. The two modes may be used simultaneously. For high resolution bit-rate tracking, one or more references intervals τ_{r_i} are adjusted by register **360** via output **368** as a result of the classification process performed by event counter **340** and window comparator **350** such that one or more reference intervals τ_{r_i} match the minimum of Δt_i.

For rapid rate classification, one or more sets of reference time intervals are selected for which the corresponding rates $1/\tau_{r\_i}$ lie between the bit-rates of interest in optical signal sample **152**. The classification process performed by event counter **340** and window comparator **350**, in addition to interval assignment by register **360**, determines which reference interval most likely includes the bit rate of optical signal sample **152**. Register **360** may instruct detector **320** to use different sets of reference time intervals if clock recovery circuit **220** fails to achieve clock acquisition.

In one embodiment of the invention, precise rate measurements may be made with, for example, n=2, m=10, and q=2. $\tau_{r\_1}=\tau_{r\_2}$ may have a value that is monotonically related to the binary weighted value of the word represented by the collection of inputs lines 324_1–324_m. The monotonic relation may, for example, be linear or semi-logarithmic.

Event counter **340** assigns to output lines 348_1–348_k a binary weighted value corresponding to the total number of times output lines 326_1–326_n were individually high following a level transition at input **342** during the time interval between consecutive pulses applied to input **346** of event counter **340**.

Window comparator **350** compares the binary weighted value at input **352** against a predetermined high value N_{hi} and a predetermined low value N_{lo}. Output line 354_1 is high if N_{hi} is smaller than the value at input **352**, and output line 354_2 is high if N_{lo} is greater than the value at input **352**.

Register **360** may be an m stage binary up-down counter whose count direction (hold, up or down) may be controlled by outputs 354_1 and 354_2, which connect to inputs 362_1 and 362_2, respectively. Depending on the number of pulses appearing at input **364** of register **360** during the time which input **366** may be at a high state, representing prolonged loss of lock by clock recovery circuit **220**, the register may count by increments of, for example, 0 or ±1 or by progressive steps of binary weight value of, for example, 0 or 2^{n-step} with n step=m, m−1 , . . . , 0.

Look up table **370** maps the m-bit word at output **368** into a bit-rate estimate signal **204** with a prescribed representation. Look-up table **370** may use, for example, a known transfer function relating the control input **324** and the response bit-rate f_{bit}, which may include a correction for known temperature dependencies, to convert the m-bit digital word at output **368** into the binary coded decimal word representing the estimated bit-rate.

In another embodiment, particular sets of rates may be rapidly distinguished by setting, for example, n=4, q=n, m=q+4, and k to a multiple of n. Accordingly, control input lines 324_1–324_3 may select one of eight predetermined values for each of τ_{r_1}, τ_{r_2}, τ_{r_3} and τ_{r_4}.

Each set of k/n output lines 348_1–348_k includes a binary weighted value equal to the total number of times the corresponding input 326_i, for i=1, . . . , n, is high following transitions in the signal at input **342** during the time interval between consecutive pulses at input **346**.

Each of output lines 354_1–354_q corresponds to a k/n subset of inputs such that an output lines 354_i is high if the word represented by the corresponding k/n bits includes a binary weighted value that exceeds a predetermined value N_{hi}.

Register **360** may include a q input priority encoded with q+1 outputs, q+1 latches enabled by pulses applied to input **360**, and an m−q−1=3 bit binary counter.

Look-up table **370** may assign the appropriate rate to the m-bit digital word at output **368**, which connects to input **324** of minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** and input **372** of look-up table **370**. Look-up table **370** may, for example, include an mxr memory. The memory output locations may include r-bit representations of the rates

corresponding to references time intervals selected by the control signal at control input **324**.

FIG. **4** illustrates an emitter coupled logic (ECL) implementation of minimum transition interval detection circuit **320**, which uses pulse-width auto-correlations responsive to rising edge transitions, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** comprises an input **322**, control input **324**, output **326**, ECL gate **410** D-type latching comparator **430**, and a programmable delay element **408**. Programmable delay element **408** includes an ECL OR/NOR gate **420**, capacitor **440**, voltage reference **450**, transistor **460**, and programmable current sources **444** and **464**.

Input **322** connects to inputs **412** and **422** of gate **410** and OR/NOR gate **420**, respectively. Non-inverting output **416** of gate **410** connects to second input **424** of OR/NOR gate **420**. Inverting output **418** of gate **410** drives clock input **436** of latching comparator **430**. Gate **420** includes a non-inverting output **426** and an inverting output **428**. Output **428** is an open-emitter, allowing gate **420** to perform a current gating function. Capacitor **440** connects to output **426** and node **442**.

Node **442** connects to open-emitter output **428** and controlled current source **444**. Capacitor **440** is charged by current from output **428** and is discharged at a controlled rate by the current I_{444} from source **444**. Non-inverting data input **432** of latched comparator **430** senses the voltage at node **442**.

Reference voltage **450** connects to the base of transistor **460** whose emitter is connected to node **462**. Controlled current source **464** also connects to node **462**. Current sources **444** and **464** include control inputs **446** and **466**, respectively, which are both connected to control input **324**. Inverting data input **434** of latched comparator **430** senses the voltage on node **462**.

Comparator **430** senses the voltage difference between inputs **432** and **434** when clock input **436** is low. Output **438** of latching comparator **430** is updated on the rising edge transition of enable input **436**. Latching comparator **430** may, for example, be a D-type flip flop with differential data inputs. Detector output **326** connects to output **438** of latching comparator **430**.

In the embodiment of FIG. **4**, minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** responds to a rising edge transition of the digital signal applied to input **322** and determines whether the subsequent falling edge transition occurs before or after a programmable reference time interval τ_r has elapsed. In an alternative embodiment, multiple minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** connected in parallel may each receive a replica of the signal at input **322** with opposing polarity, and may subsequently measure the minimum transition interval associated with both rising and falling edge transitions.

The quiescent state of minimum transition interval detection circuit **320** is defined when input **322** is low. In the quiescent state, gate output **418** is high and output **416** is low. When input **322** and output **416** are low, gate output **426** is low and output **428** is high. Output **428** conducts most of the current from source **444**. The voltage across capacitor C_{440} in the quiescent state is the difference between V_{428}^{hi} at output **428**, for example −0.8V, and V_{426}^{low} at output **426**, for example −1.8V.

A reference voltage V_{462} is created at node **462** by voltage reference **450**, transistor **460**, and current source **464**. The reference voltage may be chosen to be lower than the quiescent voltage at output **428**, for example −1.5V. The quiescent voltage at output **428** may be altered by changes in current I_{444} flowing into current source **444**. Current sources **444** and **464** have related outputs through their common control via inputs **324**. The change in the quiescent voltage at output **428**, which is associated with the current through source **444**, may be matched by the change in voltage at node **462** associated with current source **464**. Comparator **430** is not responsive to the like current dependent offsets applied simultaneously to differential inputs **432** and **434**.

Gate **420** and gate **410** respond when input signal **322** transitions from low to high after a gate propagation delay, output **416** and output **426** transition from low to high, output **418** transitions from high to low, and output **428** ceases to conduct current from source **444**. The positive transition at output **426** to V_{426}^{hi} drives node **442** high, while the current from source **444** causes the voltage at node **442** subsequently decrease with time. The voltage at node **442** will equal the voltage at node **462** after period τ_r, has elapsed, and may be represented as follows:

$$I_{444}\tau_r = C_{440}(V_{428}^{hi} + V_{426}^{hi} - V_{426}^{low} - V_{462}) - Q_{428},$$

where Q_{428} is the charge absorbed by output **428** as it goes inactive.

Gate **410** responds to a subsequent high-to-low transition of input **322** and after a gate propagation delay, output **416** transitions high to low, and output **418** transitions low to high. The low-to-high transition at output **418** activates comparator clock input **436**. If clock input **436** transitions from high to low before τ_r has elapsed, output **438** will be high. Otherwise, output **438** will be low. A high level at output **438** indicates $1/f_{bit} < \tau_r$.

Gate **420** responds to the high-to-low transition of output **416**, two gate delays following the high-to-low transition of input **322**, with output **428** becoming active and raising the voltage at node **442** to V_{428}^{hi} while output **426** goes low. The connection of output **416** to input **424** delays the response of gate **420** to falling edge input transitions so as not to disturb the voltage at node **442** while comparator **430** is being latched.

FIG. **5***a* illustrates a block diagram of time domain measurement circuit **230**, which performs self-calibrating waveform measurement suitable for network monitoring applications, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Measurement circuit **230** includes an analog input **232**, recovered clock input **234**, sampling rate clock **502**, clock divide-by-2 circuit **510**, limiting amplifier **516**, D-type flip-flop **520**, counter **530**, programmable delay generator **540**, sampler driver **550**, sampling circuits **560** and **570**, two channel analog multiplexer **580**, analog-to-digital (A/D) converter **586**, and an event accumulator **590**. Clock divide-by-2 circuit **510**, limiting amplifier **516**, D-type flip-flop **520**, sampling circuit **570**, and input **234** constitute a time base auto-calibration circuit.

The analog signal at input **232**, which connects to output **248** of buffer amplifier **240**, is a replica of optical signal sample **152**. Sampler **560** includes input **562**, which connects to input **232**. Since input **234** connects to clock recovery circuit **220**, the clock signal at input **234** is synchronous with transitions in the signal at input **232**.

Clock divide-by-2 circuit **510** includes an output **514**, which connects to input **522** of D-type flip-flop **520** and input **518** of limiting amplifier **516**. The signal at output **514** is a square wave pulse train with transitions at $1/f_{bit}$ intervals synchronized with the signal at input **234**. The signal at output **514** may be used, for example, to perform time base calibration.

Limiting amplifier **516** includes an output **519**, which connects to an input **572** of sampler **570**. The amplitude of the signal at output **519** may include a predetermined value, making the signal useful for amplitude calibration purposes.

D-type flip-flop **520** includes an input **524**, which connects to a sampling rate clock **502**, and an output **526**, which connects to input **532** of counter **530** and input **542** of programmable delay generator **540**. The rate of the waveform sampling process may be controlled by clock **502**.

Counter **530** includes a digital output **534**, which connects to delay control input **544** and write address input **594** of event accumulator **590**. Pulse output **548** connects to trigger input **552** of sampler driver **550**. Sampler driver **550** produces a very short pulse at output **554** in response to a falling edge transition applied to input **552**.

Programmable delay generator **540** includes a trigger input **542**, delay control input **544**, rate range input **546**, and a pulse output **548**. Programmable delay **540** generates a delayed falling edge pulse at output **548** in response to a rising edge transition at input **542**. The falling edge at output **548** is delayed by a period of time τ_{OS}, which is determined by delay control input **544** and rate range input **546**. The delay period τ_{OS} is coarsely tuned by input **546** and finely tuned by input **544**. Rate range input **546** receives a rate estimate signal at input **236**.

Sampler **560** includes a gating input **564** and output **566**. Sampler **570** includes a gating input **574** and output **576**. Gating inputs **564** and **574** both connect to sampler driver output **554**. A short pulse applied to gating inputs **564** and **574** cause samplers to transiently measure the voltage appearing at their respective inputs **562** and **572**.

Samplers **560** and **570** include signal outputs **566** and **576**, respectively, which are connected to inputs **581** and **582**, respectively, of analog multiplexer **580**. Analog multiplexer **580** holds the voltage level applied to inputs **581** and **582**, and alternately presents these voltages to A/D converter **586**. Digital output **588** from A/D converter **586** is received by write input **592**.

Event accumulator **590** includes a write input **592**, write address **594**, read output **596**, and a read address input **598**. Event accumulator **590** receives at input **592** m-bit digital words from A/D converter **586** corresponding to voltage levels on inputs **581** and **582**. Event accumulator **590** receives at input **594** p-bit digital words corresponding to the delay applied to the trigger pulse, which initiated acquisition of the waveform samples appearing as voltage levels at inputs **581** and **582**.

Event accumulator **590** performs an auto-regressive average of the number of times a particular word appears at input **592** coincident with another particular word at input **594**. Event accumulator **590** may, for example, comprise an mxpxq random access memory and an arithmetic logic unit. It will be recognized that the contents of the registers in accumulator **590** constitute a histogram of voltage levels as a function of delay time for both the analog signal at input **232** and the square wave signal at output **519**. The set of histograms for the analog signal at input **232** constitute an eye-diagram for the measured waveform. The set of histograms for the square wave signal at output **519** constitute a measured calibration waveform. The two histogram arrays, one for the eye-pattern and one for the calibration waveform, may be accessed at output **596** via addressing by read address input **598**.

FIG. **5***b* illustrates an eye-pattern for the analog signal at input **232** of time domain measurement circuit **230**. FIG. **5***c* illustrates the square wave calibration signal at output **519** of limiting amplifier **516**. A rising edge transition associated with the triggering of sampler driver **550** is shown. FIG. **5***d* illustrate the sampling pulse at output **554** of sampler driver **550**. As shown, the sampling pulse at output **554** is delayed by time τ_{OS}.

The sampling pulse at output **554** is finely stepped across the measured waveform. The period of the measured waveform may vary from 100 psec to 100 nsec, requiring different size steps for τ_{OS}. The step size of τ_{OS} is represented by a controlled rate signal at input **546** to programmable delay generator **540**. The estimated rate signal at input **236** provides the necessary information to automatically chose the appropriate set size for τ_{OS}.

Eye-pattern measurements require accurate correlation of amplitude and time. To produce a delay τ_{OS} that has low jitter and a precisely controlled value, more complex circuits known in the art may be used to achieve both accuracy and low jitter. Complex circuits, however, may not be appropriate for performing automated waveform measurement in WDM networks.

Accordingly, programmable delay generator **540** may comprise, for example, delay element **408** shown in FIG. **4**, which is simple, has low jitter, and has a monotonic response to the control currents. Measurement of calibration signal **519** performed simultaneously with measurement of the analog signal at input **232** provides an internal time reference for calibrating the delay τ_{OS}. In one embodiment, the time values associated with the waveform voltage samples may be calculated by interpolating the time values assigned to measured transitions in calibration waveform **519**.

FIG. **6** illustrates a block diagram of time domain measurement circuit **230**, in accordance with an embodiment of the invention. Measurement circuit **230** comprises a decision flip-flop **620**, shift register **630**, rate-addressed look-up table **640**, and byte-processing circuit **650**.

Decision flip-flop **620** includes an analog input **622**, clock input **624**, and a digital output **626**. Shift register **630** includes a serial input **632**, clock input **634**, and a parallel data output **636**. Lookup table **640** includes a rate estimate input **642** and a data field descriptor output **644**. Byte-processing circuit **650** includes a parallel data input **652**, data field descriptor input **654**, and a clock input **656**.

Optical signal sample **152** may be an optical sampling means as shown in FIG. **1**. Alternatively, optical signal sample **152** may be obtained from an optical fiber used for accessing an optical network. As shown in FIG. **6**, light from optical signal sample **152** is incident on photodetector **150** whose current output is received by input **162** of electrical amplifier **160**. Output **164** of amplifier **160** connects to input **242** of buffer amplifier **240**, which generates three replicas of input signal **242** at outputs **244**, **246**, and **248**.

Output **244** connects to input **212** of forward rate detector **210**. Output **246** connects to input **222** of clock recovery **220**. Output **248** connects to analog input **622** of decision flip-flop **620**. Rate control input **224** of clock recovery circuit **220** connects to rate estimate output **214** of forward rate detector **210**. Forward rate detector **210** rapidly estimates the bit-rate of input signal **152**. The rate estimate signal at input **214** sets rate control input **224** of clock recovery circuit **220** so that clock recovery circuit **220** can appropriately respond to the bit-rate of input signal **152**.

When forward rate detector **210** is implemented as a discrete rate detector, the step of rate estimation may be accomplished within, for example, 8 to 32 signal transitions following the onset of input signal **152**. Rate detector **210** accepts control input **216** from loss of lock output **228** of clock recovery circuit **220**. Recovered clock output **226** connects to clock inputs **624** and **634** of decision circuit **620**

and shift register **630**, respectively. Output **226** also connects to clock input **656**.

Decision flip-flop **620** converts the analog signal at input **622** into a re-timed digital bit-stream at output **626**. Shift register **630** converts the serial bit stream into a set of time shifted bit streams.

Look-up table **640** receives at input **642** the estimated rate output **214**. Different rate specific information may be stored in look-up table **640**, including, for example, byte alignment bit patterns, frame alignment bit-patterns, location of address data, location of error detection data, location of error correction data, and location cell or packet description data. The desired rate specific bit patterns and locations may be provided at output **644**.

There are several additional time domain measurements, which may be performed with the recovered clock at output **226** in addition to error detection as previously mentioned. For example, the clock may be used to recover the bit stream so that appropriate computations, such as BIP8, may be performed. Confirmation of bit synchronization may be used for rate reporting and as criteria for usage billing. Other bit level functions may include traffic monitoring and traffic characterization based on addressing and type as well as assessing network resource utilization.

While it has been illustrated and described what are at present considered to be preferred embodiments and methods of the present invention, it will be understood by those skilled in the art that various changes and modifications may be made, and equivalents may be substituted for elements thereof without departing from the true scope of the invention.

In addition, many modifications may be made to adapt a particular element, technique or implementation to the teachings of the present invention without departing from the central scope of the invention. Therefore, it is intended that this invention not be limited to the particular embodiments and methods disclosed herein, but that the invention include all embodiments falling within the scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between consecutive transitions in the input signal;

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated minimum time interval;

recovering the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined bit rate and the recovered clock signal.

2. A method for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated minimum time interval;

recovering the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, said performing step including the step of reconstructing a digital signal from the monitored input signal by sampling the input signal based on the recovered clock signal.

3. The method of claim **2**, wherein the reconstructing step includes the step of:

sampling one or more bit intervals in the input signal.

4. The method of claim **2**, wherein the reconstructing step includes the step of:

sampling the input signal at a midpoint of a bit interval in the input signal.

5. The method of claim **1**, wherein the performing step includes the steps of:

determining a rate specific signal characteristic of the input signal based on the determined bit rate; and

measuring the input signal based on the rate specific signal characteristic.

6. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining a byte alignment bit pattern associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

7. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining a frame alignment bit pattern associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

8. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining location of address data associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

9. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining location of error detection data associated with the signal input based on the determined bit rate.

10. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining location of error correction data associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

11. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining location of packet descriptive data associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

12. The method of claim **5**, wherein the step of determining the rate specific signal characteristic includes the step of:

determining location of cell description data with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

13. The method of claim **1**, wherein the performing step includes the step of:

identifying a protocol associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

14. The method of claim **1**, wherein the performing step includes the step of:

determining a location of information associated with the input signal based on the determined bit rate.

15. The method of claim **14**, wherein the step of determining the location includes the step of:

extracting the information at the determined location in the input signal.

16. A method for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated minimum time interval;

recovering the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the performing step including the steps of:

sampling the recovered clock signal and the input signal at a plurality of times to generate a clock signal histogram and an input signal histogram; and

using the clock signal histogram to calibrate the timing sequence of the sampled input signal histogram.

17. A method for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated minimum time interval;

recovering the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the performing step including the steps of:

sampling the recovered clock signal and the input signal at a plurality of times to generate a clock signal histogram and an input signal histogram; and

using the clock signal histogram to calibrate the amplitude of the sampled input signal histogram.

18. The method of claim 1, wherein the estimating step includes the step of:

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated minimum time interval.

19. A method for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a variable bit rate of the input signal based on the estimated time interval;

recovering the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, and wherein the estimating step includes the steps of:

generating a plurality of test pulses that correlate to the transitions in the input signal; and

adjusting the duration of each of the plurality of test pulses such that the minimum time intervals between the transitions in the input signal match the durations of the corresponding plurality of pulses.

20. A method for determining characteristics of an input signal comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal;

wherein the estimating step includes the steps of:

generating a set of delayed input signals using a set of programmable delay times, respectively;

comparing the transitions in the input signal with the set of delayed input signals; and

identifying the nearest predetermined delay times that are before and after the minimum transition time interval between the transitions in the input signal.

21. The method of claim 20, wherein the generating step includes the step of:

resetting one or more of the programmable delay elements after the comparing step.

22. A method for determining characteristics of an input signal comprising the steps of:

estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

determining a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval; and

performing a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal;

wherein the estimating step includes the steps of:

generating a set of delayed input signals using a set of programmable delay elements delaying the input signal based on a set of predetermined delay times, respectively;

comparing the transitions in the input signal with the set of delayed input signals; and

adjusting one or more of the programmable delay elements, such that minimum time intervals between the transitions in the input signal match one or more of the set of predetermined delay times.

23. The method of claim 22, wherein the generating step includes the step of:

resetting one or more of the programmable delay elements after the comparing step.

24. An apparatus for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising:

a forward rate detector that determines the input signal's bit rate by measuring the minimum time interval between consecutive transitions in the input signal, said forward rate detector including a transition detector and line rate estimation circuitry;

a clock recovery circuit that recovers the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal.

25. An apparatus for determining the time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising:

a forward rate detector that determines the input signal's bit rate by estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

a clock recovery circuit that recovers the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the measuring circuit comprising:

a delay generator that generates a first pulse synchronized to the recovered clock signal;

a sampler driver that generates a second pulse in response to the first pulse; and

a first sampler that measures a plurality of instantaneous values of the input signal gated by the second pulse in order to generate a histogram of the input signal.

26. An apparatus for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising:

a forward rate detector that determines the input signal's bit rate by estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

a clock recovery circuit that recovers the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the measurement circuit comprising:

a decision circuit that reconstructs a digital signal from the monitored input signal by sampling the input signal based on the recovered clock signal.

27. The apparatus of claim 26, wherein the measurement circuit further comprises:

a converter that generates a stream based on the sampled input signal;

a storage device storing a set of rate specific signal characteristics that are referenced based on the determined bit rate; and

a processing circuit that measures the stream based on the set of rate specific signal characteristics.

28. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include a byte alignment bit pattern.

29. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include a frame alignment bit pattern.

30. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include location of address data.

31. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include location of error detection data.

32. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include location of error correction data.

33. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include packet description data.

34. The apparatus of claim 27, wherein the set of signal characteristics include cell description data.

35. An apparatus for determining the time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising:

a forward rate detector that determines the input signal's bit rate by estimating a minimum time interval between transitions in the input signal;

a clock recovery circuit that recovers the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the measurement circuit comprising a storage device storing a location of data associated with the input signal wherein the storage device is referenced based on the determined bit rate.

36. The apparatus of claim 35, wherein the measurement circuit further comprises:

a processing circuit that extracts information from the input signal based on the location data.

37. An apparatus for determining time domain characteristics of a monitored input signal from an optical network comprising:

a forward rate detector that determines the input signal's clock signal based on the determined bit rate; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the recovered clock signal, the measurement circuit comprising:

a delay generator that generates a first pulse synchronized to the recovered clock signal;

a sampler drive that generates a second pulse in response to the first pulse;

a first sampler that measures a plurality of instantaneous values of the input signal gated by the second pulse to generate an input signal histogram; and

a second sampler that measures a plurality of instantaneous values of the recovered clock signal gated by the second pulse to generate a clock signal histogram used to calibrate the input signal histogram.

38. An apparatus comprising:

a forward rate detector that estimates a minimum time interval between transitions in an input signal;

a clock recovery circuit that determines a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time intervals; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal;

wherein the forward rate detector comprises a minimum transition interval detection circuit that compares time intervals between consecutive transitions in the input signal with one or more reference intervals, the minimum transition interval detection circuit comprising:

a delay element that delays a first transition in the input signal by a first predetermined delay time and delays a second transition in the input signal by a second predetermined delay time; and

a comparator that compares the delayed first transition with the second transition.

39. An apparatus comprising:

a forward rate detector that estimates a minimum time interval between transitions in an input signal;

clock recovery circuit that determines a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal;

wherein the forward rate detector comprises

a minimum transition interval detection circuit that compares time intervals between consecutive transitions in the input signal with one or more reference intervals, the minimum transition interval detection circuit comprising

a set of delay elements that generate a set of delayed input signals based on a set of predetermined delay times; and

a comparator that compares transitions in the set of delayed input signals with the transitions in the input signal.

40. The apparatus of claim 39, wherein the forward rate detector comprises:

an encoder that identifies nearest ones of the set of predetermined delay times that are before and after the minimum time interval between the transitions in the input signal.

41. An apparatus comprising:

a forward rate detector that estimates a minimum time interval between transitions in an input signal;

a clock recovery circuit that determines a clock signal based on the estimated minimum time interval; and

a measurement circuit that performs a time domain measurement on the input signal based on the determined clock signal;

wherein the forward rate detector comprises:

a minimum transition interval detection circuit that compares time intervals between consecutive transitions in the input signal with one or more programmable reference intervals; and

a register that adjusts the programmable reference intervals such that one or more of the adjusted reference intervals match the minimum time interval between the transitions in the input signal.

* * * * *

US006265999B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Prucnal

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,265,999 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Jul. 24, 2001**

(54) **HIGH-SPEED SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL AND ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION**

(75) Inventor: **Paul R. Prucnal**, Princeton, NJ (US)

(73) Assignee: **Trustees of Princeton University**, Princeton, NJ (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **08/941,364**

(22) Filed: **Sep. 30, 1997**

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **H03N 1/00**
(52) **U.S. Cl.** **341/137**; 341/155; 359/237
(58) **Field of Search** 341/155, 100, 341/137, 139; 359/237, 245, 340, 341

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,947,170	8/1990	Falk	341/137
5,010,346	4/1991	Hamilton et al.	341/137
5,493,433	2/1996	Prucnal et al.	359/123
5,555,119 *	9/1996	Lewis	359/158
5,831,752	11/1998	Cotter et al.	359/135
5,887,092 *	3/1999	Van Der Tol	385/27
5,999,293	12/1999	Manning	359/139
6,028,424 *	2/2000	Twichell et al.	324/96

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0 103 468	3/1984	(EP) .
WO 96/05664	2/1996	(WO) .

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Koga R., et al: "A Single-Shot Measurement of a Picosecond Optical Pulse Waveform", pp. 373–379, vol. 236, 1980—European Conference on Optical Systems and Applications (Utrecht).

Kung-Li Deng et al: "Single-Shot Optical Sampling Oscilloscope for Ultrafast Optical Waveforms", pp. 268–269, vol. 6,—CLEO' 98.

Kung-Li Deng et al: "Single-Shot Optical Sampling Oscilloscope for Ultrafast Optical Waveforms", pp. 397–399, vol. 10, No. 3—IEEE Photonics Technology Letters, 3/98, IEEE, USA.

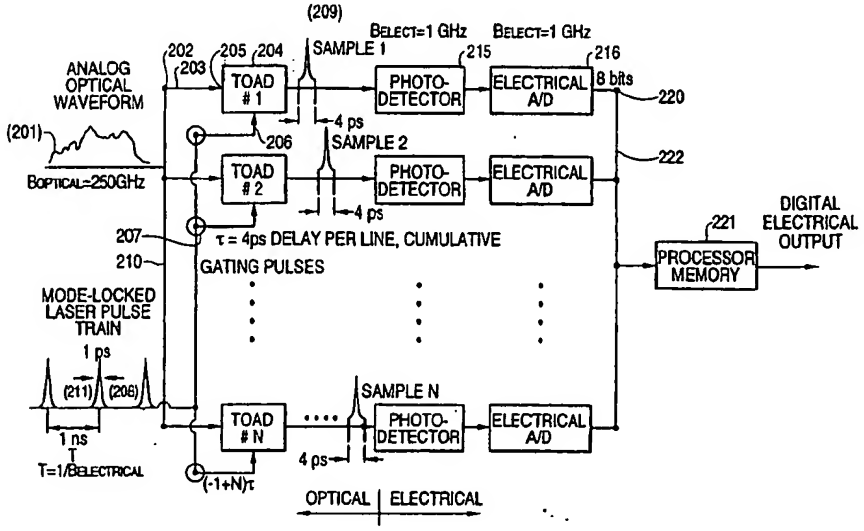
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Peguy JeanPierre
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Pennie & Edmonds LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

An optical-to-electrical converter includes an input port configured to receive an optical signal. The converter further includes a splitter configured to split the received optical signal into a plurality of optical signals. An optical stage has a plurality of parallel stages, and each parallel stage receives a corresponding one of the plurality of identical signals and outputs a corresponding one of a plurality of sampled optical signals within a corresponding sampling window. A plurality of delay circuits receive a clock signal having a plurality of clock pulses separated by a clock period. The delay circuits respectively output a plurality of control pulses at a plurality of delayed timings with respect to each clock pulse of the clock signal. An electrical stage receives the plurality of sampled optical signals and processes the optical signals at a sampling rate corresponding to the clock period of the clock signal.

34 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets



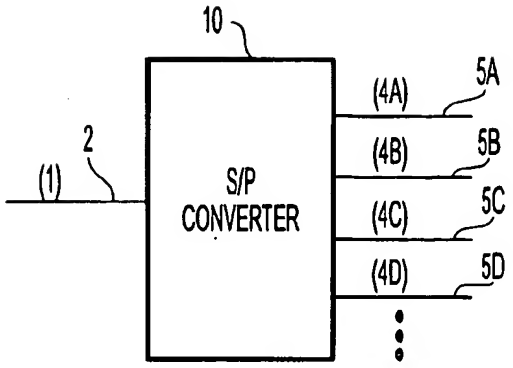

10
2
(1)
S/P CONVERTER
(4A)
5A
(4B)
5B
(4C)
5C
(4D)
5D

Fig. 1

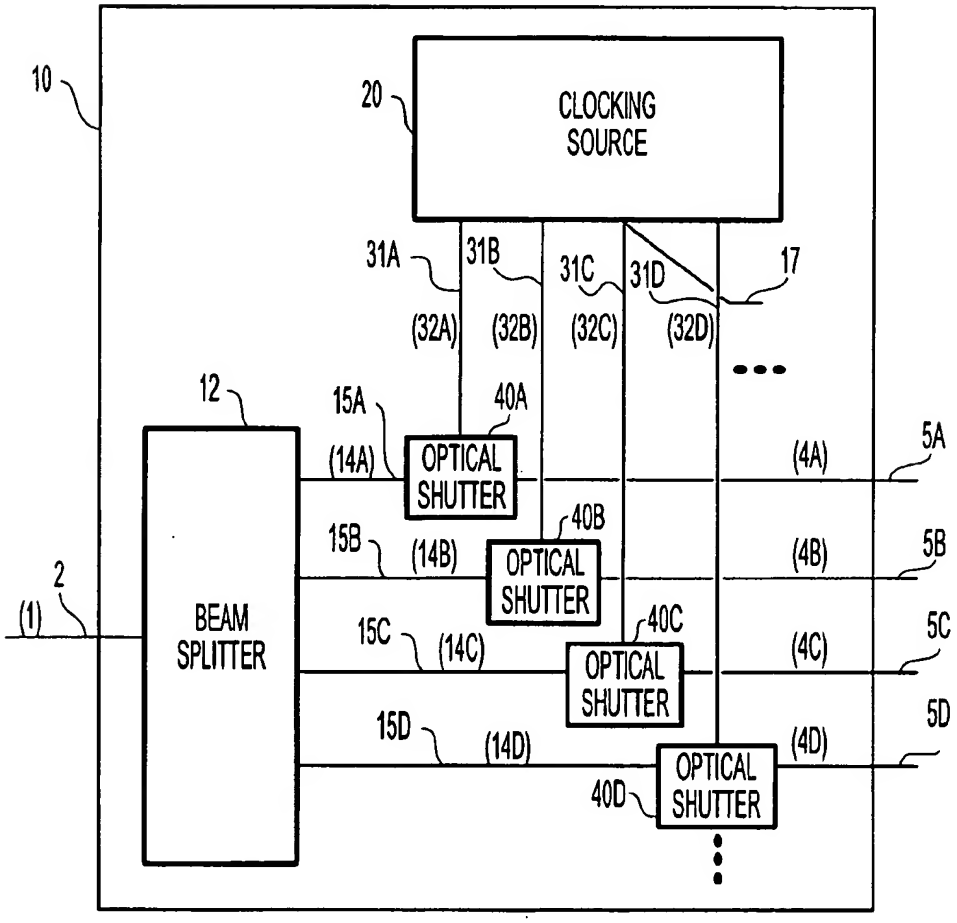

10
20
CLOCKING SOURCE
31A
31B
31C
31D
17
(32A)
(32B)
(32C)
(32D)
12
15A
40A
(14A)
OPTICAL SHUTTER
(4A)
5A
40B
15B
(14B)
OPTICAL SHUTTER
(4B)
5B
2
(1)
BEAM SPLITTER
15C
(14C)
40C
OPTICAL SHUTTER
(4C)
5C
15D
(14D)
(4D)
5D
40D
OPTICAL SHUTTER

Fig. 2

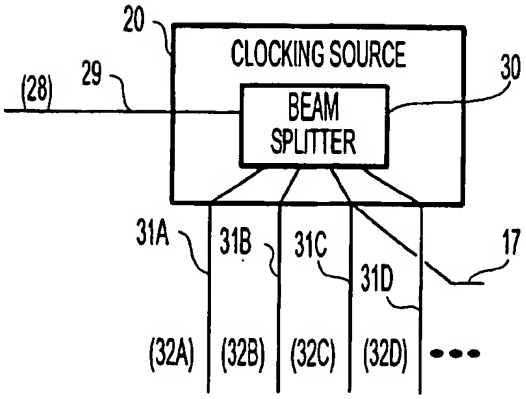


Fig. 3

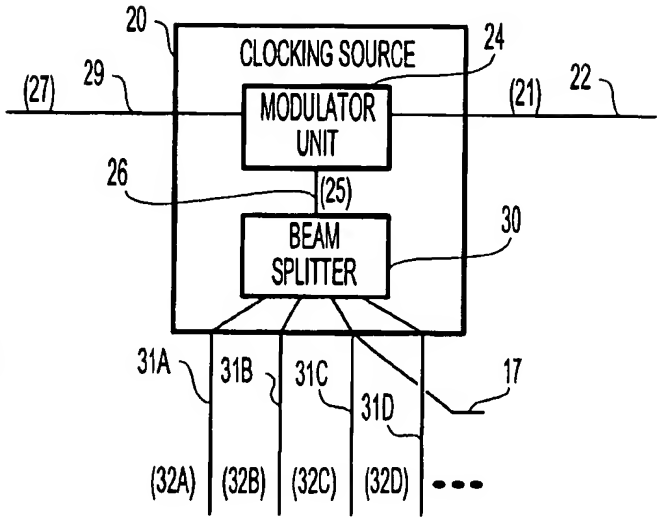


Fig. 4

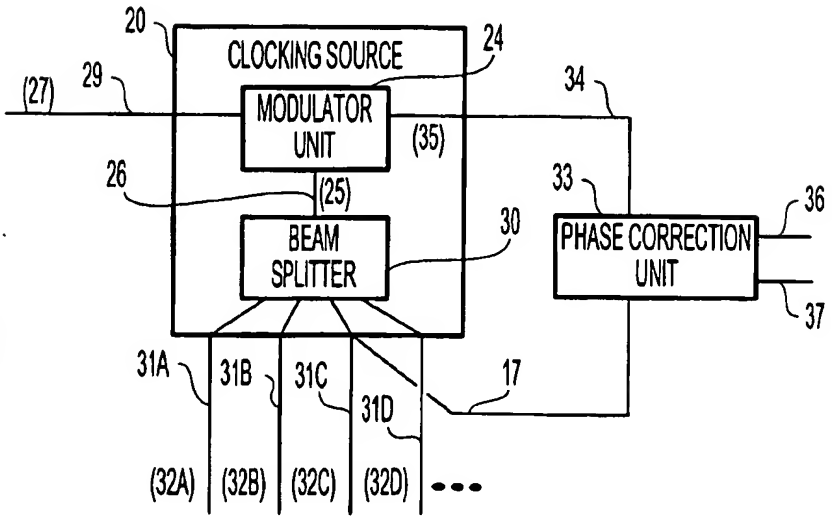


Fig. 5

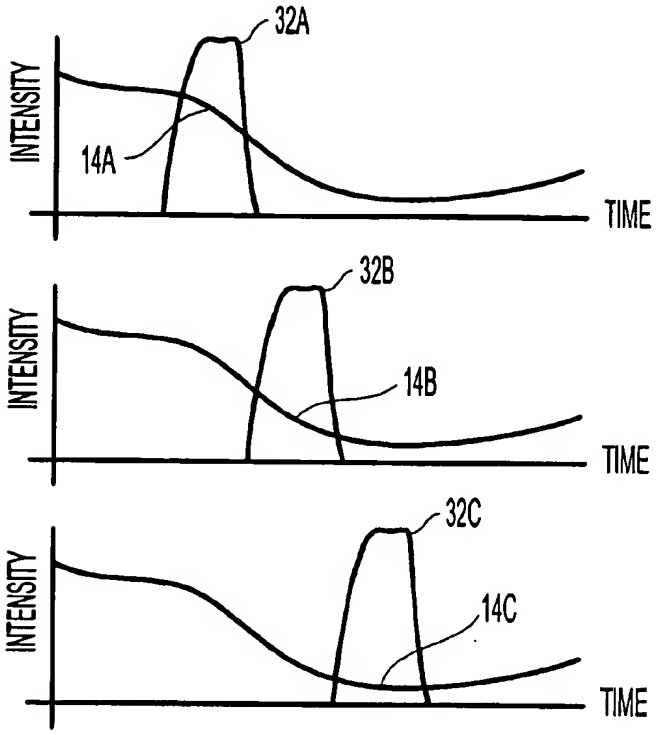

32A
INTENSITY
14A
TIME
32B
INTENSITY
14B
TIME
32C
INTENSITY
14C
TIME

Fig. 6

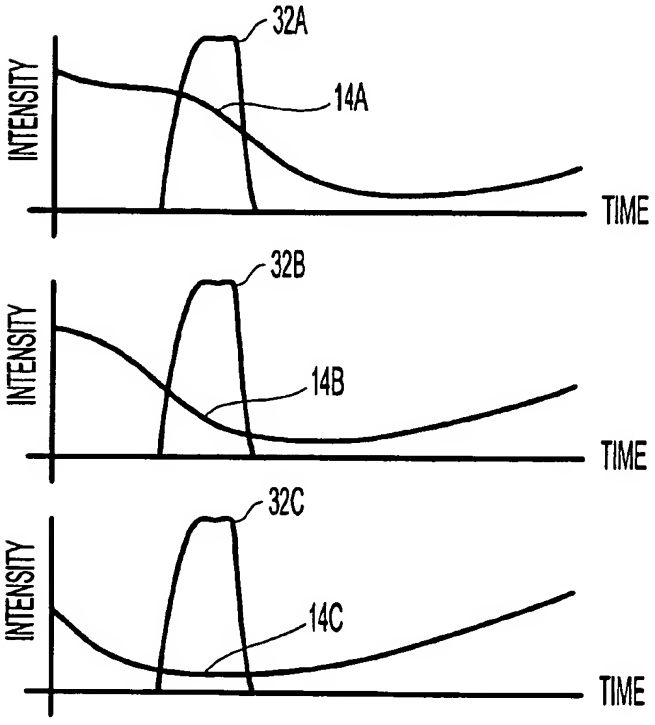

32A
INTENSITY
14A
TIME
32B
INTENSITY
14B
TIME
32C
INTENSITY
14C
TIME

Fig. 7

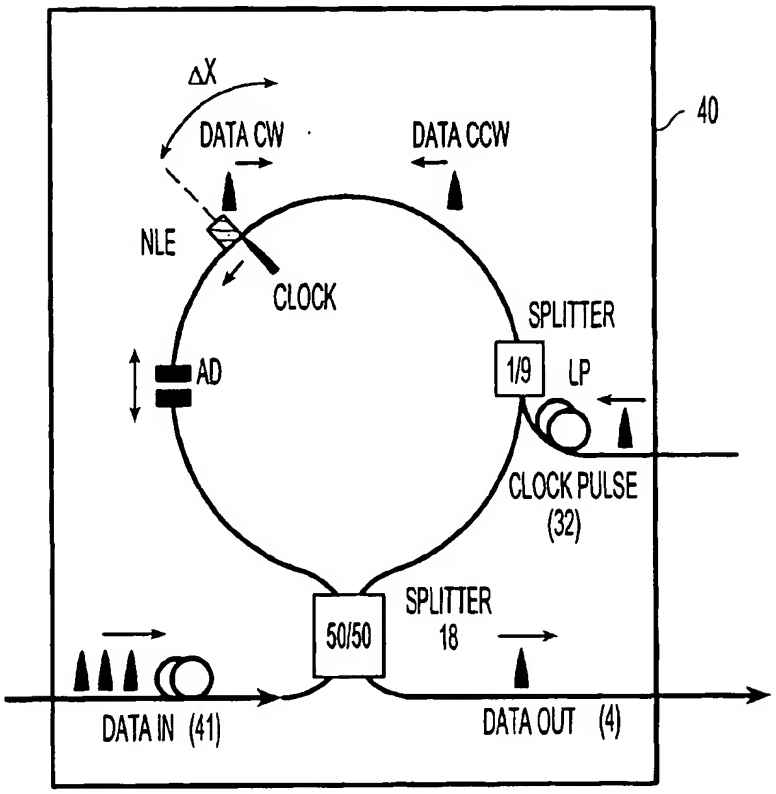

ΔX
DATA CW
DATA CCW
40
NLE
CLOCK
SPLITTER
1/9
LP
AD
CLOCK PULSE
(32)
SPLITTER
18
50/50
DATA IN (41)
DATA OUT (4)

Fig. 8

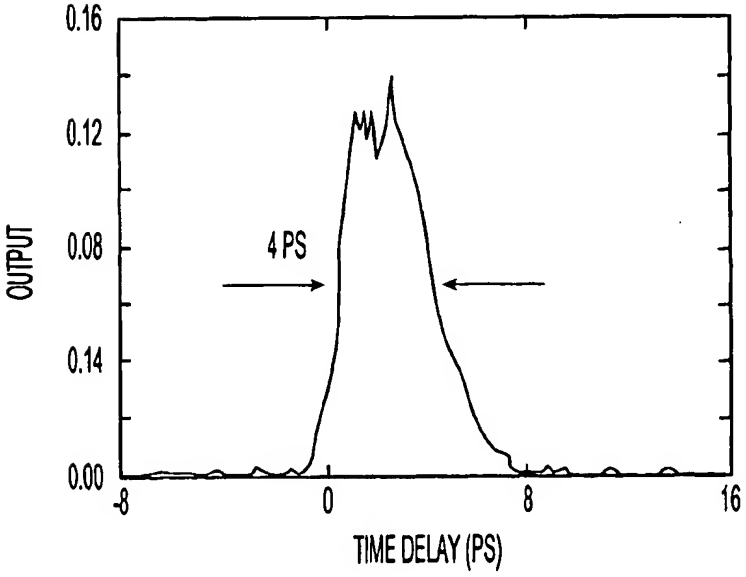

0.16
0.12
0.08
0.14
0.00
OUTPUT
4 PS
-8
0
8
16
TIME DELAY (PS)

Fig. 9

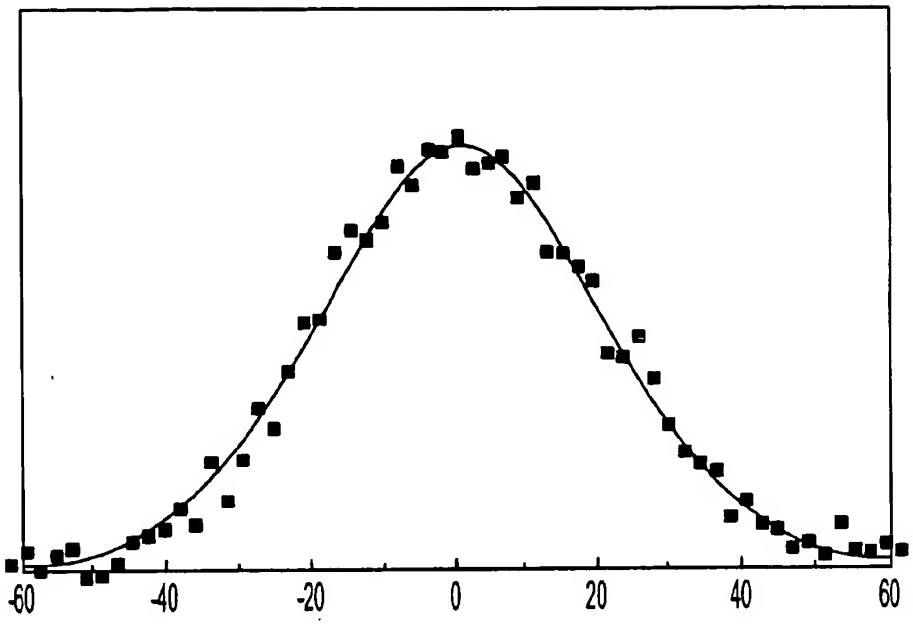


Fig. 10
Prior Art

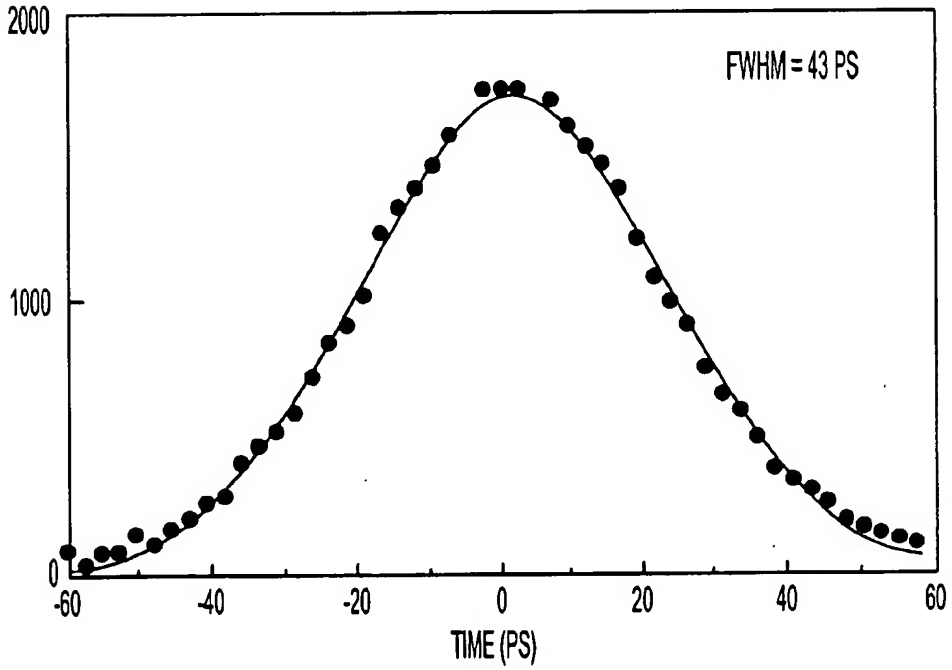


Fig. 11

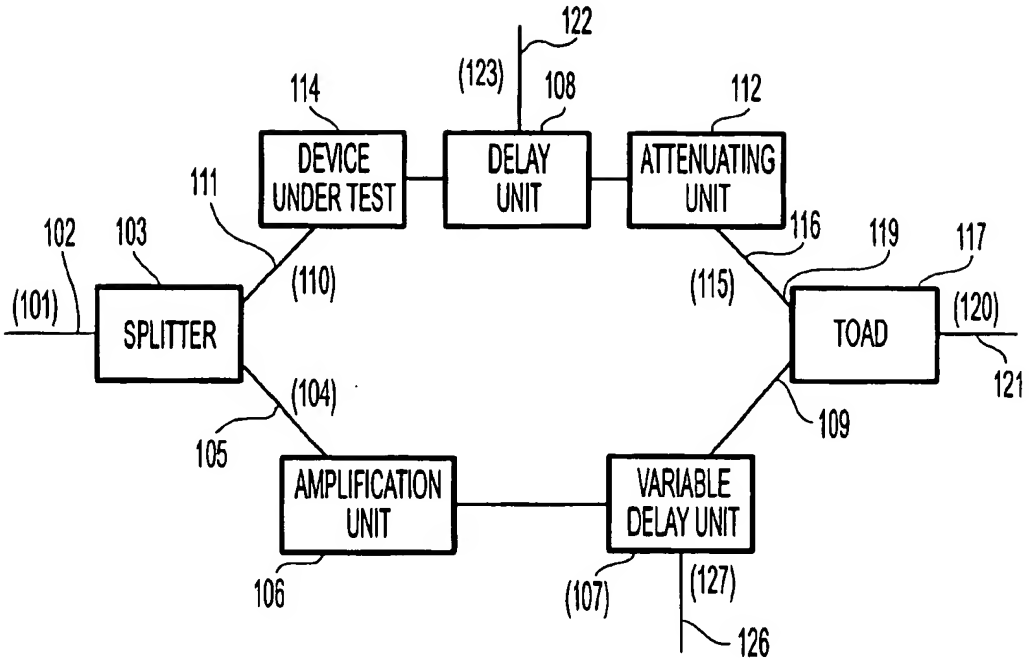

122
(123)
108
114
112
DEVICE UNDER TEST
DELAY UNIT
ATTENUATING UNIT
111
102
103
116
119
117
(101)
SPLITTER
(110)
(115)
TOAD
(120)
121
(104)
109
105
AMPLIFICATION UNIT
VARIABLE DELAY UNIT
106
(107)
(127)
126

Fig. 12

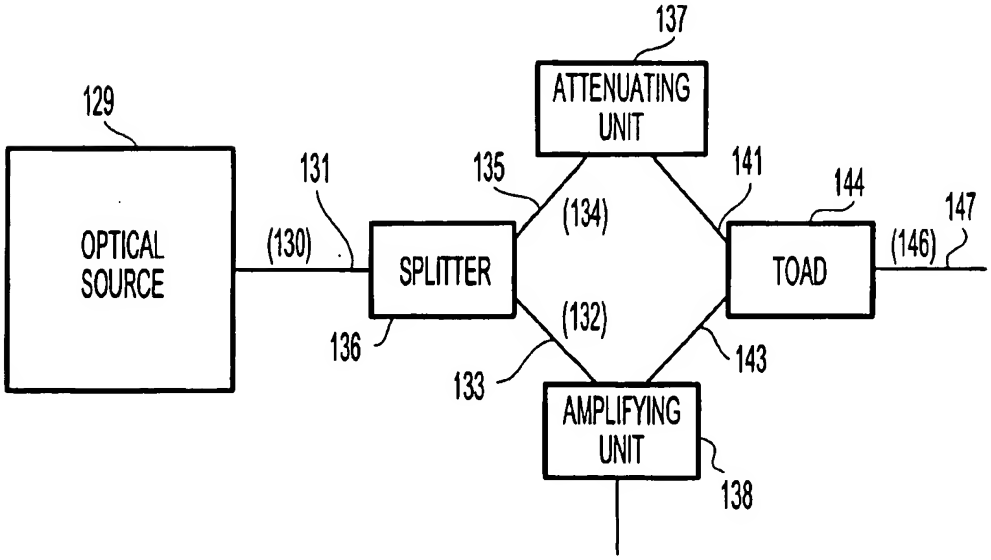

137
ATTENUATING UNIT
129
131
135
141
144
147
OPTICAL SOURCE
(130)
SPLITTER
(134)
TOAD
(146)
(132)
136
143
133
AMPLIFYING UNIT
138

Fig. 13

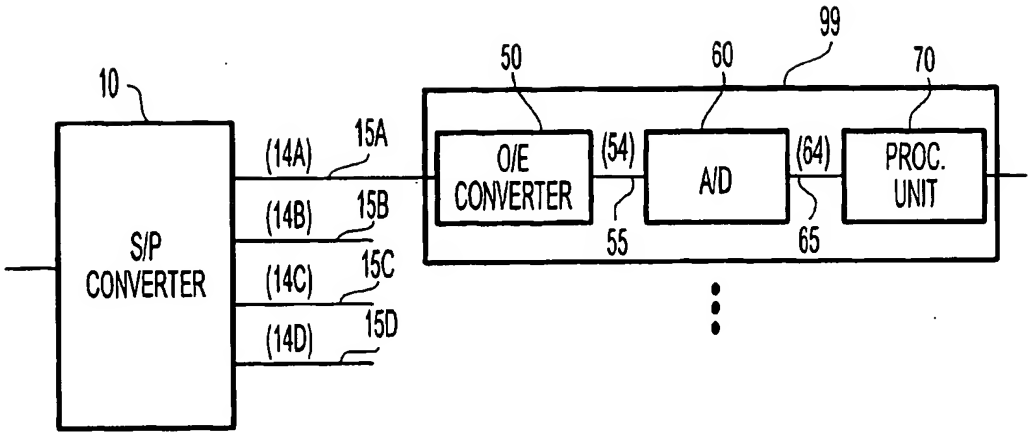

10
S/P CONVERTER
(14A)
(14B)
(14C)
(14D)
15A
15B
15C
15D
50
O/E CONVERTER
(54)
55
60
A/D
(64)
65
70
PROC. UNIT
99

Fig. 14

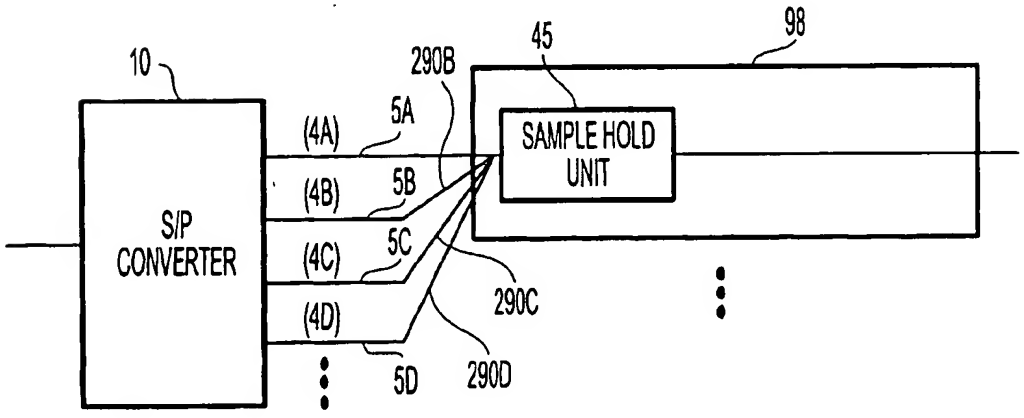

10
S/P CONVERTER
(4A)
(4B)
(4C)
(4D)
5A
5B
5C
5D
290B
290C
290D
45
SAMPLE HOLD UNIT
98

Fig. 15

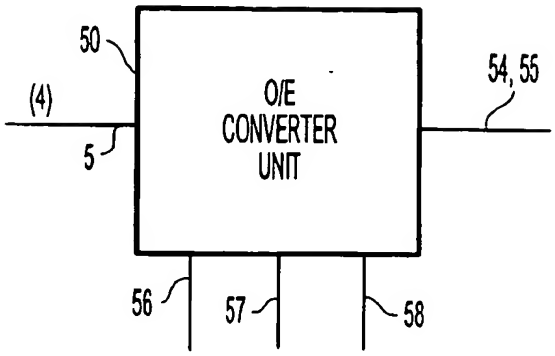


Fig. 16

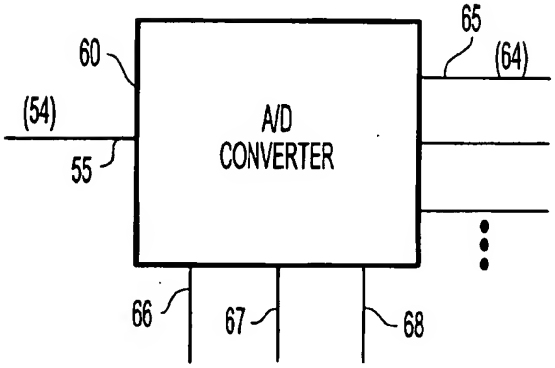


Fig. 17

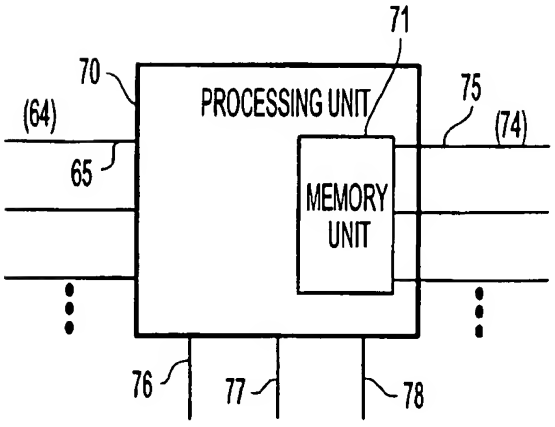


Fig. 18

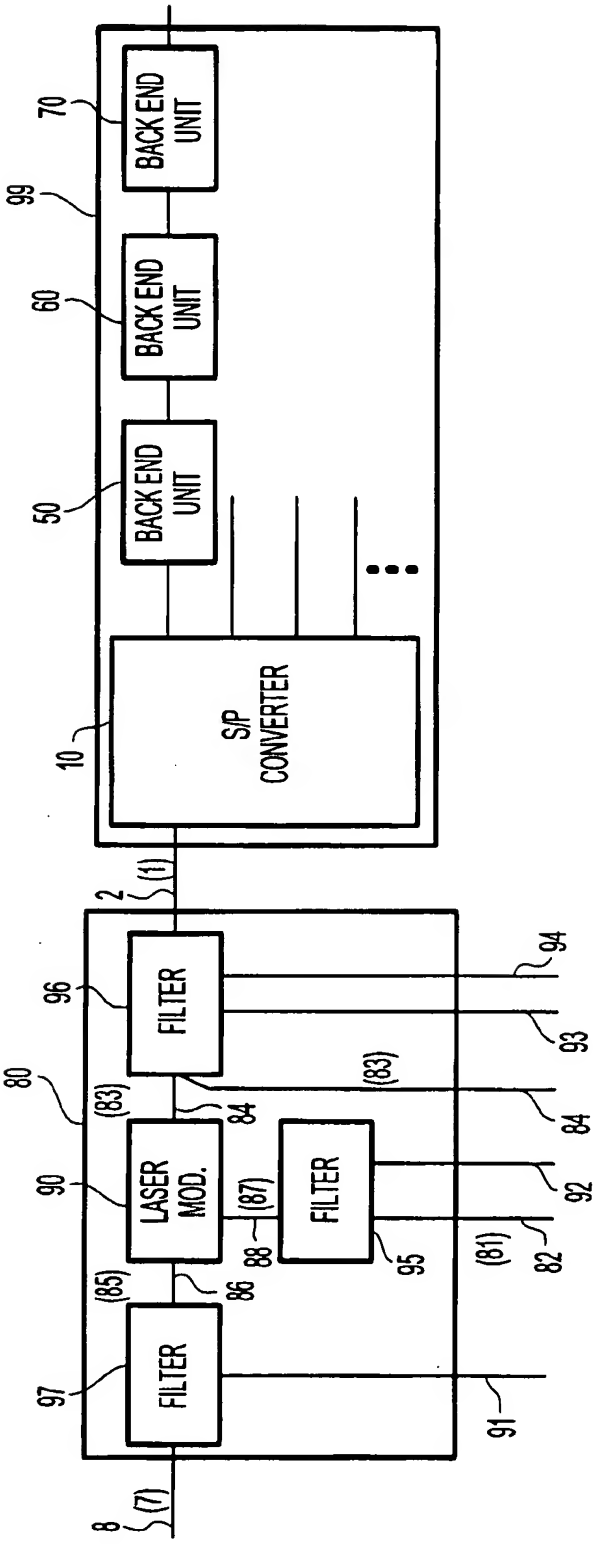

BACK END UNIT
70
99
BACK END UNIT
60
BACK END UNIT
50
S/P CONVERTER
10
2
(1)
FILTER
96
94
93
80
(83)
84
(83)
84
LASER MOD.
90
(87)
88
FILTER
95
92
(81)
82
(85)
86
FILTER
97
91
8
(7)

Fig. 19

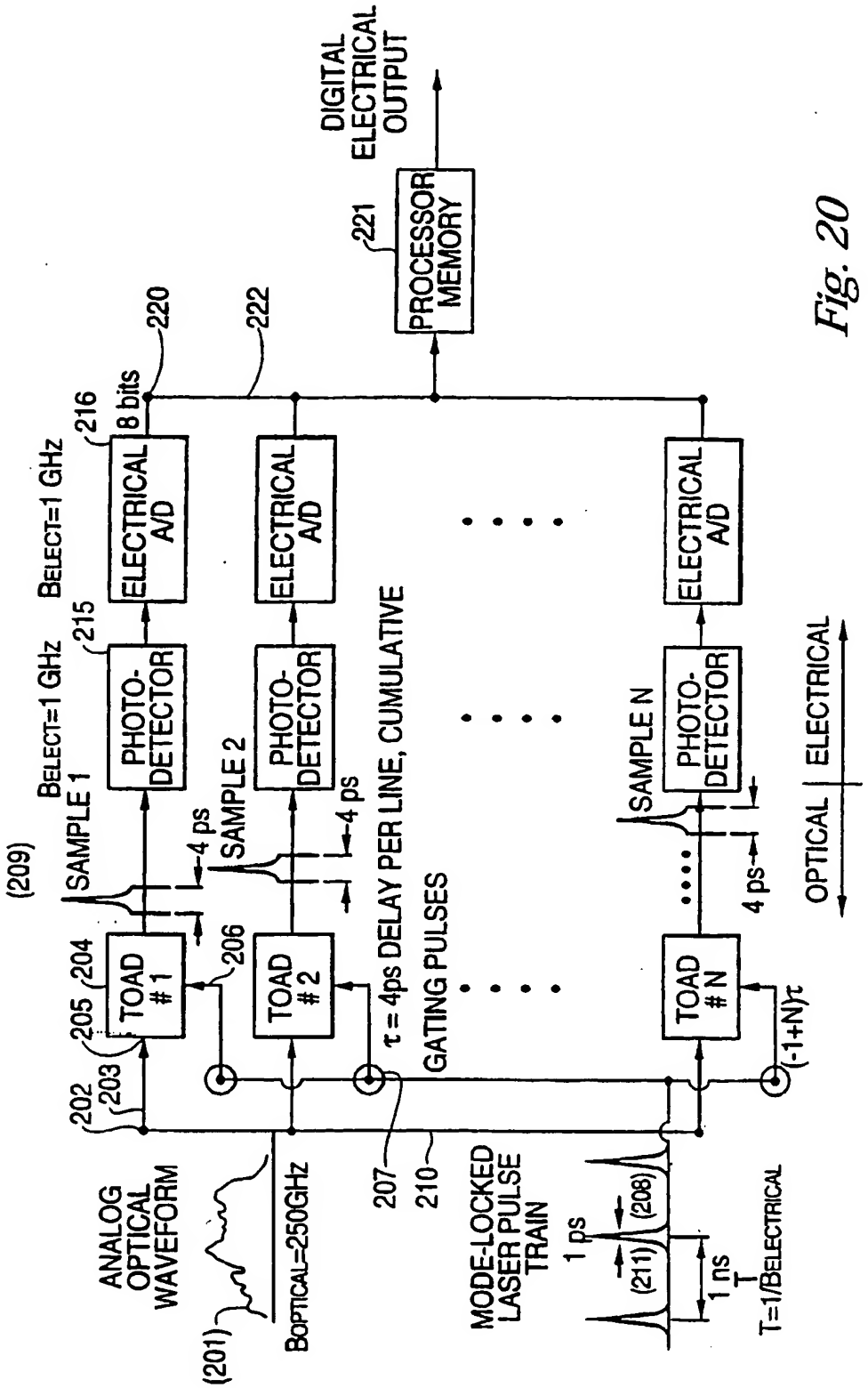

DIGITAL ELECTRICAL OUTPUT
221
PROCESSOR MEMORY
220
222
216
8 bits
ELECTRICAL A/D
ELECTRICAL A/D
ELECTRICAL A/D
215
PHOTO-DETECTOR
PHOTO-DETECTOR
PHOTO-DETECTOR
BELECT=1 GHz
BELECT=1 GHz
SAMPLE 1
SAMPLE 2
SAMPLE N
4 ps
4 ps
4 ps
(209)
205
204
TOAD #1
206
TOAD #2
TOAD #N
τ = 4ps DELAY PER LINE, CUMULATIVE
GATING PULSES
(-1+N)τ
202
203
207
210
ANALOG OPTICAL WAVEFORM
(201)
BOPTICAL=250GHz
MODE-LOCKED LASER PULSE TRAIN
1 ps
(208)
(211)
1 ns
T
T=1/BELECTRICAL
OPTICAL | ELECTRICAL

Fig. 20

HIGH-SPEED SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL AND ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates generally to the field of optoelectronic devices and, more particularly, to devices which function as extremely high speed optical shutters, and to applications of such devices.

2. Description of the Related Art

A number of important commercial, scientific, medical and military signal processing or sampling applications require high speed conversion of time-varying analog waveforms into digital form. Such higher digitization speed is useful because, among other reasons, it provides better spatial resolution for lidar and range-finding, better time resolution for clock synchronization protocols, better instrumental resolution for sampling oscilloscopes, and better channel separation for wideband receivers. Higher speed analog-to-digital (A/D) converters are additionally sought because there is often a threshold conversion rate below which the application requiring the samples is infeasible, such as digital receivers operating in a particular microwave band.

It is known that an analog serial-to-parallel (S/P) converter can be used to parcel out portions of a time-varying waveform to parallel A/D converters working in parallel. In such systems, the quality of the S/P converter stage bounds the subsequent fidelity of the overall converter, so manufacturability and control of noise are crucial considerations. Unfortunately, today's all-electronic S/P converters operate well below 60 gigasamples per second (GSPS), which is not much faster than today's state-of-the-art electronic A/D converters (e.g., 6 GSPS claimed by Rockwell in the laboratory, for which, to applicants' knowledge, no publicly-available enabling disclosure exists), so there is little fan-out by the S/P converter. By way of comparison, all-optical switching/sampling phenomena can occur at intrinsically higher speeds than analogous electronic phenomena, since electron mobility in the solid state is up to 10,000-fold slower than the speed of light; the advantage is lessened by the ratio of device sizes.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Accordingly, it is among the objects of the instant invention to provide one or more of the following: (i) an improved A/D converter operating at optical speeds yet benefiting from progress in the speed of electronic devices; (ii) an integrated, fast A/D converter; (iii) an improved A/D converter with calibrated outputs and servo-controlled input range; (iv) an improved A/D converter with a parallel output signal; (v) an improved A/D converter in a circuit; (vi) an A/D converter embedding a fast analog S/P converter; (vii) an integrated fast analog S/P converter; (viii) a fast analog optical S/P converter employing a TOAD (as defined below); (ix) an improved, fast analog S/P converter with adjustable input dynamic range; (x) an improved S/P converter with physical clocking; and (xi) a device capable of converting an optical waveform into piecewise portions employing a TOAD.

In accordance with these and other objects, there is provided an analog-to-digital converter, which includes a first input port configured to receive an analog optical waveform. The converter also includes a splitter connected to the first input port and configured to split the analog optical waveform into a plurality of identical waveforms. The converter further includes a second input port configured to receive a clock signal having a predetermined clock period. The converter also includes a delay circuit configured to receive the clock signal and to output a plurality of delayed clock signals each having different a different delay with respect to others of the delayed clock signals. The converter still further includes a plurality of optical shutters configured to respectively receive the plurality of identical waveforms on an input port thereof, and configured to receive a corresponding one of the plurality of delayed clock signals on a control port thereof, each of the plurality of optical shutters having an output port for outputting the corresponding one of the identical waveforms within a time period in a range of 0.01 psec to 100 psec. The converter also includes a plurality of photodetectors respectively connected to the output ports of the plurality of optical shutters and configured to convert an input optical signal into an output electrical signal. The converter further includes a plurality of electrical analog-to-digital converters respectively connected to the output ports of the plurality of optical shutters and configured to perform an analog-to-digital conversion of the corresponding electrical signal into a digital signal. The number of electrical analog-to-digital converters in a fully populated configuration is such that a conversion time of said analog-to-digital converters divided by the number of electrical analog-to-digital converters is slightly less than the time period of the optical shutters.

Aspects of the system and method according to the invention exploit and improve upon recent advances in high speed optical shutter technology, notably the Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer (TOAD), disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,493,433, which is incorporated in its entirety herein by reference. Whereas most optical shutters require impractically long interaction lengths, high power, or both; the TOAD is compact and low power.

The TOAD exploits a strongly non-linear optical effect which allows a gating pulse to cause either 0 or pi radians of phase delay in a signal introduced into an interferometer. The phase delay switches off after a brief interval, of the order of 1 picosecond (psec), so a signal beam meeting with itself in a TOAD interferometer will emit only the waveform sampled by the 1 psec shutter window. In contrast to conventional semiconductor logic gates, the TOAD does not try to switch and reset in a small multiple of the shutter cycle time. Rather, the TOAD can undergo an Open/Off cycle only once before it needs to recover, typically for 100 psec. When combined with a precise optical delay line, each TOAD can be used to sample (read) or inject (write) a signal's amplitude or intensity in the shutter window time. The TOAD is then latent, waiting for the electronics to invoke it again (e.g. every 4 nanoseconds (nsec) for 250 MHz CMOS).

Utilizing such high speed optical shutters, in accordance with the system and method according to the invention, it is possible to provide high speed, high quality S/P conversion, and therefore high speed A/D converter systems embedding a fast analog optical S/P converter with fan-out to whatever degree is necessary to support operation beyond 1000 gigasamples per second (GSPS). Also, in accordance with the invention, systems may include all-electrical A/D converter devices, thus providing a back-end with optimal price/performance. Preferably, the balance between more fan-out in the S/P converter and more, lower-cost slow electrical A/D converters in the back-end is optimally selected, based upon overall price, performance, manufacturability, or other criteria. While the present invention may be, and preferably is, practiced using the TOAD,

the concepts, teachings, and applications described herein below are by no means limited to TOAD-based systems, and will work with other optical shutters, other sequences of functional units, and with novel electrical A/D converters.

In accordance with the invention, the TOADs will preferably be solid state and formed by mass production processes. For instance, integrated semiconductor optical amplifiers (SOAs) under development at Princeton University, British Telcom, NEC, and elsewhere can be combined with integrated optical paths to form complete TOAD devices. SOAs can advantageously be formed using materials from columns III and V in the periodic table (e.g. GaAs), or II–VI materials; a plurality of optical paths can be formed on a low cost substrate; and the two monolithic constructions bonded together. Additionally or alternatively, a plurality of optical paths may be formed on the same substrate as the TOADs by additive, subtractive, or even selective phase-change direct-write processes. One may apply light, charged particle beam, heat, or other known methods to cure the waveguide material or optical interconnects.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the instant invention, the time-varying magnitude of an input signal is modulated by amplitude or intensity. In more general embodiments, modulation of the magnitude comprises a combination of amplitude modulation, polarization modulation, phase modulation, and frequency modulation. These can all be exploited in their own right by appropriate TOAD embodiments, or reduced to amplitude or intensity modulation and treated as in the preferred embodiment. For instance, a polarized signal can be converted into an intensity modulated signal by being passed through a cross-polarizer. A frequency modulated signal can be converted into an amplitude modulated signal in a number of ways, including filtering with a color-sensitive transmitter or reflector; or diffracting or refracting and then using position, time of flight, or phase information. A frequency modulated signal can be converted into an intensity modulated signal by interfering it with a coherent reference beam of comparable intensity and sampling the beat frequency. In general, modulation can be permitted to occur within the TOAD, instead of just prior to it. For instance, a phase modulated signal can be converted into an intensity modulated signal by being superposed on a coherent reference signal of comparable intensity within the TOAD interferometer itself, thus replacing the input splitter described in the '433 patent with a bypass on one side and a reference beam for differential measurement on the other side. This brief description is exemplary and not comprehensive. As those skilled in the art will appreciate, other methods are known, and it is anticipated that there will be future embodiments of optical shutters which will be appropriate for use in this invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Various aspects, features, applications, and advantages of the instant invention are depicted in the accompanying set of drawings, which are intended to be exemplary and not limiting or exhaustive, and in which, briefly stated:

FIG. **1** illustrates a preferred embodiment of an analog optical S/P converter in block form.

FIG. **2** illustrates an analog optical S/P converter in greater detail.

FIG. **3** illustrates a beam splitter used in a clocking source.

FIG. **4** illustrates a clocking source including a modulator unit.

FIG. **5** illustrates a "physically clocked" embodiment of a clocking source.

FIG. **6** illustrate the use of delay lines to retard clock signals.

FIG. **7** illustrate the use of delay lines to retard data signals.

FIG. **8** illustrates an optical shutter unit implemented in a Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer.

FIG. **9** shows a measured TOAD waveform.

FIG. **10** plots the shape of a fast analog waveform using an optical correlator.

FIG. **11** shows a measurement of the same analog signal by a TOAD acting as an optical shutter.

FIG. **12** illustrates an apparatus in the manner of a sampling oscilloscope.

FIG. **13** illustrates a sampling oscilloscope using a TOAD acting as an optical shutter.

FIG. **14** illustrates an optical AID converter system embedding an analog optical S/P converter.

FIG. **15** illustrates an alternative embodiment of the slow AID converter back-end.

FIG. **16** illustrates a preferred slow O/E converter unit.

FIG. **17** illustrates a preferred slow electrical A/D converter unit.

FIG. **18** illustrates a preferred processing unit.

FIG. **19** illustrates an A/D converter system with analog electrical input and digital electrical output.

FIG. **20** summarizes an alternative A/D converter embodiment.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT(S)

Reference is now made to FIG. **1**, which illustrates a preferred embodiment of an analog optical S/P converter in block form. Optical input signal (**1**) enters an optical S/P converter (**10**) by means of an optical path (**2**). Signal (**1**) is preferably coherent light, such as 1.5 μm light, and comprises a waveform, such as shown in FIG. **9**. Preferably, but not necessarily, signal (**1**) has already been amplitude or intensity modulated with certain data of interest. Path (**2**) is preferably an integrated waveguide, although a variety of designs for optical paths through free-space and guided paths (e.g. optical fibers) can be substituted, as would be appreciated by persons skilled in the art, e.g., optical engineers.

A plurality of output signals emerge from S/P converter (**10**), illustrated as signal (**4A**) on path (**5A**), signal (**4B**) on path (**5B**), and so forth. The reader should interpret references to "signal (**4**)" without a suffix as applying to a plurality of (**4A**), (**4B**), etc., and similarly with "path (**5**)" as applying to paths (**5A**), (**5B**), etc. Output signals (**4**) contain information from the input signal (**1**), and are preferably optical replicas of input signal (**1**), although a plurality of them may be scaled to different amplitudes from the input signal (**1**) and/or from each other. Optionally, output signals (**4**) may comprise functional modifications of input signal (**1**), such as linearization corrections, and/or may mix in other signal streams, such as a monochromatic reference beam.

Reference is now made to FIG. **2**, which illustrates an optical analog S/P converter in greater detail. In this embodiment, a beam splitter (**12**) replicates an input signal (**1**) into a plurality of output signals (**14**), which exit on their optical paths (**15**). As persons skilled in the art will appreciate, one can purchase beam splitters with high uniformity and low parasitic losses commercially from a num-

ber of vendors, and beam splitters can also be integrated with optical or optoelectronic subsystems using well-known lithographic or casting techniques.

Each of a plurality of optical shutters (40) is fed both by a signal (14) along an optical path (15) from the beam splitter (12) and also by a clock signal (32) carried by an optical path (31). Each optical shutter (40) emits an output signal (4) on a path (5).

Clock signals (32) are illustrated schematically as originating from a single clocking source (20), but use of multiple clocking sources is permissible. The signal path (17) output of the input master clock (20) is used to synchronize the electrical A/D stages and subsequent latching circuitry.

Reference is now made to FIG. 3, which illustrates a beam splitter (30) used in a clocking source (20). In this embodiment, a master clock signal (28) of periodic pulses is introduced along path (29) and distributed as clock signals (32) among paths (31). Optionally, output clock signals (32) may comprise functional modifications of master clock signal (28), for instance by pulse-sharpening, clock-doubling, or polarization. Other signals may optionally be mixed in with output clock signals (32), such as complex waveforms. As one skilled in the art will appreciate, a number of clock distribution topologies are known to electronics engineers, with different topologies appropriate for different embodiments, such as a star-of-stars hierarchy for obtaining sufficient fan-out with tight timing synchrony. Some of these topologies also include an amplification unit within the clocking source (20).

Reference is now made to FIG. 4, which illustrates a clocking source (20) including a modulator unit (24) providing an optical signal (25) along optical path (26) to a beam splitter (30). A light signal (27) input from path (29) is preferably constant brightness from a coherent laser. The beam splitter could preferably be similar to the one illustrated in FIG. 3. If the modulator (24) is electro-optical, then it will preferably be fed by an RF electrical trigger signal (21) from an RF input path (22). If the modulator unit (24) is optoelectronic, then it will preferably be fed by an optical trigger signal (21) from an optical input path (22). Mixtures of electrical and optical inputs may also be imposed as a trigger signal (21) along a suitable plurality of paths (22).

Modulator unit (24) may require a power source, but such sources are well known to those skilled in the art, and are not depicted in the drawings in order to avoid distracting from the description of the present invention.

Reference is now made to FIG. 5, which illustrates a "physically clocked" embodiment of a clocking source. Use of a beam splitter with one-more-than-2^N outputs is preferred, but not required. The function of modulator (24) in this embodiment is to convert a "flyback" trigger signal (35) into a suitable input for beam splitter (30), preferably by amplification and pulse-sharpening, so that a preferred clocking source (20) emits clocking waveforms (e.g., pulses) in parallel at precise periodic intervals that do not depend on the coherence of an external clock. An optical clock signal (32C) is provided by optical path (31C) to optional phase correction unit (33), which emits signal (35) after that time interval necessary to ensure that the periodicity of pulses arriving at beam splitter (30) is a constant. There can be one or a number of pulses in transit traversing the circuit encompassing (34), (24), (26), (30), (32), and optionally (33); the circuit serves as a delay line. If optional phase correction unit (33) is omitted, path (31C) and path (34) number the same item.

The optional phase correction unit (33) can serve to adjust the timing of the arrival of clock signal (35) at modulator unit (24), and can be internally controlled by a clock or externally controlled along a path (37), such as by "trimming" feedback from elsewhere in the S/P converter or a system embedding it. A number of units for phase correction are well-known, including stretching optical fibers and tight temperature control.

A starting signal is used for the clocking source (20), and the clocking can run thereafter without requiring an external clock. There are a number of units for providing a starting signal. An optional input (36) may be provided through phase correction unit (33) or directly into modulator unit (24) to provide a pulse from outside as the starting signal; or, the starting signal can be generated internally, for instance by compounding its amplification through repeated cycles until effective.

Reference is now made to FIG. 2, FIG. 6 and FIG. 7, which illustrate the use of delay lines to relate the relative timing of clock signals (32) and signal waveforms (4). Note that an optical path length is determined by a path's index of refraction as well as its physical length. In the embodiment shown in FIG. 6, the optical lengths of the signal paths (15) are all the same, but each clock path (31A), (31B), (31C), and so forth has an optical length chosen to provide timing delays in successive integer units of τ. In an alternative embodiment shown in FIG. 7, the optical lengths of the clock paths (31) are all the same, but each signal path (15A), (15B), (15C), and so forth has an optical length chosen to provide timing delays in successive integer units of τ. More complicated patterns can be utilized while remaining within the scope of the invention as described herein. For example, in embodiments of most value in certain applications, manufacturability considerations make it preferable for the ensemble of clock signals (32) and the ensemble of waveforms (14) to intersect at a variety of times and places, in a matrix-like configuration (e.g., clustered on chips in a module). Nor must the intersections be regular; in some embodiments for applications described below, they need not all have the same time intervals τ, nor comprehensive coverage, nor sequential ordering.

Reference is now made to FIG. 8, which illustrates an optical shutter unit (40) implemented in a TOAD, such as the Mach-Zehnder version disclosed in the '433 patent. Optical shutters can also be built using an amplitude-modulating TOAD constructed from a Mach-Zehnder, Michelson, or Sagnac interferometer by means of techniques well-known to those ordinarily skilled in the art. There have been attempts to build a TOAD using a loop mirror. These and other forms of TOAD are all appropriate for use as optical shutter units in connection with the instant invention, where each embodiment of an optical shutter (40) is preferably a TOAD (41) which gates a time-dependent input signal (14) with its time-dependent waveform (42) to an output signal (4) with a modulated magnitude.

Referring now to FIG. 8, the Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer (TOAD) comprises a fiber or waveguide loop joined at its base by the top half of a symmetric 2x2 splitter (18). The bottom side of the splitter (18) receives the signal input and transmits it to a photodetector at a receiver. In general operation, light from the input is split by the splitter into two identical waveforms which travel through the loop in opposing directions. Because the two signal components will have traversed exactly the same distance when they meet again in the splitter (18), purely constructive interference occurs; the splitter (18) therefore reflects all light back out the original input fiber and passes no light to

the detector. This loop-mirror also contains a nonlinear element (e.g. a semiconductor optical amplifier (SOA)) located slightly off-center from the midway point. The asymmetric placement is the reason for the letter "A" in the word TOAD.

If injected into the loop before the signal pulse, a clock or pulse will change the nonlinear element's index of refraction for a brief period of time (the dwell time). This means that the light traversing the loop after the gating pulse has passed through the SOA will encounter a different propagation delay than light traversing the loop before the gating pulse pumped the SOA. An important feature of the TOAD is that this delay is engineered to be exactly one-half of a wavelength, or exactly enough to change the interference condition from constructive to destructive. The coupler therefore expels light to the photodetector instead of back out the input.

In accordance with Nyquist's Theorem, for a system with maximum frequency component $2/\tau$, no information is available about the shape (roughly speaking, σ) of the shutter waveform so long as $\sigma<\tau$. In practice, the shutter waveform (**32**) has a finite rise time and fall time, so cross talk is reduced significantly but not eliminated by making σ somewhat smaller than τ (e.g. 50%).

Reference is now made to FIG. **9**, which shows a measured TOAD waveform; in this case, 4 psec wide. The measurement was made by duplicating the output of a single TOAD device, delaying the second waveform by a variable interval (shown as the abcissa) and measuring the amplitude of the convolution of the first against the second (shown as the ordinate). The delay was swept from 0 to 10 psec and the results plotted.

Reference is now made to FIG. **10**, which plots the shape (**44**) of a fast analog waveform (actually, a laser pulse) as measured in the standard way by an optical correlator. FIG. **10** is prior art.

Reference is now made to FIG. **11**, which shows a measurement of the same analog signal by a TOAD acting as an optical shutter (**41**) in the manner of FIG. **9**. The measurement was performed in the inventor's laboratory by creating a rudimentary sampling oscilloscope using approximately 43 psec-wide pulses from a 1.3 μm wavelength laser. The repetition rate was chosen as 10 nsec so that the output of the TOAD could be measured with a 100 MHz photodetector. The clocking train was shortened to 1 psec wide pulses at 500 femtojoules of energy per pulse, and was injected into the control port of the TOAD as gating pulses. A weaker branch of the same train was split from the first, acting as the lower amplitude signal to be measured, and was time-lagged along a precisely varied delay path before being injected into the input port of the TOAD as signal pulses. The delay path was then changed and the TOAD output measured again. The overall shape was obtained by sweeping the delay path of the signal relative to the control over a range of 100 psec. The FWHM σ__=43 psec, and the area under the curve corresponds to the intensity of the input signal integrated over the time when the TOAD acted as an open shutter. It is clear by inspection that the measurement provided at least 6 bits of resolution on the ordinate axis.

The practiced sampling oscilloscope method indicates a useful analog application of the TOAD. The embodied sampling oscilloscope apparatus proves an alternative embodiment of the S/P converter wherein the fan-out feeds a plurality of branches—in this example, 1—and the conversion is repeated temporally at precisely known phase offsets, not necessarily sequentially, in order to measure the shape of a repeated signal. The signal must be reproducible in a finite time domain. A number of means for reproducible signal delay lines with sub-psec precision are known and could have been used instead to create the densely sampled phase offsets. Reference is now made to FIG. **12**, which illustrates an apparatus in the manner of a sampling oscilloscope which relies upon analog data measured by a TOAD optical shutter. A coherent optical signal (**101**) is fed on optical path (**102**) to a splitter (**103**) which feeds an output signal (**104**) to optical path (**105**) and an output signal (**110**) to optical path (**111**). Signal (**110**) on optical path (**111**), even if weakened, enters device-under-test (**114**) and emerges as signal (**115**) on optical path (**116**). There may optionally be a plurality of amplifying units (**106**) along optical path (**105**); and/or there may optionally be a plurality of attenuating units (**112**) along the optical path traversing (**103**), (**111**), (**114**), and (**116**); in any case, at least one of these options must be implemented since the signal (**115**) must be weaker than the non-linear regime of the TOAD device (**117**) and signal (**104**) must be stronger than the switching threshold and must arrive at the input port (**109**) prior to the arrival of signal (**115**) at input port (**119**). The plurality of attenuation elements is depicted explicitly as a single unit (**112**) but could in practice be anywhere along said path, including merged with other units; likewise with the plurality of amplification units depicted as a single unit (**106**). There must also be a plurality of variable delay units (**107**) and/or (**108**) which introduce the phase offsets needed to sample the interval of interest. The control units can be internally controlled and/or externally controlled.

External control signal (**127**) would be introduced through path (**126**) and control signal (**123**) would be introduced through path (**122**). The TOAD (**117**) emits a signal (**120**) on optical path (**121**), said signal being representative of the convolution of the time aperture of optical shutter (**117**) with the amplitude of signal (**115**). Note that it is not strictly necessary for the elements mentioned-including the device-under-test, splitter, delay units, amplification units, attenuation units, and optical paths-to precisely preserve the color of signal (**115**) with respect to signal (**104**), since the clocking signal entering (**109**) is not interfered against the data signal (**115**) entering (**119**). Therefore, optical to-electrical and electrical-to-optical converters may be used advantageously in device-under-test (**114**).

Reference is now made to FIG. **13**, which illustrates an alternative embodiment in the manner of a sampling oscilloscope which relies upon analog data measured by a TOAD optical shutter and uses the waveform being measured additionally as its own clock signal. An optical source (**129**), which may advantageously be an electrical-to-optical converter, introduces a signal (**130**) onto optical path (**131**). A splitter (**136**) divides the signal (**130**) into signal (**134**) on optical path (**135**) and signal (**132**) on optical path (**133**). The embodiment attenuates (**137**) and/or amplifies (**138**) the signal. There must be at least one variable delay unit (not depicted) along the upper or lower path, as in FIG. **12**. The clock signal is required to arrive at port (**143**) before the data signal arrives at port (**141**). The TOAD (**144**) emits a signal (**146**) on optical path (**147**).

Other embodiments of sampling oscilloscopes are known in industry and their reimplementation with TOAD-based optical shutters would be self-evident for one ordinary skill in the art.

Reference is now made to FIG. **14**, which illustrates an optical A/D converter system (**99**) embedding an analog optical S/P converter. Preferably, an O/E converter (**50**) accepts an optical signal (**14**) from each of the paths (**15**)

emitted from a S/P converter (10), and converts said optical signal into an electrical signal (54). An A/D converter (60) accepts the electrical signal (54) from electrical lines (55) and produces a digital electrical representation (64). The electrical lines are likely to be transmission lines implemented as wires for low-speed operation and microwave plumbing or coaxial paths for high speed operation. Optionally, a processing unit (70) accepts said digital electrical signal (64) along electrical lines (65) and delivers a corrected, buffered version. In an alternative embodiment, the A/D converter may incorporate the O/E converter integrally, so (54) and (55) would be omitted.

Reference is now made to FIG. 15, which illustrates an alternative embodiment of the slow A/D converter back-end: an all-optical A/D converter (98). An optical sample-and-hold unit (45) accepts the optical signal (4) from its optical path (5), and slowly digitizes it, such as by the method disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,947,170, incorporated herein by reference. The optical signal (4) may comprise a waveform encompassing a plurality of copies provided to a common input line in time sequence. The time sequence can be constructed, for example, by merging optional delay lines (290) of differing lengths, with the delay lines originating from a common output of (10).

Reference is now made to FIG. 16, which illustrates a preferred O/E converter unit (50) for converting an analog optical signal (5) into an analog electrical signal (54) representative of it. Techniques for increasing the range and sensitivity and limiting the noise introduced by optical-to-electrical converters, such as photodetectors, are well-known. Common commercially available optical-to-electrical converters include avalanche photodetectors, photomultiplier tubes, charge-coupled devices, PIN junctions, photosensitive resistors, photovoltaic devices, and photosensitive capacitors, among others. Certain O/E converter implementations can advantageously be implemented with time-dependent control signals (56), such as a reset signal; with a powering unit (57); and/or with scaling unit (58), such as for dynamic range, bias and gain, linearity, or sensitivity settings, possibly entailing connections to other units in the system (not depicted). Each input path (5) may in fact comprise a plurality of optical paths, each carrying its own coded version of optical signal (4); each output path (55) may in fact comprise a plurality of electrical lines, each conveying its own coded electrical signal (54). The coding may be trivial (e.g. none) or complicated for reasons arising from fault tolerance, power reduction, noise reduction, and packaging, among others.

Reference is now made to FIG. 17, which illustrates a preferred A/D converter (60) for converting an analog electrical signal (54) into a digital electrical signal (64) representative of it. In general, each A/D converter requires a time-dependent control signal (66), preferably a clocking signal related to the clocking signal of its optical particular optical shutter (40). A time-dependent control signal will also be provided to its processing unit (70) in order to know when to latch the signal, and analog sample-and-hold units or digital latches may advantageously be added at other points in accordance with well-known engineering practices. Certain implementations of A/D converter (60) can advantageously be implemented with additional time-dependent control signals (66), such as a reset signal; with a powering unit (67); and/or with scaling unit (68), such as for dynamic range, bias and gain, linearity, or sensitivity settings, possibly entailing connections to other units in the system (not depicted). Each input path (55) may in fact comprise a plurality of electrical lines, each carrying its own coded version of electrical signal (54); the coding may be trivial (e.g. none) or complicated for reasons arising from fault tolerance, power reduction, noise reduction, and packaging, among others. Each output path shown as (65) will generally comprise a multiplicity of electrical lines, each conveying its own coded electrical signal (64), where the coding will preferably be binary.

Reference is now made to FIG. 18, which illustrates a preferred processing unit (70) for converting a plurality of digital electrical signals (64) into a different plurality of electrical signals (74) representative of it. In the preferred embodiment, processing unit (70) is optional. A powering unit (77) will advantageously be required for (70). Certain implementations of processing unit (70) can advantageously be implemented with time-dependent control signals (76), such as a reset signal or output bus system clock signal; and/or with scaling unit (78), such as for dynamic range, bias and gain, linearity, or sensitivity settings, possibly entailing connections to other units in the system (not depicted). For each stage (70), custom calibrations can be measured through the individual path through (10), (40), and (50). The calibrations can be applied locally or later; a lookup table may advantageously be employed with or without calibration data using memory unit (71) in order to expedite remapping signals to appropriate (e.g. linear) representations of the original input waveform's magnitude at a given time. Examples of the other units in the system would be from an input stage to servo the dynamic range. Each input path (65) generally comprises a plurality of electrical lines, each carrying its own coded version of electrical signal (64). The coding may be trivial (e.g. none) or complicated for reasons arising from fault tolerance, power reduction, noise reduction, and packaging, among others.

In the preferred embodiment, the ensemble of electrical signals (74) will be buffered, latched, and clocked onto a system bus by way of lines (75), in which case a memory unit (71) is also provided for the processing unit (70). For this reason, the synchrony of presenting the ensemble of electrical signals (74) to a system bus restricts the architecture in which the processing unit (70) is implemented. Simple digital systems require a master clock which will advantageously be the cycle time of the flyback signal (35), so all the latched bits will be injected onto the system bus simultaneously. Such an embodiment produces a large current impulse dI/dt, hence large simultaneous switching noise which must be decoupled with a large, expensive capacitance between power and ground. More complicated but affordable digital systems splay the latched bits onto the bus over a distribution of time slots, reducing the requirement for decoupling capacitance in proportion to the increase in the rise time window, dt.

Each output path (75) will generally comprise a plurality of electrical lines, each conveying its own coded electrical signal (74), where the coding will advantageously be binary and optionally for error detection/correction. In alternative embodiments, the output path (75) may convey data other than binary electrical signals, such as multistate digital, accept/reject/don't_care evaluations, alarms, acoustic signals, or mechanical action.

Reference is now made to FIG. 19, which illustrates an A/D converter system with analog electrical input and digital electrical output. Note that in the preferred embodiment, processing unit (70) is optional. In the preferred embodiment, an input stage (80) is implemented as a laser modulator (90), such as the module sold by United Technologies Photonics (UTP). Other input stages may be advantageous, such as the method and apparatus disclosed in

U.S. Pat. No. 4,681,449, incorporated in its entirety herein by reference. Laser modulator (90) receives an electrical input signal (7) and a constant, coherent light source (81); its output signal (83) is the modulation of light signal (81) by the amplitude or intensity of the electric input signal (7). It may be advantageous to embed the A/D converter system in other circuitry, including front-end circuitry, in order to enable applications described herein below.

The dynamic range of the TOAD devices (41) is finite, so rescaling the input signal that reaches the S/P converter (10) advantageously broadens the dynamic range of operation for the system comprising (10) and (99). Attenuation can avoid non-linear and time-dependent saturation effects while amplification can avoid a noise floor. In the preferred embodiment, an optional electrical filter (97) can be employed to bias, attenuate or amplify the electrical input signal (7) from a microwave guide (8) into electrical signal (85) along path (86). In the preferred embodiment, the electrical filter (97) is a dynamically variable voltage divider and traveling wave amplifier. In an alternative embodiment, an optional optical filter (95) optically amplifies or attenuates a constant coherent signal (81) from path (82) as signal (87) on path (88). In an additional alternative embodiment, an optional optical filter (96) optically amplifies or attenuates a time-varying optical signal (83) from path (84) as signal (1) on path (2). Note that path (84) is marked twice since it may advantageously be accessible from outside unit (80). For instance, if an optical input signal is available instead of an electrical input signal, the filter (96)-which is depicted as part of optional unit (80)-may still be advantageously employed as a front-end to the A/D converter system (99) without using electrical inputs. An optional reference beam (94) may also be fed into the system for various reasons, notably to convert a phase modulated signal (83) into an amplitude modulated signal (1), or to bias a signal (83).

Typically, a first control unit (not shown) would provide a first control signal (91) to filter (97), a second control unit (not shown) would provide a second control signal (92) to filter (95), and a third control unit (not shown) would provide a third control signal (93) to filter (96). The control unit would be set by the downstream processing unit (70); processing unit (70) may establish the need to set control signals (91), (92), and/or (93) from data reported to it by (78) from externally or from units (50), (60), or (80). It may be advantageous to servo the input filters (95), (96), and/or (97) and performance characteristics of the back-end units (50), (60), and/or (70), for instance to diagnose problems or optimize performance. Some, none or all of these optional filters and connections to (70) may be employed. In the absence of unit (97), electrical path (86) is electrical path (8), and electrical signal (85) is electrical signal (7). In the absence of unit (95), optical path (88) is optical path (82), and optical signal (87) is optical signal (81). In the absence of unit (96), optical path (2) is optical path (84), and optical signal (1) is optical signal (83).

Reference is now made to FIG. 20, which concisely depicts an alternative embodiment employing N=250-fold fan-out in the S/P converter, a 1 psec external clock waveform, τ=4 psec TOAD apertures, and $B_{electrical}$=1 GHz electronics to sample a $B_{optical}$=250 GHz optical waveform at 250 GSPS. This embodiment synchronously distributes a high-speed serial data stream into a large number of low-speed parallel data streams. Slower data streams are photoconverted, then sampled by all-electrical A/D converters, and then latched into a memory unit.

An optical waveform (201) enters at the upper left-hand corner of the diagram. The optical waveform is distributed N-ways by an optical splitter, where the fan-out N is given by $N=B_{optical}+B_{electrical}$. The larger the electrical bandwidth $B_{electrical}$, the smaller the requisite minimum size of the splitter. For example, if the optical (input) bandwidth were 20 GHz and the A/D converter leaf nodes each operated at 1 GHz, then at least a 20-way splitter would be required. The repetition rate of the mode-locked laser driving the system is chosen to correspond to the bandwidth of the electronics, that is, $1/T=B_{electrical}$=250 GHz. Here, the fan-out is 250-fold by a star splitter hierarchy (202) into 250 equivalent taps, each feeding an equal length delay line (203) followed by a TOAD (204).

Each TOAD has two inputs, one for the signal (205) and one for the control or gating pulse (206). The gating pulses will cause the TOAD to open a 4 psec sampling window (209), allowing that portion of the analog waveform from the signal input to pass to the output of the TOAD and onward. The remainder of the analog waveform outside the 4 psec window is suppressed and does not pass to the output of the TOAD.

Each TOAD connects its gating input to a delay line (207) a unique distance from a mode-locked laser pulse source, most readily through a hierarchical clock distribution tree (210). Timing of the control pulses at each TOAD is staggered by a τ=4 psec increment from its neighbors, so that the N samples produced at the outputs of the N adjacent TOADs monitor 4N psec. The N samples are taken during a time period $T=N\ \tau=N\ B_{optical}=1/B_{electrical}$. Some time later, when the N samples have been taken, the next mode-locked laser pulse (211) enters the array of TOADs and another series of N samples is taken. A continuous sample is composed piecewise as each TOAD takes a snapshot through its time-limited window on the waveform, shoulder to shoulder with the other TOADS. In this way the sampling of the analog waveform continues round-robin without interruption. In practice, the repetition rate of mode-locked lasers can be from kHz to THz.

The pulse energy required after the splitter is approximately 500 femtojoules. This is readily achieved by using a conventional Nd:YLF laser if N<100. Here, with N=250, an amplified mode-locked fiber ring laser or a mode-locked semiconductor laser may be used. If insufficient power is available from the laser, then several lasers may be synchronously mode-locked.

Note that timing jitter within the A/D is negligible: arbitrarily smaller than the Nyquist limit. The lengths of the (fiber optic or solid state waveguide) delay lines are set at manufacturing time and can be compensated for foreseeable or measurable variations in temperature, humidity, vibration, or voltage supply. The system's spurious free dynamic range will therefore be limited by drift in the timing of the externally supplied control pulse and should preferably exceed 120 dB within the A/D module.

The timing control pulse can be physically clocked as in FIG. 5 with a precision well below the Nyquist limit, leaving no measurable jitter within the specified operating rate.

Each of the TOADs then feeds a dedicated photoconverter (215) (e.g. a semiconductor avalanche photodiode or PIN junction, depending on energetics). Note that the photodetectors under consideration can be filled at any rate (e.g. over 1 psec or 1 μsec) and can recover faster than the A/D converters (216) they feed, so final low-cost A/D conversion remains the rate-limiting event.

The output is subsequently electrical, and is digitized by each A/D converter (216) at, for example, 1 GSPS with 8-bit resolution. The 1 GHz cycle time is sufficiently slow that the

photodetector and A/D converter electronics can respond and recover completely and be ready for the next sample.

In the preferred embodiment, local control logic (220) remaps each A/D converter's output channel against a calibration table to ensure linearity, and then either stores the data (221) for later downloading at leisure, or else writes the electrical data to a very wide synchronous bus (222). The bus (222) does not need to operate at the same speed as the (rate-limiting) A/D converters (216), and making the bus (222) faster or reading a slower input signal would permit the bus (222) to be proportionately narrower.

While the foregoing description has touched upon various preferred embodiments and applications of the instant invention, those skilled in the art, having read the foregoing, will immediately recognize that the concepts detailed therein can be implemented and/or used in numerous obvious alternative structures and applications. Accordingly, it is understood that the scope of applicants' invention shall not be limited to those preferred and/or exemplary embodiments described herein, but instead, shall be defined exclusively by the finally-issued claims (which claims are intended to be read in the broadest reasonable manner), and any and all equivalents thereto.

What is claimed is:

1. An optical-to-electronic convertor, comprising:

an input port, which receives an optical signal that is to be sampled;

an optical sampler stage including at least one high-speed optical shutter, which samples the optical signal at a first sampling rate by opening and closing the at least one high-speed optical shutter and which provides a plurality of sampled optical signals as a result thereof, the optical sampler stage including a plurality of parallel channels, each different channel providing a different one of said plurality of sampled optical signals, the optical sampler stage including a splitter for splitting the optical signal into a plurality of identical optical signals prior to the sampling at the first sampling rate; and

an electronic analog-to-digital converter stage, which converts the plurality of sampled output signals into a plurality of digital signals, the electronic analog-to-digital converter stage performing the converting at a second sampling rate slower than the first sampling rate.

2. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 1, wherein the electronic analog-to-digital converter stage comprises a single analog to digital converter which receives the outputs from each of the plurality of parallel channels in a time sequential manner.

3. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 1, wherein the electronic analog-to-digital converter stage comprises a plurality of electronic converters disposed in a plurality of parallel channels, wherein the plurality of channels of the electronic analog to digital converter stage respectively receive the sampled optical signals output from the plurality of parallel channels of the optical sampler stage.

4. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 1, further comprising a conversion stage disposed between the optical sampler stage and the electronic analog-to-digital converter stage, the conversion stage performing a conversion of the plurality of sampled optical signals into a plurality of electronic sampled signals.

5. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 4, wherein the conversion stage includes a plurality of photodetectors respectively disposed in the plurality of parallel channels of the optical sampler stage.

6. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 5, wherein the optical sampler stage comprises:

a plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexer assemblies (TOADs) respectively disposed in the plurality of parallel channels of the optical sampler stage and each configured to sample a corresponding one of the plurality of identical optical signals at different times,

wherein the plurality of detectors are respectively disposed between the plurality of TOADs and the electronic analog-to-digital converter stage.

7. The optical-to-electronic converter as recited in claim 3, wherein the plurality of parallel channels of the optical sampler stage corresponds in number to n, and

wherein n multiplied by the second sampling rate is approximately equal to the first sampling rate.

8. An optical to electronic converter, comprising:

a first input port configured to receive an analog optical waveform;

a splitter connected to the first input port and configured to split the analog optical waveform into a plurality of approximately identical waveforms;

a second input port configured to receive a clock signal having a predetermined clock period;

a delay circuit configured to receive the clock signal and to output a plurality of delayed clock signals each having a different delay with respect to other of the delayed clock signals;

a plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexer configured to respectively receive the plurality of approximately identical waveforms on an input port thereof, and configured to receive a corresponding one of the plurality of delayed clock signals on a control port thereof, each of the plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexers having an output port for outputting the corresponding one of the plurality of approximately identical waveforms within a fixed time period;

a plurality of photodetectors, each different photodetector connected to a different one of said output ports of the plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexers and configured to convert an input optical signal into an output electrical signal; and

a plurality of electrical analog-to-digital converters respectively connected to the output ports of the plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexers and configured to perform an analog-to-digital conversion of the corresponding electrical signal into a digital signal,

wherein a number corresponding to said plurality of electrical analog-to-digital converters is a value such that a conversion time of the plurality of electrical analog-to-digital converters divided by the number of said plurality of electrical analog-to-digital converters is approximately equal to the time period of the plurality of terahertz optical asymmetric demultiplexers.

9. A method of optical sampling, comprising the steps of:

receiving an optical signal that is to be sampled;

splitting the received optical signal into a plurality of approximately identical optical signals; and

respectively providing the approximately identical optical signals to a plurality of channels of an optical stage; and

sampling, at the optical stage, the optical signal at a first sampling rate by opening and closing a high-speed

optical shutter and providing a plurality of sampled optical signals as a result thereof, each of the plurality of parallel channels of the optical stage providing a different one of said plurality of optical signals.

10. The method as recited in claim 9, further comprising the step of converting the plurality of sampled optical signals into a plurality of electrical sampled signals.

11. An analog optical sampler, comprising:

a first input port that is capable of receiving an analog optical waveform that is to be sampled;

a second input port that is capable of receiving a clock signal;

at least one Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer (TOAD) that is configured to receive the analog optical waveform and the clock signal; and

an output port, from which is output a sample of the analog optical waveform, the sample being provided to the output port based on an output of at least one TOAD;

wherein the analog optical waveform is sampled when said TOAD is triggered by the clock signal.

12. The analog optical sampler as recited in claim 11, wherein at least one of the first input port, the second input port, and the output port includes an optical waveguide or an optical fiber.

13. The analog optical sampler as recited in claim 12, wherein distinct polarizations or colors are used to multiplex the first and second input ports on a same optical waveguide or optical fiber.

14. The analog optical sampler as recited in claim 11, wherein the at least one TOAD includes a Mach-Zehnder interferometer.

15. An optical sampler system, comprising:

a first input port, which receives an optical analog waveform that is to be sampled;

a second input port, which receives an optical clock signal at a clock rate;

a plurality of optical samplers, which produce a plurality of sampled optical waveforms from said optical analog waveform at a rate dependent on said clock signal, at least one of said plurality of optical samplers including a Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer (TOAD); and

a plurality of output ports, which output said plurality of sampled optical waveforms.

16. An optical sampler system, comprising:

a plurality of first input ports for receiving an optical analog waveform;

a plurality of second input ports for receiving an optical clock signal at a clock rate;

a plurality of optical sampler nodes for respectively producing a plurality of sampled optical waveforms from said optical analog waveform at a rate dependent on said clock signal;

a plurality of output ports for respectively outputting said plurality of sampled optical waveforms;

a first optical distribution network for replicating and delivering a plurality of copies of said optical clock signal; and

a second optical distribution network for replicating and delivering a plurality of copies of said optical analog waveform, said second optical distribution network including delay lines of differing optical lengths so as to provide each of said plurality of optical sampler nodes with a substantially unique timeslice of said analog optical waveform upon receipt of a corresponding one of said plurality of copies of said optical clock signal.

17. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 16, wherein said plurality of copies of said optical clock signal are delayed with respect to each other by a preset delay amount.

18. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 16, wherein at least one of said plurality of optical sampler nodes include at least one Terahertz Optical Asymmetric Demultiplexer.

19. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 16, further comprising an optical-to-electronic converter stage connected to at least one of said plurality of output ports, and configured to receive said sampled optical waveform and to convert said modulated optical waveform into an electronic waveform.

20. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 19, further comprising an analog-to-digital converter stage connected to said optical-to-electronic converter stage, and configured to convert said electronic waveform into a digital signal.

21. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 20, wherein said plurality of optical sampler nodes produce said plurality of sampled waveforms on a plurality of parallel channels, respectively, the plurality of parallel channels corresponding to n in number, n being an integer greater than one,

wherein n multiplied by a first sampling rate of the conversion by said plurality of optical sampler nodes is approximately equal to a second sampling rate of said analog-to-digital converter stage.

22. The optical sampler system as recited in claim 16, wherein distinct signal levels of at least one of said copies of said optical clock signal and said copies of said optical analog waveform through distinct paths in said first and second distribution networks are provided as correction signals used to correct a calibration of subsequent magnitude measurements of said optical sampler system.

23. An optical sampler system, comprising:

a plurality of high-speed optical shutters, each having a signal input port capable of receiving an optical input signal, a trigger input port capable of receiving an optical clock signal, and an output port;

a first optical distribution network, which receives an optical clock signal and delivers a corresponding optical clock signal to the trigger input port of each optical shutter; and

a second optical distribution network, which receives an optical analog waveform and delivers a corresponding optical analog waveform to the signal input port of each optical shutter;

wherein, for each optical shutter, the corresponding optical clock signal is synchronized with the corresponding optical analog waveform to open and close a gating window during which the optical shutter produces an optical waveform sample on its output port.

24. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the high-speed optical shutter is a TOAD.

25. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the high-speed optical shutter is open for a duration in the range from about 0.01 psec to about 100 psec.

26. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the optical waveform sample produced by each optical shutter is substantially unique.

27. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the second optical distribution network comprises delay lines of differing optical lengths.

28. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the first optical distribution network comprises delay lines of differing optical lengths.

29. The optical sampler system of claim 23, further comprising an optical-to-electronic converter stage connected to the output ports of the plurality of high-speed optical shutters.

30. The optical sampler system of claim 23, wherein the first and second optical distribution networks each include an optical path over which correction signals are provided to correct a calibration of subsequent magnitude measurements of the optical waveform samples.

31. A method of sampling an optical signal, comprising the steps of:

receiving a continuous optical analog signal having an intensity that may be any value within two predetermined intensity limits;

receiving an optical triggering signal;

providing the continuous optical analog signal to an optical shutter;

providing the optical triggering signal to the optical shutter; and

outputting from the optical shutter, a discrete sample segment of the continuous optical analog signal.

32. The method of claim 31, wherein the optical shutter is a high-speed optical shutter.

33. The method of claim 32, wherein the high-speed optical shutter is a TOAD.

34. The method of claim 31, wherein the duration of the discrete sample segment is within a range of about 0.01 psec to about 100 psec.

* * * * *

US006593871B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Miethig et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,593,871 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Jul. 15, 2003**

(54) **AUTOMATIC A/D CONVERT POSITIONING CIRCUIT AND METHOD**

(75) Inventors: **Michael Miethig**, Waterloo (CA); **Mark Gidney**, Ottawa (CA)

(73) Assignee: **Dalsa, Inc.**, Waterloo (CA)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 18 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/942,688**

(22) Filed: **Aug. 31, 2001**

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/229,122, filed on Aug. 31, 2000, and provisional application No. 60/229,054, filed on Aug. 31, 2000.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **H03M 1/12**

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **341/157**; 341/155

(58) **Field of Search** 341/155, 143, 341/144, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,565,993	A	1/1986	Brian	340/347
4,675,549	A	6/1987	Steffe et al.	307/311
4,788,696	A	11/1988	Sakane et al.	375/111
4,908,621	A	3/1990	Polonio et al.	341/120
5,287,171	A	2/1994	Ohtsubo et al.	348/500
5,406,329	A	4/1995	Kashimura et al.	348/175
5,805,233	A	9/1998	West	348/537
5,959,563	A	9/1999	Ring	341/155
6,304,202	B1 *	10/2001	Pastorello	341/155

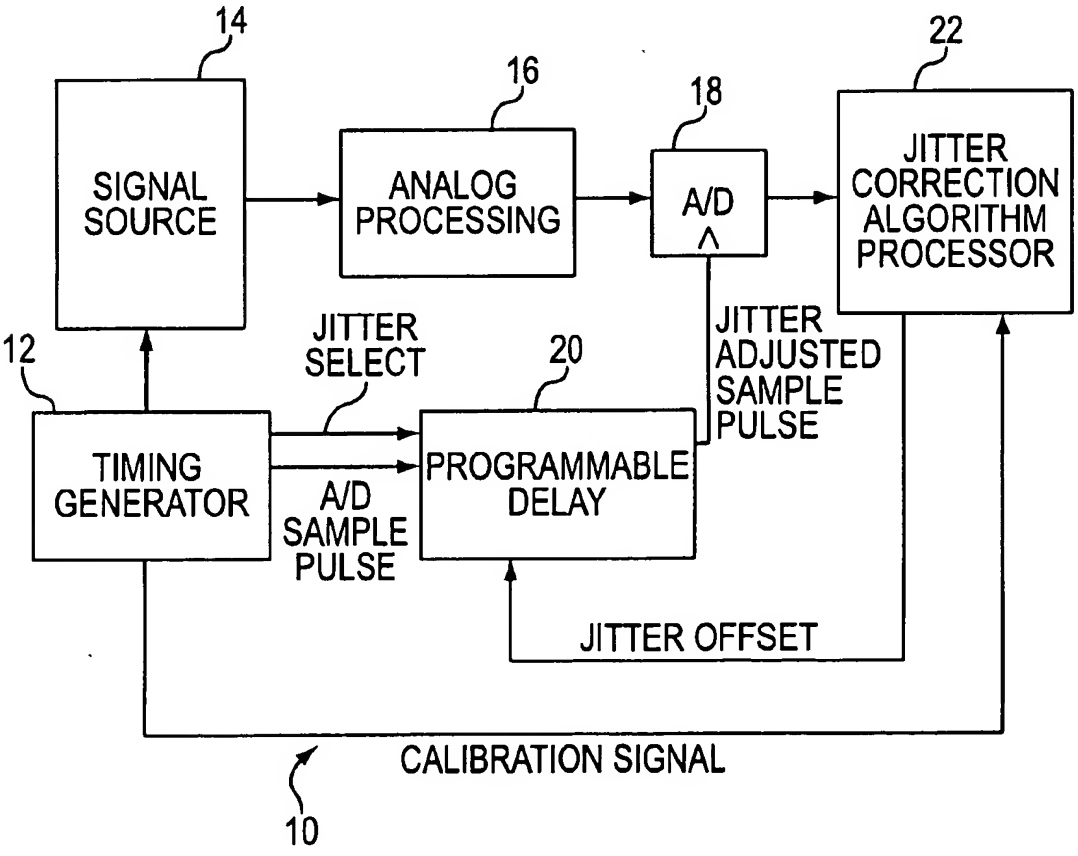
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Brian Young
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Dorsey & Whitney LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A circuit includes a programmable delay circuit to provide a sequence of delayed pulses, an A/D circuit to convert a sequence of values into digital values sampled at times defined by the sequence of delayed pulses, and a jitter correction circuit to adjust the programmable delay circuit based on a sequence of digital values from the A/D circuit sampled at times defined by the sequence of delayed pulses.

20 Claims, 7 Drawing Sheets



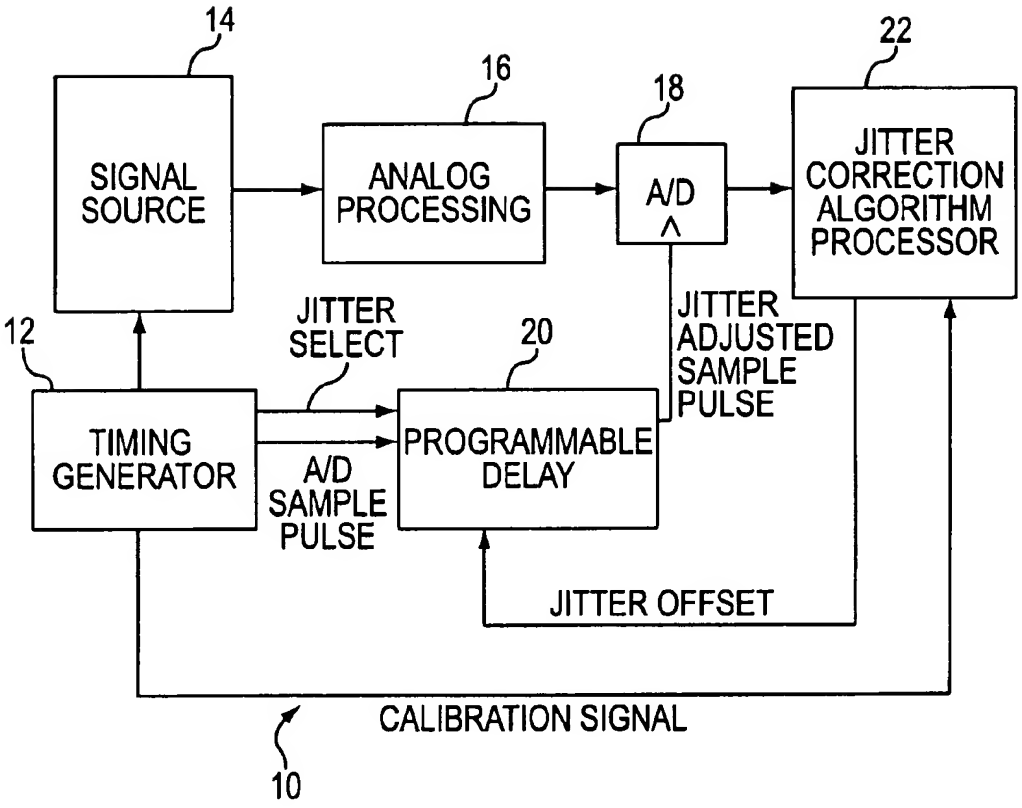

14
16
18
22
SIGNAL SOURCE
ANALOG PROCESSING
A/D
JITTER CORRECTION ALGORITHM PROCESSOR
12
JITTER SELECT
20
JITTER ADJUSTED SAMPLE PULSE
TIMING GENERATOR
A/D SAMPLE PULSE
PROGRAMMABLE DELAY
JITTER OFFSET
CALIBRATION SIGNAL
10

FIG. 1

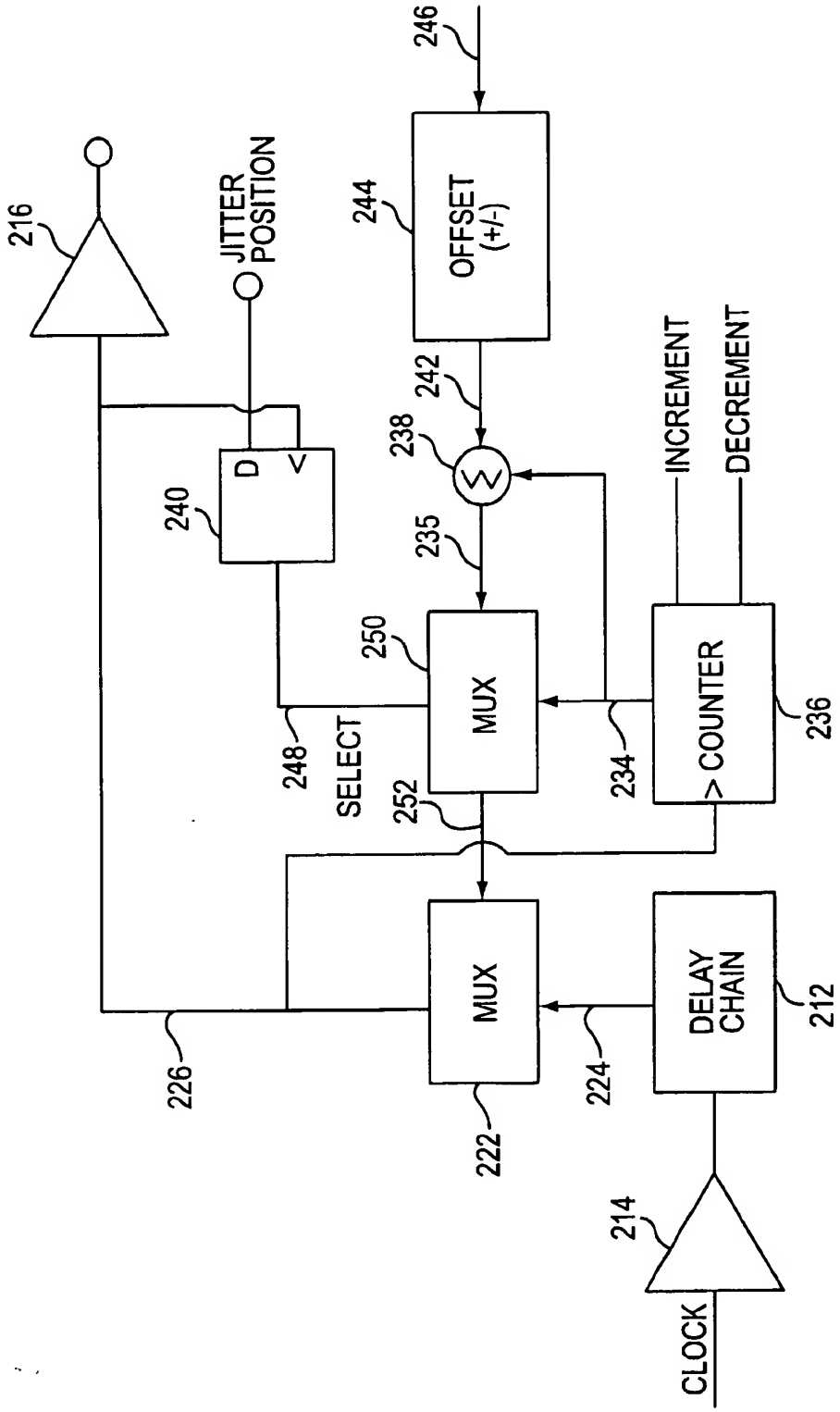

246
OFFSET (+/-)
244
JITTER POSITION
216
242
238
INCREMENT
DECREMENT
D
Q
240
235
250
MUX
COUNTER
236
248
SELECT
234
252
MUX
DELAY CHAIN
212
226
224
222
214
CLOCK

FIG. 2

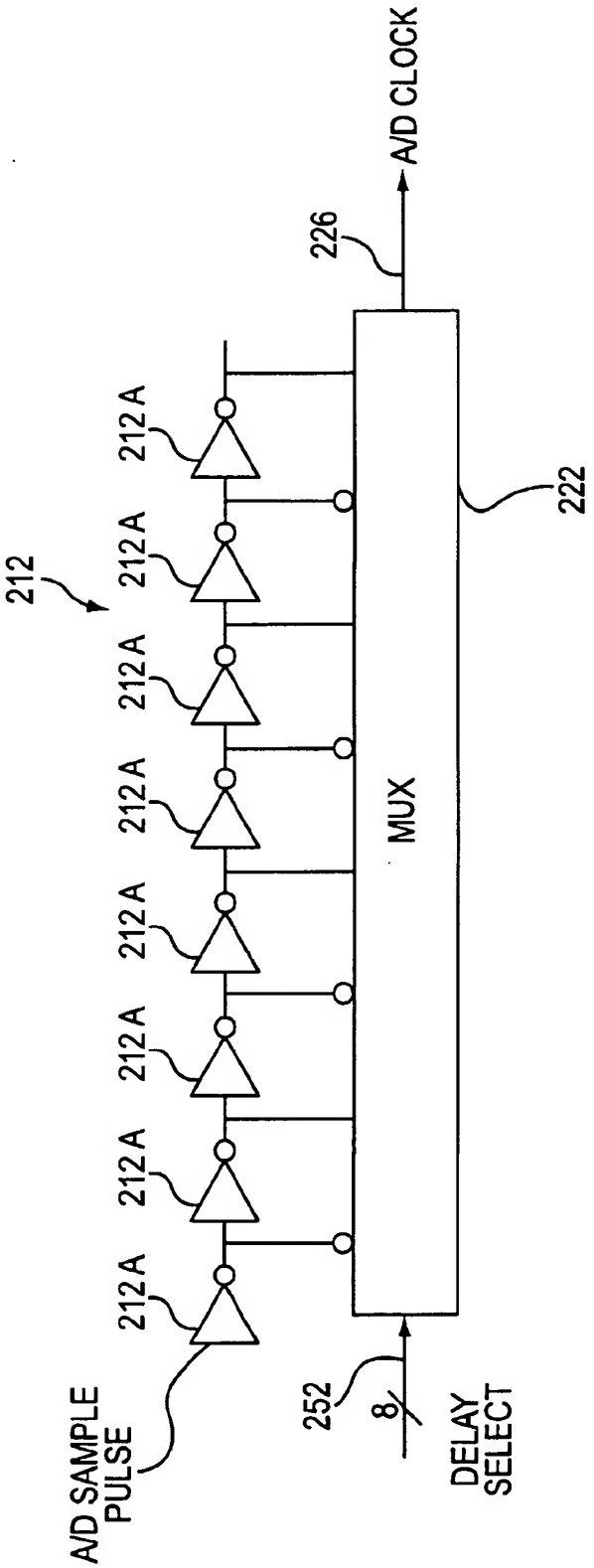

A/D CLOCK
226
222
MUX
212
212A
212A
212A
212A
212A
212A
212A
212A
A/D SAMPLE PULSE
252
8
DELAY SELECT

FIG. 3

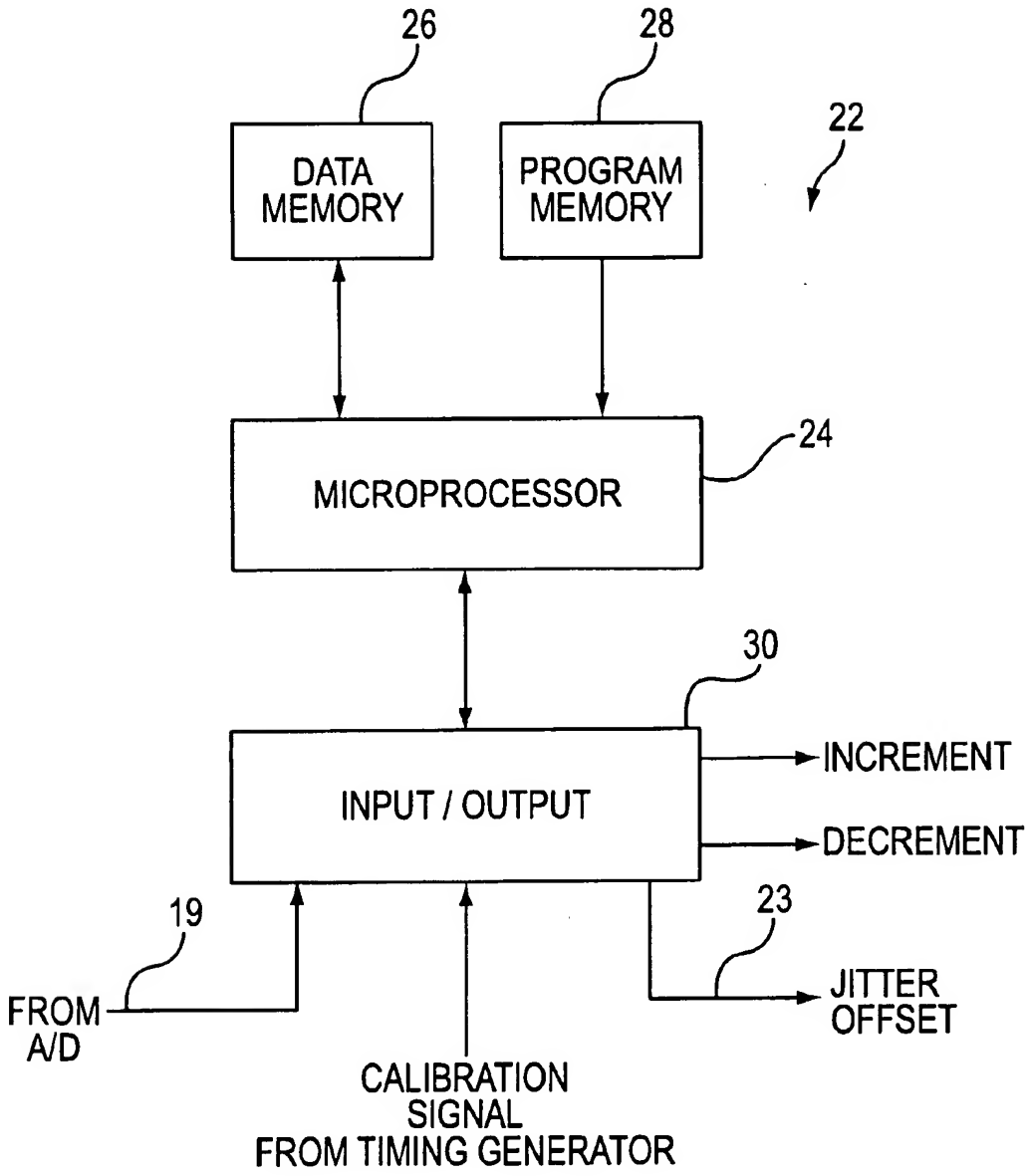

26
28
22
DATA MEMORY
PROGRAM MEMORY
24
MICROPROCESSOR
30
INPUT / OUTPUT
INCREMENT
DECREMENT
19
23
FROM A/D
JITTER OFFSET
CALIBRATION SIGNAL FROM TIMING GENERATOR

FIG. 4

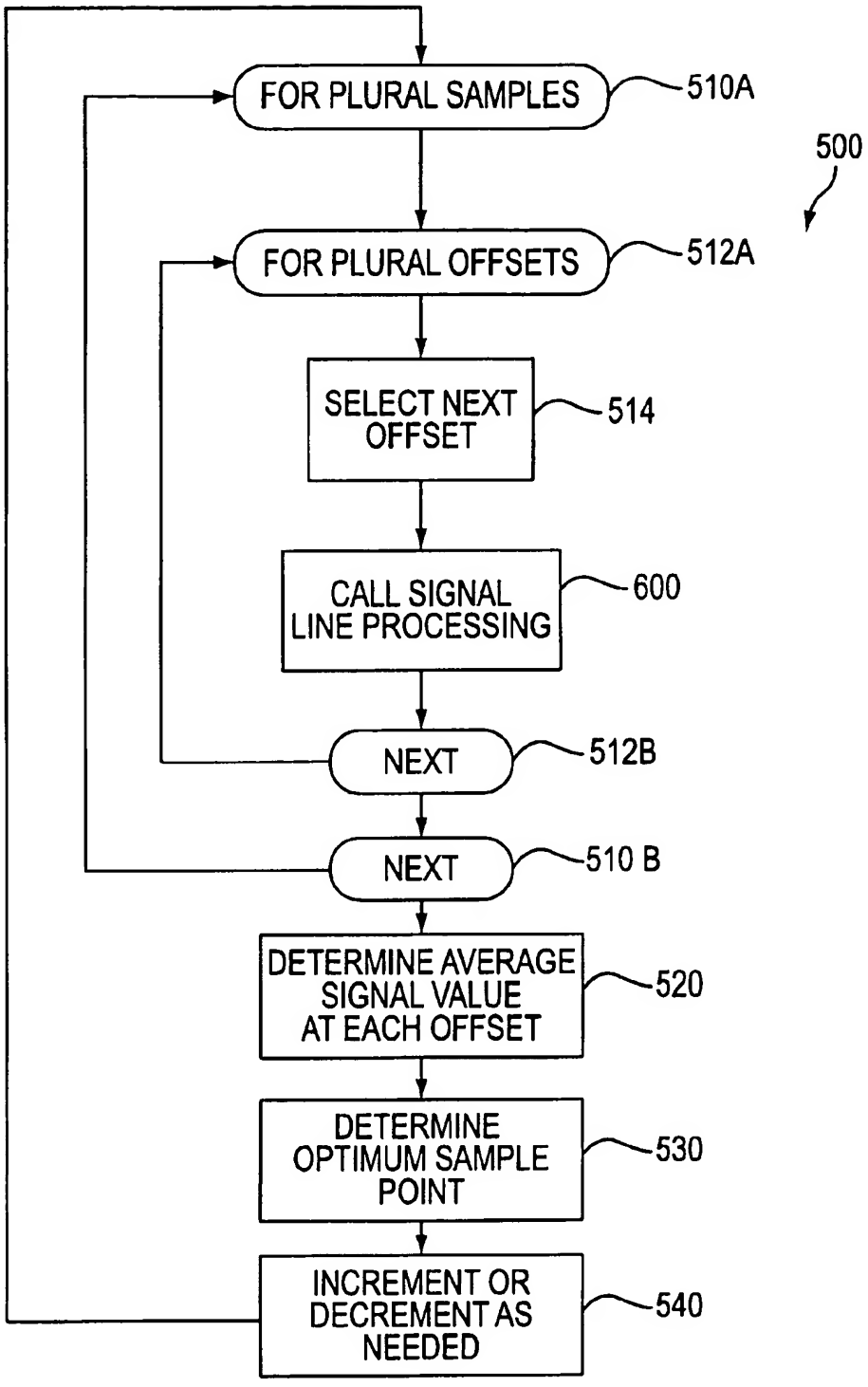

FOR PLURAL SAMPLES
510A
500
FOR PLURAL OFFSETS
512A
SELECT NEXT OFFSET
514
CALL SIGNAL LINE PROCESSING
600
NEXT
512B
NEXT
510 B
DETERMINE AVERAGE SIGNAL VALUE AT EACH OFFSET
520
DETERMINE OPTIMUM SAMPLE POINT
530
INCREMENT OR DECREMENT AS NEEDED
540

FIG. 5

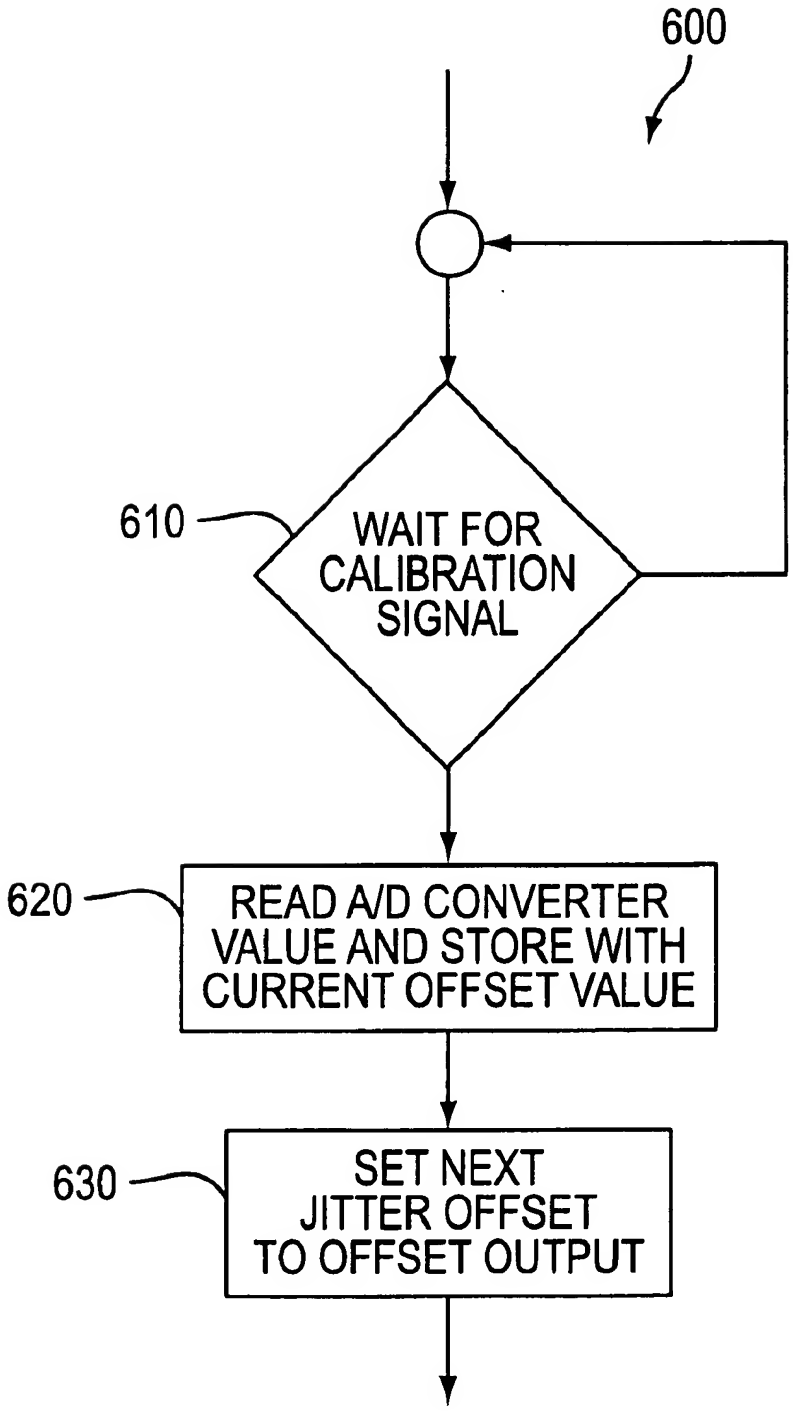

600
610
WAIT FOR CALIBRATION SIGNAL
620
READ A/D CONVERTER VALUE AND STORE WITH CURRENT OFFSET VALUE
630
SET NEXT JITTER OFFSET TO OFFSET OUTPUT

FIG. 6

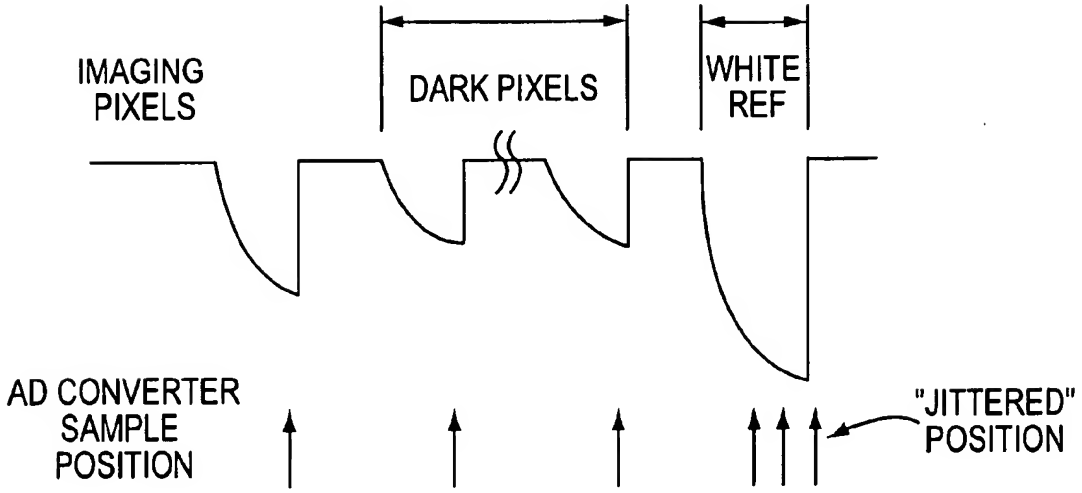

IMAGING PIXELS
DARK PIXELS
WHITE REF
AD CONVERTER SAMPLE POSITION
"JITTERED" POSITION

FIG. 7

AUTOMATIC A/D CONVERT POSITIONING CIRCUIT AND METHOD

The priority benefits of the Aug. 31, 2000 filing date of provisional application Ser. No. 60/229,122 and of the Aug. 31, 2000 filing date of provisional application Ser. No. 60/229,054 are hereby claimed.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to positioning the sample time of an analog to digital converter in a periodic waveform.

2. Description of Related Art

It is desired to be able to position the A/D converter pulse in a very narrow window of time and to perform the correct placement over various temperature ranges, supply voltage variations, and component lot to lot variations. In the past, the window of time was set large enough so that any variations in the time placement would not exceed the window width. However, now that there is a greater demand for faster camera sensors and other equipment, this window has shrunk and the old method is no longer adequate. In the past, the time window of the A/D converter position was large enough to accommodate slight variations due to temperature variations, voltage variations and lot to lot variations. The new method is an improvement because it will now be possible to shrink the convert window, and as a result, be able to increase the maximum frequency of operation and provide optimal performance over all operating conditions.

Such variations as clock driver lot to lot variations, voltage and temperature delay variations, analog processing lot to lot variations, timing generation lot to lot variations, and A/D aperture delay lot to lot variations are critical at high speed where timing margin is near zero. These variables are continuously monitored with the present invention and corrected using a digital algorithm and a new delay line capable of "jittering" the sample pulse for one full clock period.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is an object to the present invention to automatically position the sample time of an analog to digital converter.

These and other objects are achieved in a circuit that includes a programmable delay circuit, an A/D circuit triggered by the programmable delay circuit and a jitter correction algorithm processor coupled to insert a standard signal into the A/D circuit and to control the programmable delay circuit.

Alternatively, these objects are achieved with a method that includes steps of measuring a calibration function, correlating the measured calibration circuit with a known function, and determining a jitter control delay value from a result of the step of correlating.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS

The invention will be described in detail in the following description of preferred embodiments with reference to the following figures wherein:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of a representative circuit of the invention;

FIG. 2 is a block diagram of the programmable delay circuit of the invention;

FIG. 3 is a schematic diagram of a delay line and multiplexer of the invention;

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of a jitter correction algorithm processor;

FIG. 5 is a flow chart of a representative algorithm according to the invention;

FIG. 6 is a flow chart of a representative method to measure the calibration function according to the invention; and

FIG. 7 is a graph illustrating the signal into the A/D converter that is processed by the invention based on an imaging sensor chip as a signal source where imaging pixels are preceded by a "white" calibration reference then two dark pixels (the jittered position is illustrated).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

In FIG. 1, circuit **10** includes timing generator **12** for generating timing and control signals to control signal source **14**. Signal source **14** is preferably a CMOS or CCD imaging sensor with associated clock drivers, but could be another type of source such as a communications source such as an "eye" detector. Source **14** generates an analog data signal that includes a test signal incorporated in the signal datastream. The signal datastream, including test signal, is processed through analog processor **16** through to analog to digital converter **18** (A/D converter or ADC). Timing generator **12** also produces an A/D sample pulse that passes through programmable delay circuit **20** to provide a jitter adjusted sample pulse to be used as the sample trigger for A/D converter **18**. The digital sampled data from A/D converter **18** is provided to and processed by jitter correction algorithm processor **22**. The test signal in the datastream is a calibration signal that is periodically inserted in the signal datastream. For example, in the case of a CCD or CMOS sensor, a pixel data line is read out to include a couple of "dark" pixels, a line of signal pixels, a couple more "dark" pixels and a test pixel, actually a reference white pixel, and the data line is repeated. In the case of communication system, a test signal might be a reference "eye" inserted in the datastream.

Timing generator **12** also provides to jitter correction algorithm processor **22** a calibration signal to indicate when a test signal is present in the datastream sampled by A/D converter **18**. In any particular design, the calibration signal may be a pulse in advance of the actual test signal in the datastream. In order to control the programmable delay circuit **20**, jitter correction algorithm processor **22** issues a jitter offset signal to the programmable delay circuit **20**. Timing generator **12** also provides a jitter select signal to programmable delay circuit **20**. The jitter select signal causes programmable delay circuit **20** to jitter the delay through programmable delay circuit **20** (i.e.,jitter the jitter adjusted sample pulse) by an amount defined by the jitter offset received from jitter correction algorithm processor **22**. However, timing generator **12** controls the timing of the datastream from signal source **14** and the jitter select signal so that the jitter adjusted sample pulse is only jittered when the test signal is present in the datastream and about to be sampled by A/D converter **18**. This will be described in further detail with respect to a discussion of programmable delay circuit **20**.

Jitter correction algorithm processor **22** collects digital data corresponding to the output of A/D converter **18** when the test signal is being digitally sampled. Typically, 5 to 30 different sample positions, preferably 10 to 20 sample

positions, spanning a critical time interval, are used to sample the test signal by A/D converter **18**. At each sample position, plural samples may be take to obtain averages. For example, with a CCD or CMOS sensor having 525 lines of pixels (as in an NTSC TV television standard), each frame provides 525 opportunities to measure the test signal. Jitter correction algorithm processor **22** maybe structured to collect 35 data samples at each jittered position of 15 sample position spanning the test signal (15*35=525). For each of the 15 sample positions, the 35 samples taken at the sample position are averaged to determine the mean signal strength at the sample position, and a square root of a variance of the 35 samples around the mean signal strength at the sample position is determined as a measure of the noise. From this, the signal to noise ratio at each jittered sample position can be determined. The mean signal strength at all the 15 sample positions defines a measured test function or calibration function.

The calibration function is correlated with a known reference function to determine the optimum sample point as discussed below. Alternatively, a maximum value of the signal to noise ratio is selected from the plural sample positions (e.g., 15 sample positions in this case).

In FIG. **2**, A/D sample pulse from timing generator **12** is provided to an input of input buffer **214** as a clock signal. Input buffer **214** provides the clock pulse to delay chain **212**. Delay chain **212** includes plural inverter circuits in a chain (for example, 128 or 256 inverter circuits) generating a multi-tap delay line. Multiplexer **222** is coupled to the plurality of taps generated by delay chain **212** and controlled by shift signal **252** to select a single tap signal **226** that is provided to an input of output buffer **216** that provides the jitter adjusted sample pulse to A/D converter **18**.

In FIG. **2**, jitter offset signal **242** is an offset to circuit delay signal **234**. Jitter offset signal **246** from jitter correction algorithm processor **22** is stored in register **244** (or register **244** might be the output register of processor **22**) as signal **242** and added to circuit delay signal **234** in adder **238** to provide jittered signal **235**. Tap counter **236** provides circuit delay signal **234** where either signal INCREMENT or signal DECREMENT (from processor **22**) increments or decrements counter **236** synchronously with the pulse signal **226**. Multiplexer **250** provides shift signal **252** by selecting either circuit delay signal **234** or jittered signal **235** according to a value of select signal **248**. Select signal **248** comes either directly from timing generator **12** or, preferably, from D type flip flop **240** (as shown) that is set synchronously by pulse signal **226** where the jitter position input to D type flip flop **240** comes from timing generator **12**.

In operation, a clock pulse (e.g., A/D sample pulse from timing generator **12**) passes through input buffer **214** and enters delay chain **212**. Multiplexer **222** selects single tap **226** from all taps **224** of delay chain **212** based on shift signal **252** used as a selection address. Single tap **226** passes through output buffer **216** to trigger a sample at A/D converter **18** (see FIG. **1**). Shift signal **252** is provided by multiplexer **250** by selecting either circuit delay signal **234** or jittered signal **235** according to a value of select signal **248**.

Assume for a moment that select signal **248** is set so that multiplexer **250** selects only circuit delay signal **234** to be provided as shift signal **252**. In this case, processor **22** is free to increment or decrement counter **236** to adjust the delay between when a clock pulse enters input buffer **214** and exits output buffer **216**. The question is, how does processor **22** know whether to increment or decrement?

To understand this, assume that the circuit of FIG. **2** is used to input the A/D sample pulse from timing generator **12** and to output a pulse timed to strobe A/D converter **18** that samples the sensor's output video data stream. Assume further that the video data stream (a single analog signal) has, in sequence, a couple of dark pixels, a line of data pixels, a couple more dark pixels and then a reference white pixel, and the sequence repeats. Processor **22** is now able to increment or decrement counter **236** based on data received that corresponds to the reference white pixel.

To measure and determine a desired offset, processor **22** loads an offset into offset register **244** that is selected within a range from minus a value to plus the value (e.g. 15 sample positions from −7 to +7 as discussed in the example above): Then, just before the last pixel before the reference white pixel is being read out, the jitter position signal from processor **22** is set to be loaded in D type flip flop **240** when A/D converter sample pulse for the last pixel passes through output buffer **216**. This causes multiplexer **250** to provide jittered signal **235** as shift signal **252**. Now, when the reference white pixel is converted in A/D converter **18** based on the jittered timing of a strobe from output buffer **216**, its sample point will be jittered plus or minus around the count located in counter **236** according to the value in jitter register **244**.

Just before the pulse that strobes the reference white pixel passes through output buffer **216**, the jitter position signal from processor **22** is reset so that upon the strobe, D flip flop **240** is reset and multiplexer **250** again provides circuit delay signal **234** from counter **236** as shift signal **252**. The result of this measurement process is that a single A/D converter sample has been taken of the reference white pixel at a strobe time defined by offset jitter signal **246** for each line from the datastream.

This process is repeated for each video line of the sensor, collecting one calibration sample at a jittered position for each line. After a number of lines, the reference white pixel will have been sampled over a sequence of offset jitter times so as to trace out a complete timeline of the reference white pixel in what is referred to as a calibration function. Processor **22** then correlates this calibration function with a similar known function to determine the optimal time position for A/D converter sampling. Alternatively, processor **22** determines the jitter offset that produces a sample position that exhibits the greatest signal to noise ratio, and then determines the optimal time position for A/D converter sampling based on a maximum signal to noise ratio. Processor **22** then increments or decrements counter **236** to adjust the sampling time of the rest of the video lines following a determination that the optimal sample time has shifted.

This jitter process determines whether or not a convert position is optimal. Typically, only one pixel is used to determine the optimal position of, for example, an A/D converter convert pulse. The increment and decrement signals are provided to control tap counter **236**. This tap counter implements a programmable delay that is updated once per frame based on plural samples collected once per line via an algorithm inside processor **22**.

In FIG. **3**, programmable delay circuit **20** includes plural inverter circuits **212A** in a chain (for example, 128 or 256 inverter circuits). The inverter chain is tapped at various points by multiplexer **222** according to shift signal **252** (a delay select signal) provided to the multiplexer. The A/D sample pulse from timing generator **12** is provided into the input of the inverter chain, and the output of the multiplexer **222** is an A/D clock that carries the jitter adjusted sample pulse.

In FIG. 4, jitter correction algorithm processor 22 includes a microprocessor 24, data memory 26, program memory 28 and input/output logic 30, or other suitable processing arrangement (e.g., ASIC, FPLA, etc.). Processor 22 receives as inputs the digitized signal 19 from A/D converter 18 and a calibration signal from timing generator 12 that identifies when a reference test signal will be sampled by A/D converter 18. Processor sends as output jitter offset 23 to programmable delay circuit 20 to jitter the sample time of each reference test signal embedded in the datastream. When sufficient jittered data has been sampled to determine that an offset is needed for all data being sampled, increment and decrement commands to the tap counter are issued by processor 22. In processor 22, the jitter correction algorithm will shift the position of the A/D converter clock (using increment and decrement), in time, based on a generalized performance (jitter correction) algorithm. Utilization of a pre-specified "white" pixel is employed in the jitter correction algorithm, or in cases where the "white" pixel is not available, any standard imaging pixel can be utilized. The algorithm functions in a manner to optimize (maximize) the response due to the aforementioned "white" pixel and/or minimize noise. The algorithm works by moving the A/D converter sample clock back or ahead in time while monitoring the output response due to the selected reference pixel. The moving back or ahead in time of the A/D converter sample clock is performed by a new programmable delay circuit (FIG. 2). The delay select signal chooses which tap of the inverter chain to direct the A/D converter sample clock signal and hence can control the delay to a resolution determined by the propagation delay through one inverter.

This invention will allow, for example, a camera, to operate reliably at higher frequencies. The programmable delay circuit part of the invention may be used in other applications that require the use of a programmable delay that can be changed "on the fly".

Typically, CMOS buffers will have plus or minus 1 nanosecond drift over the operating temperatures and voltages. This drift, lot to lot, is about 5 nanoseconds according to many data sheets. An A/D converter has about plus or minus 0.5 nanoseconds drift over temperature and voltages of aperture delay. Lot to lot delay may be assumed to be plus or minus 1.5 nanoseconds. Adding up the delays one gets approximately 10 nanoseconds variability, lot to lot, and plus or minus 1.5 nanoseconds over temperature. This assumes stable analog delays. In a sensor chip with correlated double sampling with overdrive, the delay has about a 3 nanosecond window. The programmable delay line approach should compensate for variations in a range from minus 1.5 nanoseconds to plus 14.5 nanoseconds (a 16 nanoseconds range). The resolution should be at least 5 steps in a 3 nanosecond window. This translates to 0.6 nanoseconds per step. Preferably 10 steps would be available in a 3 nanosecond window, or 0.3 nanoseconds. Therefore, to achieve a variable delay in a range from minus 1.5 nanoseconds to 14.5 nanoseconds (a 16 nanosecond range), 32 steps might be required at 0.5 nanoseconds per step.

Sometimes inductance-capacitance cells may be used for delay lines; however, phase jitter due to unrelated switching may result in and create undesirable effects. Furthermore such delay lines are not consistent, lot to lot, or part to part, or over temperature.

In FIG. 5, a flow chart of the jitter correction algorithm includes loop controls 510A, 510B, 512A and 512B. Loop controls 510A and 510B merely loop enough times to obtain sufficient calibration samples to perform good averaging. In the NTSC example discussed above, 35 loops are performed. Loop controls 512A and 512B alter the jitter offset for the measurements. In the NTSC example discussed above, 15 loops are performed. At the beginning of each loop, the next offset (not the current one being measured) is selected at step 514, and the algorithm calls signal line processing 600, a step discussed below with respect to FIG. 6.

After all loops are performed by loop controls 510A, 510B, 512A and 512B, the stored data is processed in step 520. This might mean an end of a frame of signal lines as in the NTSC example discussed above, or it might mean at the end of a predetermined number of signal lines whether or not organized in frames. In step 520, the data is set into bins corresponding to each jittered offset. All test signal values within a bin (i.e., a single offset value) are averaged. FIG. 7 depicts a representative graph of a signal datastream with a white reference test signal at the end of the datastream. In the NTSC example discussed above, the 15 averaged sample values will trace out a curve that is a discrete time sampled version of the white reference test signal.

In step 530, a new optimum sample point is determined. One way to do this is to determined the signal to noise ratio of measured data at each sample point. The signal is the average signal value determined by step 520. A noise metric at each jittered offset is determined by calculating, for example, the square root of a variance about the mean of all test signal values within a bin (i.e., at a single offset value). Then, the ratio can be determined. The greatest signal to noise value indicates the optimum signal point. Presumably, the noise is somewhat consistent at each jittered sample point, thus, the signal noise ratio will tend to peak where the averaged signal is greatest. The optimal sample point is taken as the offset where the signal to noise ratio is greatest.

Alternatively, the optimal sample point may be determined by correlating in time the measured calibration function (i.e., the averaged measurements at each jitter sample position) with a known calibration function and choosing the expected optimal point of the known function based on an offset of the measured calibration function from a known calibration function.

In step 540, the value of tap counter 236 (FIG. 2) is incremented or decremented to adjust the count value to perform optimal sampling at all points in the datastream, not just the test signal. For example, if jittered offsets are tested between −7 and +7 tap positions relative to the value of tap counter 236, where the 0 tap position is taken to be the current value of the tap counter, and if the optimal jittered offset is calculated to be +1, then the tap counter will be incremented. Then, during the next frame of data (or plurality of lines of data, if not organized in frames), the optimal jittered offset will be reduced to a 0 tap position again unless further delay line jitter occurs.

In FIG. 6, signal line processing 600 includes the steps of step 610 of waiting for the calibration signal from the timing generator, step 620 of reading the A/D converter value and storing it with the current offset value, and step 630 of setting up the next offset value by outputting the next offset value to programmable delay circuit 20 to be ready for the next time that timing generator 12 strobes programmable delay circuit 20 with a jitter select.

In FIG. 7, there is illustrated a timeline of a signal source coming from a pixel line of an imaging sensor. A white reference pixel is included in the datastream. The jitter position is shown with the white reference pixel to be varied over a limited range where the white reference pixel has its

maximum value. Once this variation is sampled and correlated according to the jitter correction algorithm, the correct value for the jitter delay is set for the next line.

Having described preferred embodiments of a novel A/D convert positioning circuit and method (which are intended to be illustrative and not limiting), it is noted that modifications and variations can be made by persons skilled in the art in light of the above teachings. It is therefore to be understood that changes may be made in the particular embodiments of the invention disclosed which are within the scope and spirit of the invention as defined by the appended claims.

Having thus described the invention with the details and particularity required by the patent laws, what is claimed and desired protected by Letters Patent is set forth in the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A circuit comprising:

a programmable delay circuit to provide a strobe;

an A/D circuit triggered by the strobe; and

a jitter correction algorithm processor coupled to control the programmable delay circuit to jitter in time the strobe when a test sample is input into the A/D circuit.

2. A circuit comprising:

a programmable delay circuit to provide a sequence of delayed pulses;

an A/D circuit to convert a sequence of values into digital values sampled at times defined by the sequence of delayed pulses; and

a jitter correction circuit to adjust the programmable delay circuit based on a sequence of digital values from the A/D circuit sampled at times defined by the sequence of delayed pulses.

3. The circuit of claim 2, further comprising a timing generator, wherein timing generator provides the jitter correction circuit with a calibration signal to define when a test signal will be input into the A/D converter.

4. The circuit of claim 3, wherein the jitter correction circuit includes:

an input to receive the sequence of digital values and the calibration signal;

an output to provide a jitter offset;

a processor coupled to the input and to the output; and

a memory coupled to the processor.

5. The circuit of claim 4, wherein the jitter correction circuit includes a line processing module stored in the memory to control the processor, wherein the line processing module includes:

a sub-module to wait for receipt of the calibration signal;

a sub-module to read a value from the A/D converter and store the value and a current offset in a data memory; and

a sub-module to provide a next jitter value to the programmable delay circuit.

6. The circuit of claim 5, wherein the jitter correction circuit further includes:

a module to select a next jitter offset; and

a module to iteratively repeat the module to select a next jitter offset and the sub-modules of the line processing module.

7. The circuit of claim 6, wherein the jitter correction circuit further includes:

a module to determine a calibration function;

a module to determine an optimum sample point from the calibration function; and

a module to adjust the programmable delay circuit based on the optimum sample point.

8. The circuit of claim 2, wherein the jitter correction circuit includes:

an input to receive the sequence of digital values;

an output to provide the jitter control delay value and a multiplexer control signal, the multiplex control value being coupled to the multiplexer;

a processor coupled to the input and to the output; and

a memory coupled to the processor.

9. The circuit of claim 8, wherein the memory has stored therein modules for controlling the processor, the modules including:

a first module to control the processor to measure a test signal transmitted as part of a datastream at a plurality of offsets from a nominal sample time;

a second module to control the processor to determine an average measured value at each offset; and

a third module to control the processor to determine an optimal offset from the nominal sample time.

10. The medium of claim 9, further comprising a fourth module to control the processor to adjust a programmable delay circuit according to the optimal offset.

11. The medium of claim 9, wherein the first module includes:

a first sub-module to control the processor to select an offset for a next test sample;

a second sub-module to control the processor to wait for a calibration signal from a timing generator;

a third sub-module to control the processor to measure a digital value of the test signal at a current offset when the calibration signal is received; and

a fourth sub-module to control the processor to set the selected next offset in a programmable delay circuit.

12. The circuit of claim 2, wherein the circuit is a circuit integrated on a single chip.

13. The circuit of claim 2, wherein the circuit is part of a sensor integrated on a single chip.

14. A circuit comprising:

a programmable delay circuit;

an A/D circuit triggered by the programmable delay circuit; and

a jitter correction algorithm processor coupled to examine a test signal transmitted as part of a data stream and to control the programmable delay circuit.

15. A method comprising steps of:

measuring a test signal transmitted as part of a datastream at a plurality of offsets from a nominal sample time;

determining an average measured value at each offset; and

determining an optimal offset from the nominal sample time.

16. The method of claim 15, further comprising a step of adjusting a programmable delay circuit according to the optimal offset.

17. The method of claim 15, wherein the step of measuring a test signal includes steps of:

selecting an offset for a next test sample;

waiting for a calibration signal from a timing generator;

measuring a digital value of the test signal at a current offset when the calibration signal is received; and

setting the selected next offset in a programmable delay circuit.

18. A computer readable medium having stored therein modules for controlling a processor, the modules including:

a first module to control the processor to measure a test signal transmitted as part of a datastream at a plurality of offsets from a nominal sample time;

a second module to control the processor to determine an average measured value at each offset; and

a third module to control the processor to determine an optimal offset from the nominal sample time.

19. The medium of claim 18, further comprising a fourth module to control the processor to adjust a programmable delay circuit according to the optimal offset.

20. The medium of claim 18, wherein the first module includes:

a first sub-module to control the processor to select an offset for a next test sample;

a second sub-module to control the processor to wait for a calibration signal from a timing generator;

a third sub-module to control the processor to measure a digital value of the test signal at a current offset when the calibration signal is received; and

a fourth sub-module to control the processor to set the selected next offset in a programmable delay circuit.

* * * * *

US006430715B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Myers et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,430,715 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Aug. 6, 2002**

(54) **PROTOCOL AND BIT RATE INDEPENDENT TEST SYSTEM**

(75) Inventors: **Kenneth T. Myers; Douglas J. Gardner**, both of Palm Harbor, FL (US)

(73) Assignee: **Digital Lightwave, Inc.**

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/533,582**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 23, 2000**

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/154,686, filed on Sep. 17, 1999.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **G06F 11/00**; G01R 31/28

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **714/704**; 714/712

(58) **Field of Search** 714/704, 708, 714/709; 375/321, 224; 359/110, 180

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,451,916	A *	5/1984	Casper et al.	714/4
4,475,210	A *	10/1984	Couch	375/224
4,633,465	A *	12/1986	Fitch et al.	714/709
4,809,306	A *	2/1989	Somer	375/376
4,941,161	A *	7/1990	Cook	377/28
5,333,147	A *	7/1994	Nohara et al.	375/224
5,491,722	A *	2/1996	Jones et al.	375/224
5,557,647	A *	9/1996	Kushige et al.	375/371
5,617,238	A *	4/1997	Bogdan et al.	359/110
5,724,362	A *	3/1998	Lau	714/704
5,774,242	A *	6/1998	O'Sullivan et al.	359/110
5,870,211	A *	2/1999	Yoshida	359/110
6,084,931	A *	7/2000	Powell, II et al.	375/355
6,115,416	A *	9/2000	Katsman et al.	375/224
6,148,423	A *	11/2000	Le Mouel et al.	714/708

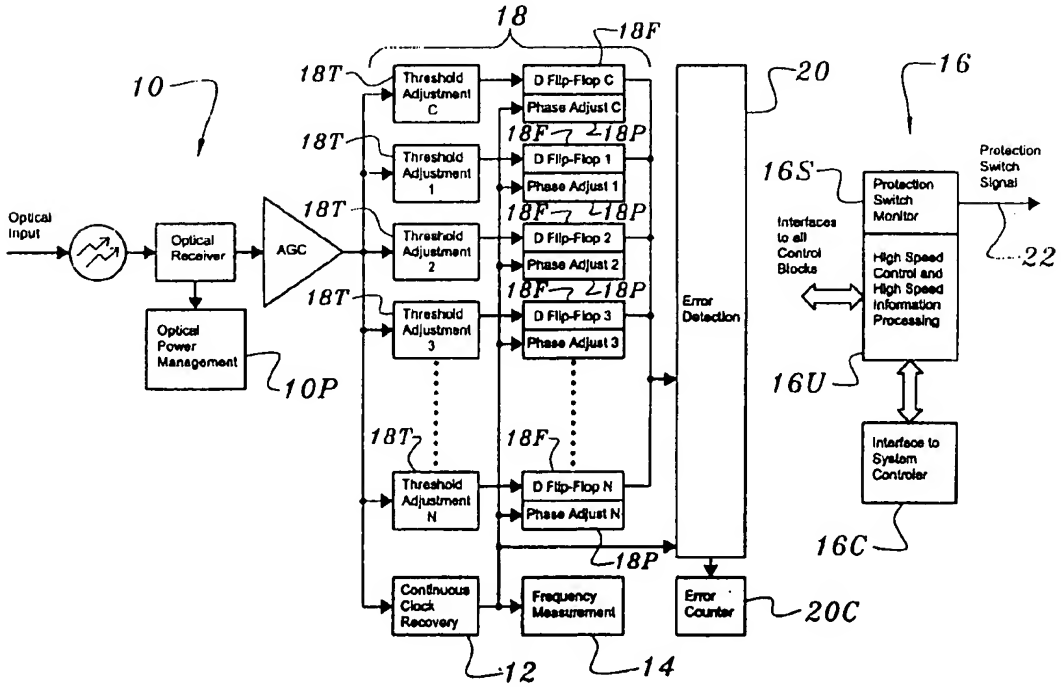
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Albert Decady
Assistant Examiner—Joseph D. Torres
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Holland & Knight LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A protocol and bit rate independent test system for detecting bit errors on a digital communications channel regardless of format or rate, comprising a receiver for receiving an input, a clock recovery unit, a threshold sampling circuit for providing at least two threshold detectors for respective two sampling points including at least one static sampling point positioned proximate to the center of an eye pattern and at least one dynamic sampling point, the output of which are sampled by the recovered clock and if the signal passes between the thresholds, an error signal is generated and counted.

28 Claims, 5 Drawing Sheets



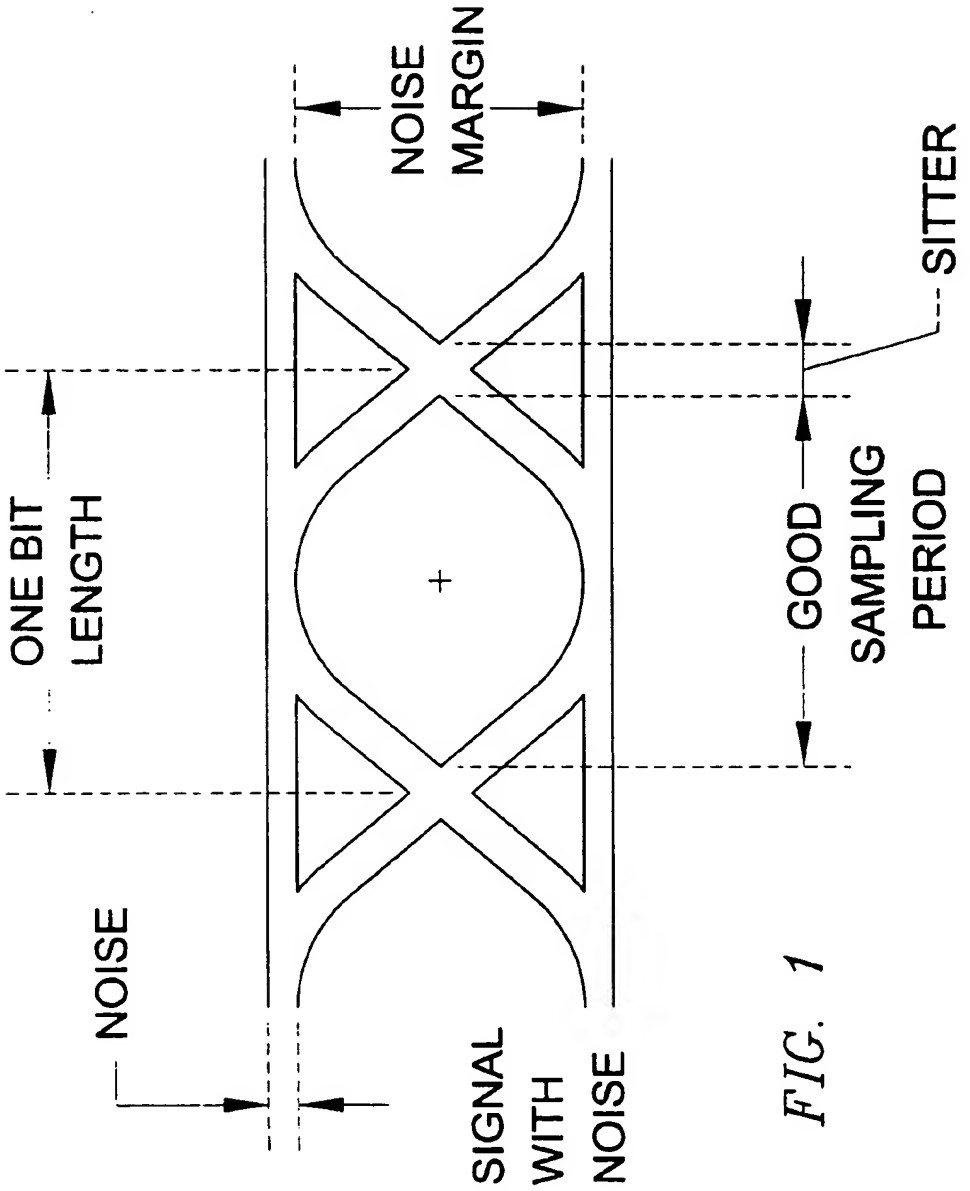

NOISE MARGIN
SITTER
ONE BIT LENGTH
GOOD SAMPLING PERIOD
NOISE
SIGNAL WITH NOISE

FIG. 1

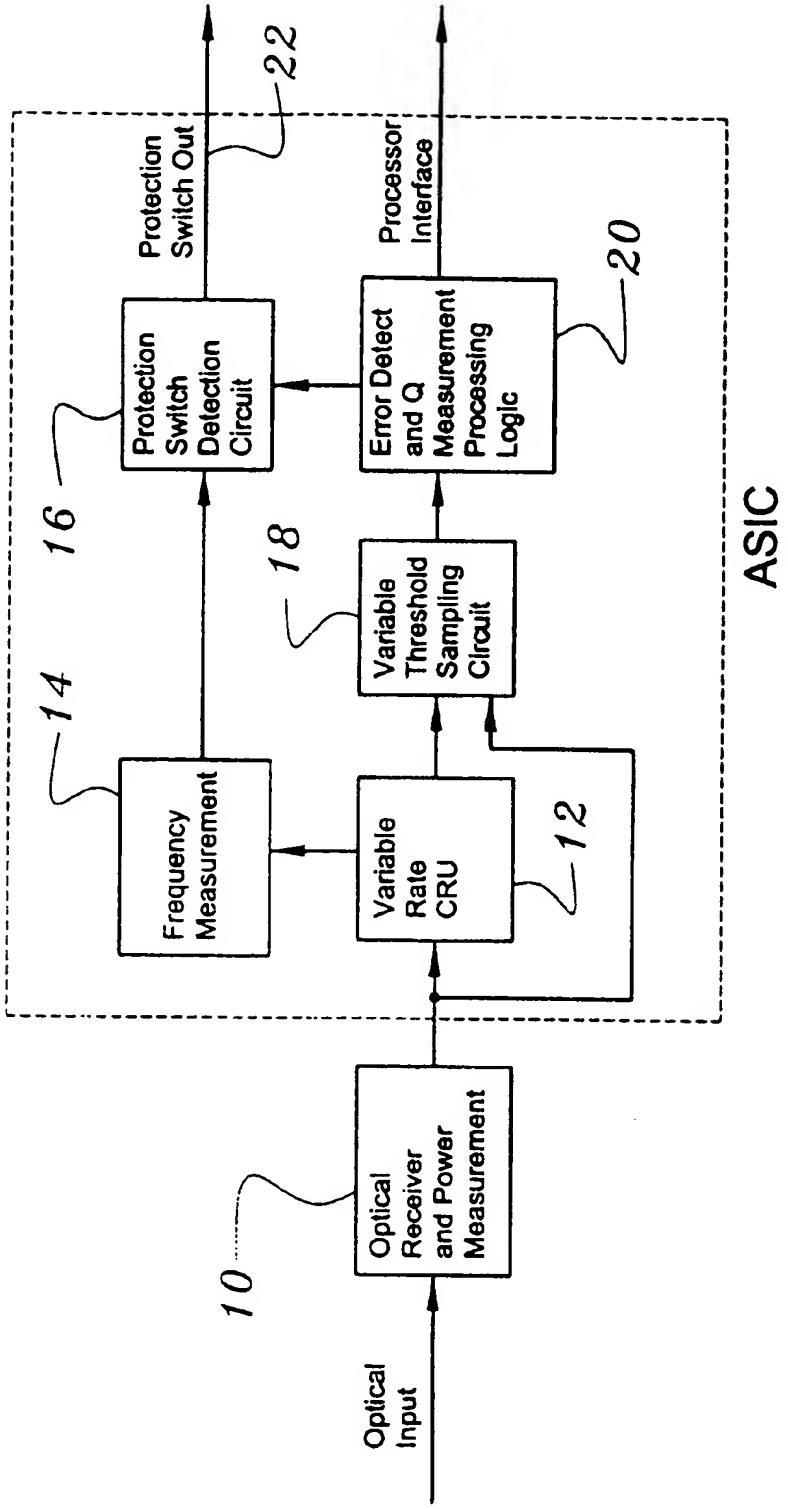

Optical Input
10
Optical Receiver and Power Measurement
Variable Rate CRU
12
Frequency Measurement
14
Protection Switch Detection Circuit
16
Variable Threshold Sampling Circuit
18
Error Detect and Q Measurement Processing Logic
20
Protection Switch Out
22
Processor Interface
ASIC

FIG. 2

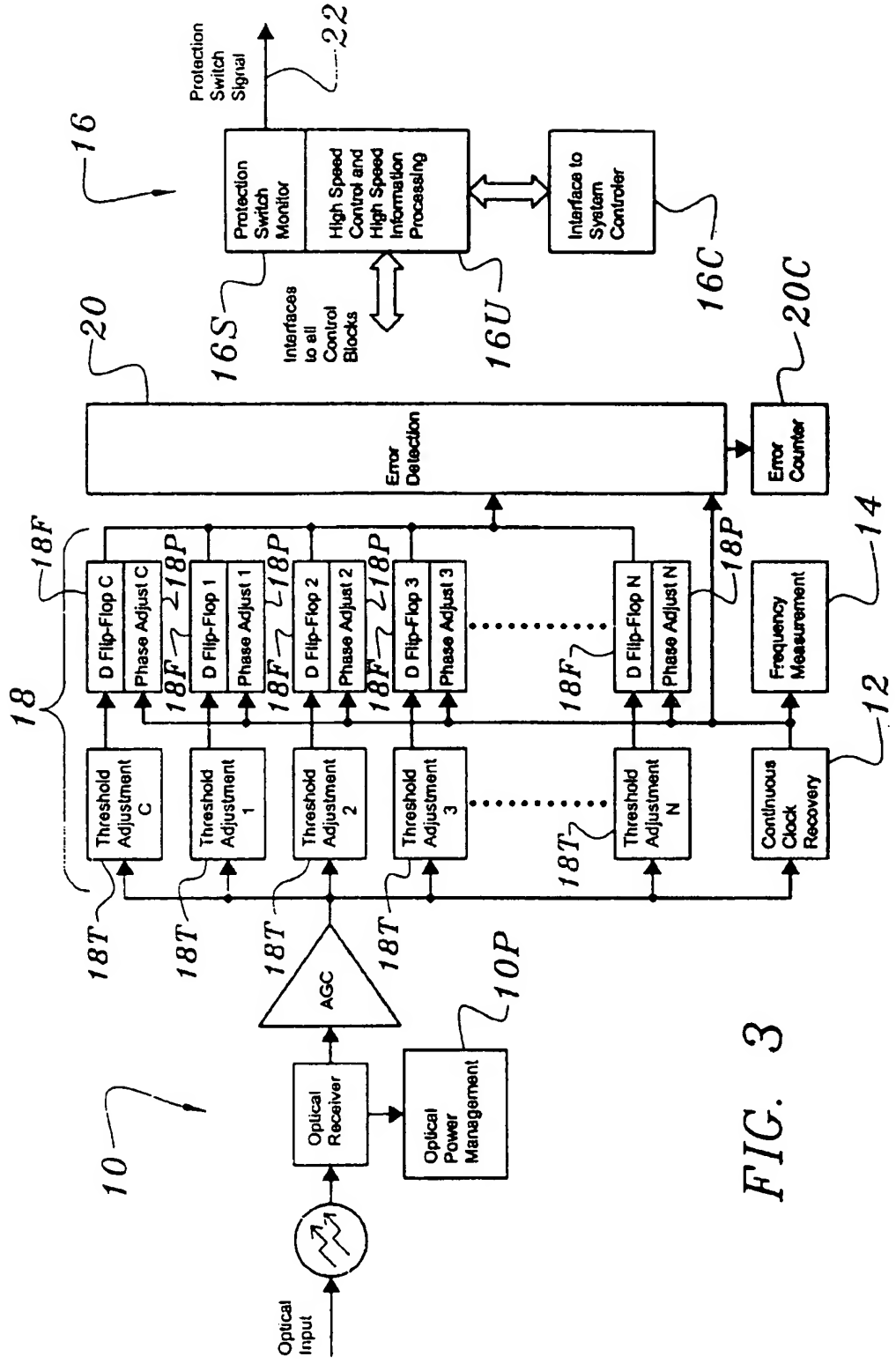

Protection Switch Signal
22
16
Protection Switch Monitor
High Speed Control and High Speed Information Processing
Interface to System Controller
16S
Interfaces to all Control Blocks
16U
16C
20
20C
Error Detection
Error Counter
18F
18P
D Flip-Flop C
Phase Adjust C
D Flip-Flop 1
Phase Adjust 1
D Flip-Flop 2
Phase Adjust 2
D Flip-Flop 3
Phase Adjust 3
D Flip-Flop N
Phase Adjust N
Frequency Measurement
14
18
Threshold Adjustment C
Threshold Adjustment 1
Threshold Adjustment 2
Threshold Adjustment 3
Threshold Adjustment N
Continuous Clock Recovery
12
18T
AGC
10P
Optical Receiver
Optical Power Management
10
Optical Input

FIG. 3

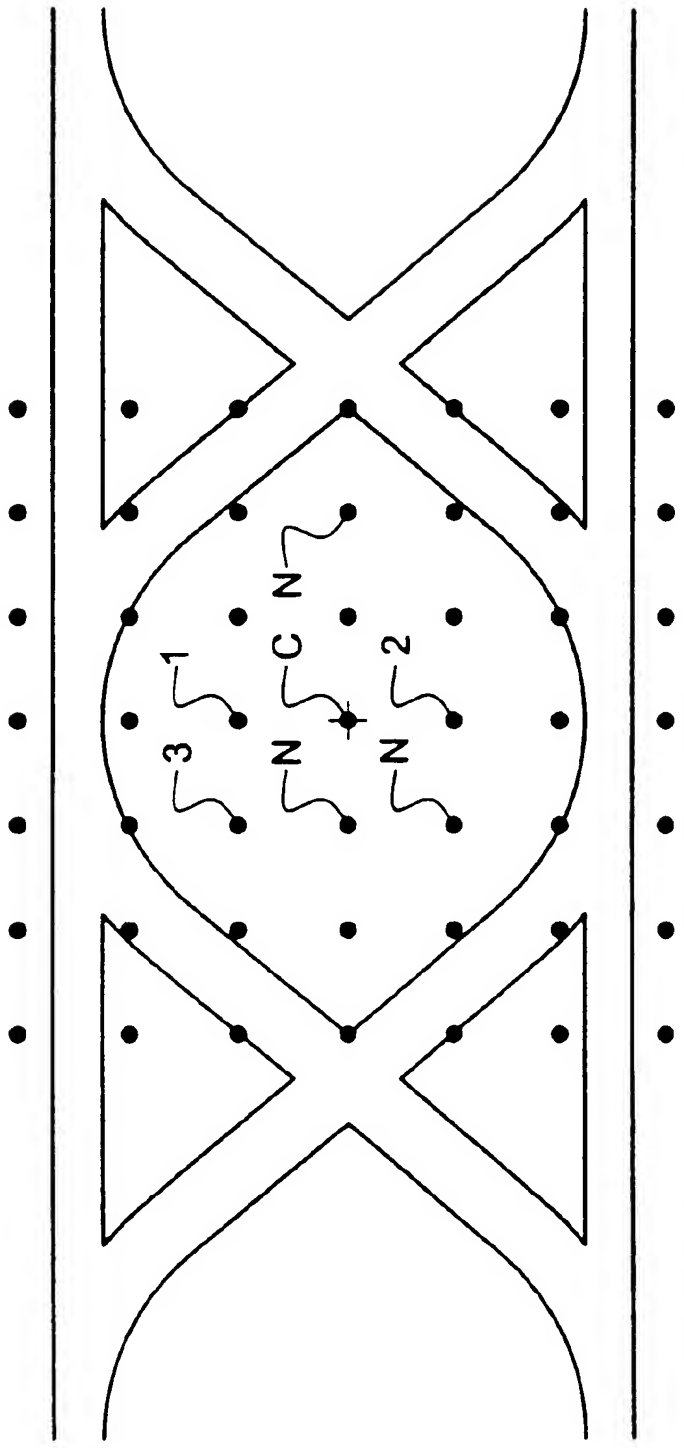


FIG. 4

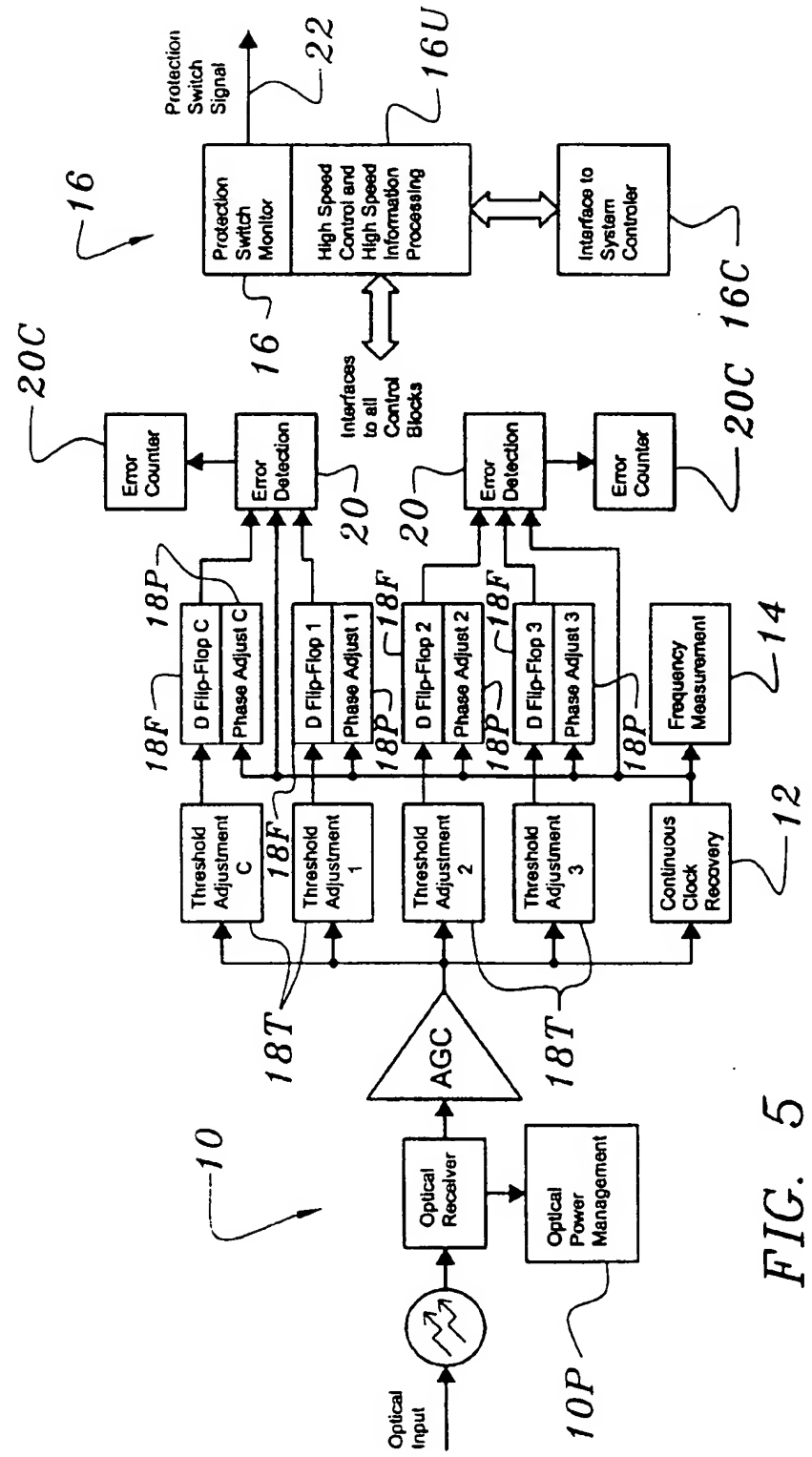

Protection Switch Signal
22
16U
16
Protection Switch Monitor
High Speed Control and High Speed Information Processing
Interface to System Controler
16C
16
Interfaces to all Control Blocks
20C
Error Counter
Error Detection
20
Error Detection
Error Counter
20C
18P
18F
D Flip-Flop C
Phase Adjust C
D Flip-Flop 1
Phase Adjust 1
D Flip-Flop 2
Phase Adjust 2
D Flip-Flop 3
Phase Adjust 3
Frequency Measurement
14
Threshold Adjustment C
Threshold Adjustment 1
Threshold Adjustment 2
Threshold Adjustment 3
Continuous Clock Recovery
12
18T
AGC
10
Optical Receiver
Optical Power Management
Optical Input
10P

FIG. 5

PROTOCOL AND BIT RATE INDEPENDENT TEST SYSTEM

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a utility application based upon and claiming priority of provisional application No. 60/154,686, filed Sep. 17, 1999. The disclosure of the provisional application is incorporated herein in its entirety by reference.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to a protocol and bit rate independent test system for digital communication systems. More particularly, this invention relates to systems that are able to detect bit errors on a digital communications channel regardless of format or rate.

2. Description of the Background Art

In digital communication systems, particularly dense wavelength division multiplexed (DWDM) optical systems, multiple signal formats may exist on the same communications link at different wavelengths. It is useful to be able to extract a signal and determine its health. Hence, there is a need to have a protocol independent and bit rate independent test capability that can (1) detect a single defective bit, (2) monitor the traffic error rate and (3) provide a protection switch signal within milliseconds of exceeding the error threshold condition, and to embed such a test head on every wavelength of the communications system, such as a DWDM system, so as to support such systems where the traffic on different wavelength channels are different protocols and different bit rates. The channels will contain unknown protocols as purchased by the customers. In such a scenario, the customer can buy a wavelength of light and the service carrier does not control the rate or protocol of the traffic. This creates a difficult testing condition since the service provider needs a way to verify error free transmission, provide protection switching and location of the fault condition. The service provider therefore needs a test capability that is bit rate and protocol independent.

Heretofore it has been known that the performance of a communications link, such as a fiber optic link, known as Q factor measurement, is reflected by interpreting the eye pattern of the waveforms of a series of pulses. A typical eye pattern is depicted in FIG. 1. The optimal time for sampling the data signals and the optimal level (the threshold level) at which to distinguish between zeros and ones is the center of the eye. Further, it is known that the height of the central eye opening determines noise margin in receiver output, the width of the signal band at the corner of the eye depicts the jitter or variation in pulse timing in the system, the thickness of the signal line at top and bottom of the eye is proportional to noise and distortion in the receiver output, and transitions between top and bottom of the eye pattern show the rise and fall times of the signal that can be measured on the eye pattern. More complete descriptions of eye measurements (and of receivers and other components) can be found in the following references, the disclosures of each of which are incorporated by reference herein: Joseph C. Palais, *Third Edition Fiber Optic Communications*, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1992; John B. Anderson, *Digital Transmission Engineering*, IEEE Press, Piscataway, N.J., 1999; Stephen B. Alexander *Optical Communication Receiver Design*, SPIE Optical Engineering Press, Bellingham, Wash., 1997; Govind P. Agrawal *Fiber-Optic Communication Systems*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York N.Y., 1997;

Kaminow and Koch, *Optical Fiber Telecommunication IIIA*, Academic Press Limited, 1997; and Anderson and Lyle, *Technique for Evaluating System Performance Using Q in Numerical Simulations Exhibiting Intersymbol Interference, Electronics Letters*, Vol. 30, No. 1, Jan. 6, 1994. Unfortunately, Q measurements does not provide a real-time measurement or a single-bit error detection capability.

An object of this invention is to provide a bit rate and protocol independent test apparatus and method that can be embedded on every wavelength of a communications system such as a DWDM system.

Another object of this invention is to provide a bit rate and protocol independent capability that can (1) detect a single defective bit, (2) monitor the traffic error rate and (3) provide a protection switch signal within milliseconds of exceeding the error threshold condition of the communications system.

Another object of this invention is to provide an apparatus and method for conducting eye measurements to determine the Q factor.

The foregoing has outlined some of the pertinent objects of the invention. These objects should be construed to be merely illustrative of some of the more prominent features and applications of the intended invention. Many other beneficial results can be attained by applying the disclosed invention in a different manner or modifying the invention within the scope of the disclosure. Accordingly, other objects and a fuller understanding of the invention may be had by referring to the summary of the invention and the detailed description of the preferred embodiment in addition to the scope of the invention defined by the claims taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

For the purpose of summarizing this invention, this invention preferably comprises a discrete implementation or custom Application Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) including the major components of a receiver, variable rate CRU (Clock Recovery Unit), and a very high speed threshold sampling module for various static or dynamic sampling points positioned in an array (two-dimensional or linear) that is able to instantaneously determine the shape of the eye of a digital communication system, and very high speed logic to process the data. This basic system meets the requirement and is the basis for a universal test set. In addition to bit error detection, it measures the frequency of the signal. Further enhancements includes creating oscilloscope eye diagrams and bit capture and post processing to identify the signal protocol by post processing. The preferred embodiment of the invention has particular application in optical communications systems, such as DWDM optical systems, employing an optical receiver; however, the invention may be incorporated into various other types of digital communication systems employing various other types of receivers without departing from the spirit and scope of this invention.

The foregoing has outlined rather broadly the more pertinent and important features of the present invention in order that the detailed description of the invention that follows may be better understood so that the present contribution to the art can be more fully appreciated. Additional features of the invention will be described hereinafter which form the subject of the claims of the invention. It should be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the conception and the specific embodiment disclosed may be readily utilized as a basis for modifing or designing other structures for carrying out the same purposes of the present invention. It should also be realized by those skilled in the art that such

equivalent constructions do not depart from the spirit and scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

For a fuller understanding of the nature and objects of the invention, reference should be had to the following detailed description taken in connection with the accompanying drawing in which:

FIG. **1** is a exemplary eye diagram illustrating the various parameters thereof;

FIG. **2** is an overview block diagram of the bit rate and protocol independent test system invention;

FIG. **3** is a high-block diagram of FIG. **2**,

FIG. **4** is an exemplary eye diagram incorporating the invention; and

FIG. **5** is the anticipated initial implementation of FIG. **3**.

Similar reference characters refer to similar parts throughout the several views of the drawings.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENT

Referring to FIG. **2**, the preferred apparatus of the invention comprises an optical receiver **10** that is preferably either PIN photodiode or avalanche photodiode (APD) based, with the former providing the lower cost. The invention also comprises a variable rate Clock Recovery Unit (CRU) **12** that is preferably phase locked loop (PLL) based to provide the desired flexibility. Frequency measurement **14** of the invention preferably comprises a high speed prescaler which drives a counter and provides a timebase to a protection switch detection circuit **16**. A processor (not shown) is provided to measure the length of the divided down frequency to determine the line rate.

As described below in greater detail, the variable threshold sampling circuit **18** provides a plurality of threshold detectors. The output of these threshold detectors is sampled by the recovered clock. The thresholds are set as a percentage of peak eye amplitude and may be programmable. A minimum of two threshold detectors would be required to examine every bit. One threshold would be set in the upper area of the eye (i.e., 80% of peak) and the other set in the lower area of the eye (i.e., 20%). If the signal passes between the thresholds, it is considered an error. These are counted and may be read by a processor from the Error Detect and Q Measurement Processing Logic **20**. Additional threshold sampling circuits with spread thresholds may be employed to provide further resolution and grading of each bit.

The protection switch detection circuit **16** compares the counted errors in a given timebase period with a programmable threshold. If exceeded, the protection switch output **22** goes active. This allows fast response to protection switch events with minimal software delays.

Referring now to FIG. **3**, a more detailed description of the invention is presented as follows. The invention has an optical fiber input in which the incoming optical signal is fed to the optical receiver **10**. The incoming optical power is measured by the power measurement block **10**P. The receiver's output feeds the AGC input. The output of the AGC feeds multiple threshold adjustment blocks **18**T (C and **1** through N) and the clock recovery unit **12**. The clock recovery unit's clock is fed to multiple phase adjustment units **18**P (C and **1** through N) that respectively control the clock feeding of multiple D Flip-Flops **18**F (C and **1** through N) corresponding to the center data point C of the eye (see FIG. **4**) and a plurality of arrayed data points (**1** through N) positioned in an array about the other areas of the eye. The clock recovery unit also feeds the frequency measurement unit **14**. The D Flip-Flops **18**F are fed into an error detection circuit **20**. The error detection circuit **20** feeds the error counter **20**C. A high-speed control unit **16** controls all the threshold and phase adjustments. A high-speed information processing unit **16**U processes all the incoming data. The protection switch unit **16**S processes all the needed information and provides the protection switch signal **22**. The interface unit provides an interface to the system controller **16**C.

The anticipated first implementation of the invention is disclosed in FIG. **5** that employs the CRU produced by Vitesse Semiconductor Corp. as disclosed in the article McCormack, *Intelligent Data Recovery, Communication Systems Design*, December, 1999, the disclosure of which is incorporated by reference herein, wherein the D Flip-Flops **18**F and phase adjustment units **18**P are "paired" and in which a error detection **20** and counter **20**C is provided for each pair.

The theory of operation for each of the components is described as follows. The input channel is the analog path that converts the optical signal into a gain adjusted analog electrical signal. This channel includes the Clock Recovery Unit (CRU) which will extract the clock from the incoming data. The optical receiver preferably comprises a PIN receiver followed by an AGC into a variable rate Clock Recovery Unit (CRU). A PIN receiver and AGC is selected to provide a more linear analog channel. The CRU is flexible and provides continuous coverage from approximately 45 Mbit/sec to 2.7 Gbit/sec. Frequency measurement consists of a high speed pre-scaler that drives a counter. The frequency will be measured against a high quality clock source to derive the incoming frequency and also provide a timebase to the protection switch circuit.

The sampling block consists of a multiplicity of D Flip-Flops, such as in the anticipated first implementation, paired D Flip-Flops. There are separate controls of decision threshold and phase of the sampling clock. With control of the threshold and phase, the entire eye can be sampled or scanned across an array as shown in FIG. **4** (the number and positioning of the data points to be optimally determined). The following algorithm is provided as an example. The 1st step is to find the optimum sampling position of the eye, typically the center C. After finding the optimum sampling position, one of the D Flip-Flops can be positioned at this location, hence the labeling "C". The other D Flip-Flop can now be used to scan around the eye to determine the margins, shape, and quality of the eye. The outputs of this sampling pair are fed to an error detection circuit that can determine bit value decision differences (decision errors) on a bit by bit real time basis.

Refer now to FIG. **4** for the example eye diagram used for the following description. Sampling point C indicates the center of the eye and point **1** indicates the point of one of the D Flip-Flop pairs. The sample point of this pair C and **1** (as well as the other individual points) can be moved around the eye independently. For example, in FIG. **5**, with point C being the center of the eye, point **1** can be moved around to obtain information from the eye or left static to provide real time error information. As point **1** moves into this boundary of the eye, decision errors will start to occur. Combined with other points that may be dynamically moved around or made to remain static, many other decision errors will start to occur. By statistically processing the decision errors, eye profiling and Q measurements can be made. By fixing the relative position of the points, algorithms can be developed

that will allow for accurate monitoring of the traffic BER. Importantly, the flexibility of the apparatus and method of the invention allows adaptation to the particular implementation with its inherent characteristics (i.e., satellite or microwave).

The control and processing block controls all the system adjustments and access to all the data. This block provides all real time control and data processing. Processing of the controls and error detect circuitry allows for Q measurements and BER analysis. Processing of the errors and clock rate provides a protection switch signal. The programmable nature of the invention allows the service provider to set the parameters to achieve the confidence level required by the customer before generating a protection switch signal. The bit rate affects the time and confidence level obtainable in a given time period. This trade-off is to be optimized with respect to the protection switch time.

Optical Receiver Block should support 1310 nm band and 1550 nm band input optical range and a pin receiver. It is noted that an APD receiver may be required to provide input sensitivity or a PIN receiver may be calibrated to mimic the APD's performance, thus saving the cost of an APD.

Optical Receiver Power Measurement measures the receiver optical power and the optical power from approximately 0 dBm to −35 dBm.

Automatic Gain Control (AGC) Block provides approximately 40 dB of gain range and approximately 20 mV of input sensitivity.

Threshold Adjustment Block provides approximately 64 adjustable threshold steps.

Continuous Clock Recovery Block supports input data rates from approximately 45 Mbit/sec to 2.7 Gbit/sec.

Frequency Measurement Block provides bit rate measurement, a high speed pre-scaler which drives a counter and a high quality clock reference to measure the incoming frequency against.

Phase Adjust Block provides approximately 64 adjustable phase steps.

D Flip-Flip Block provides data sampling and supports threshold adjustments and clock phase adjustments.

Error Detection Block supports error detection by comparing the D Flip-Flops outputs.

Error Counter Block supports error counting of the error detection block.

High Speed Control Block provides control of the threshold adjustment block, the phase adjustment block, the clock recovery block and the AGC block.

High Speed Information Processing Block retrieves data from the AGC block, from the threshold adjustment block, from the phase adjustment block and from the error counter block.

The present disclosure includes that contained in the appended claims, as well as that of the foregoing description. Although this invention has been described in its preferred form with a certain degree of particularity, it is understood that the present disclosure of the preferred form has been made only by way of example and that numerous changes in the details of construction and the combination and arrangement of parts may be resorted to without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention. Now that the invention has been described,

What is claimed is:

1. A protocol and bit rate independent test system including means for detecting bit errors on a digital communications channel regardless of format or rate, comprising in combination:

a receiver for receiving an input;

a clock recovery unit;

a threshold sampling circuit for providing at least two threshold detectors for respective two sampling points including at least one static sampling point positioned proximate to the center of an eye pattern and at least one dynamic sampling point, the output of which are sampled by the recovered clock and if the signal passes between the thresholds, an error signal is generated and counted.

2. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, comprising a plurality of the dynamic sampling points and wherein the dynamic sampling points are movable in an array about an eye measurement.

3. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 2, wherein the array comprises a linear array.

4. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 2, wherein the array comprises a two-dimensional array.

5. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, wherein said clock recovery unit comprises a variable rate clock recovery unit.

6. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, wherein said receiver comprises an optical receiver and wherein said input comprises an optical input.

7. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 6, wherein the optical receiver is PIN photodiode based.

8. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 6, wherein the optical receiver is avalanche photodiode based.

9. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, further including frequency measurement including a high speed prescaler which drives a counter and provides a timebase to a protection switch detection circuit.

10. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 9, further including a protection switch detection circuit for comparing the counted errors in a given timebase period with a programmable threshold and upon exceeding the threshold, for producing an active protection switch output.

11. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, wherein said threshold sampling circuit comprises a variable threshold sampling circuit.

12. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, further including an error detect and Q measurement processing logic for reading the error signals.

13. The protocol and bit rate independent test system as set forth in claim 1, further including a jitter measurement processing logic.

14. A protocol and bit rate independent test system method for detecting bit errors on a digital communications channel regardless of format or rate, comprising in combination:

receiving an input signal;

recovering the clock from the input signal;

sampling at least two sampling thresholds from the input signal for respective two sampling points including at least one static sampling point positioned proximate to the center of an eye pattern and at least one dynamic sampling point; and

producing an error signal if the input signal passes between the thresholds.

15. The method as set forth in claim 14, comprising a plurality of the dynamic sampling points and wherein the dynamic sampling points are movable in an array about an eye measurement.

16. The method as set forth in claim 15, wherein the array comprises a linear array.

17. The method as set forth in claim 15, wherein the array comprises a two-dimensional array.

18. The method as set forth in claim 14, wherein the step of recovering the clock from the input signal comprises the step of recovering the clock from the input signal at a variable rate.

19. The method as set forth in claim 14, wherein the step of receiving a signal input comprises the step of receiving an optical signal input.

20. The method as set forth in claim 19, wherein the step of receiving the optical signal input employs an optical receiver.

21. The method as set forth in claim 20, wherein the optical receiver is PIN photodiode based.

22. The method as set forth in claim 21, wherein the optical receiver is avalanche photodiode based.

23. The method as set forth in claim 14, further including the step of measuring the bit rate to provide a timebase to a protection switch detection circuit.

24. The method as set forth in claim 14, wherein the step of sampling at least two sampling thresholds from the input signal comprises the step of sampling at least two variable sampling thresholds.

25. The method as set forth in claim 14, further including the step of reading the error signals.

26. The method as set forth in claim 25, wherein the step of reading the error signals employs an error detect and Q measurement processing logic.

27. The method as set forth in claim 14, further including the step of comparing the counted errors in a given timebase period with a programmable threshold and upon exceeding the threshold, producing an active protection switch output.

28. The method as set forth in claim 14, further including the step of measuring jitter.

* * * * *

US005748672A

United States Patent [19]

Smith et al.

[11] Patent Number: 5,748,672

[45] Date of Patent: May 5, 1998

[54] **SYSTEM FOR MEASURING JITTER IN A NON-BINARY DIGITAL SIGNAL**

[75] Inventors: **Marc L. Smith**, Sterling; **Fadi H. Daou**, Milton, both of Mass.

[73] Assignee: **CenRad, Inc.**, Concord, Mass.

[21] Appl. No.: **514,011**

[22] Filed: **Aug. 11, 1995**

[51] **Int. Cl.**[6] **H04B 3/46**

[52] **U.S. Cl.** **375/226**; 371/1; 364/715.06; 364/732

[58] **Field of Search** 375/226, 244, 375/371, 376; 371/1; 364/715.06, 732

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

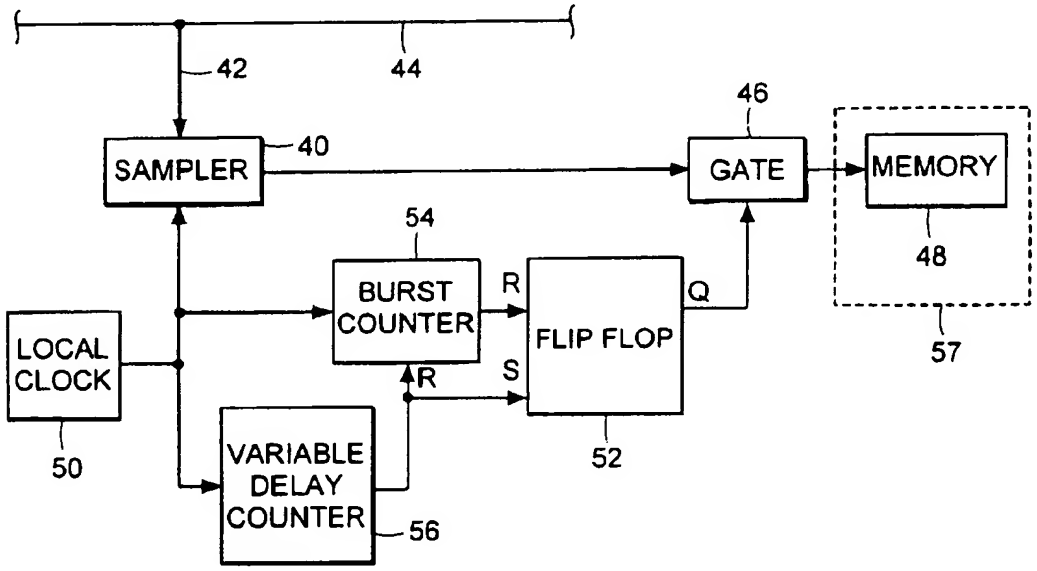
4,320,516	3/1982	Kammerlander	375/226
4,603,300	7/1986	Well, II et al.	375/328
4,819,197	4/1989	Blais	364/715.6
5,528,636	6/1996	Sevenhans et al.	375/371

Primary Examiner—Wellington Chin
Assistant Examiner—Congvan Tran
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Cesari and McKenna, LLP

[57] **ABSTRACT**

To measure various frequency components of the jitter of the deviation of the transition times in a signal on a signal line (**44**) from nominal bit times, a sampler (**40**) samples the signal at a rate high enough to determine the transition time with the required resolution. By employing a differentiator (**60**), test circuitry (FIG. 3B) can detect not only zero crossings but all digital-level transitions. The timings of the maxima of the differentiator output are applied to a Fourier-transform unit (**76**) that computes jitter-frequency components from a resultant sequence of deviations of the maxima from nominal transition times. Although computation of the lowest jitter-frequency components is necessarily based on a sequence that extends over a correspondingly long signal record, the input of a memory (**48**) that receives the raw samples from which those transition-time deviations are computed is so gated that the memory (**48**) receives only infrequently occurring bursts of the sampler's high-sample-rate output when the lower jitter frequencies are to be measured. A memory (**48**) of only moderate size can therefore be employed despite the necessarily high sample rate and necessarily long record duration.

15 Claims, 4 Drawing Sheets



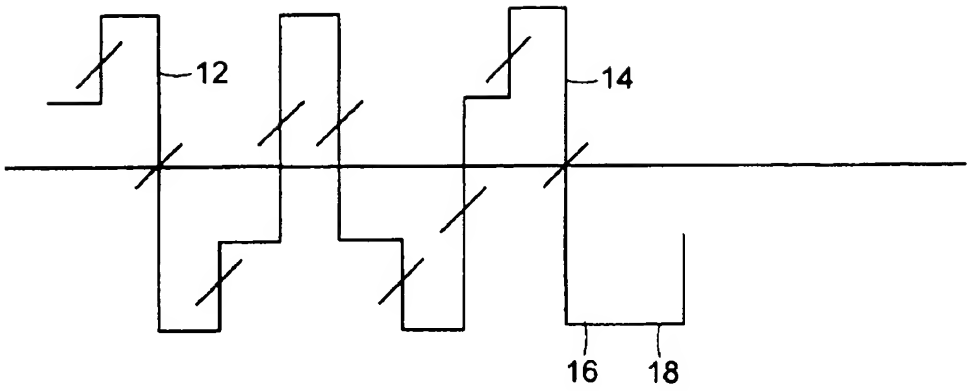


FIG. 1

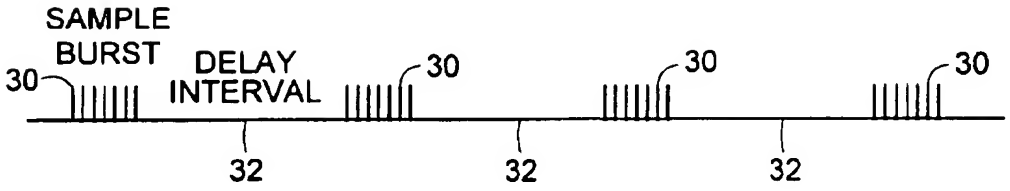


FIG. 2

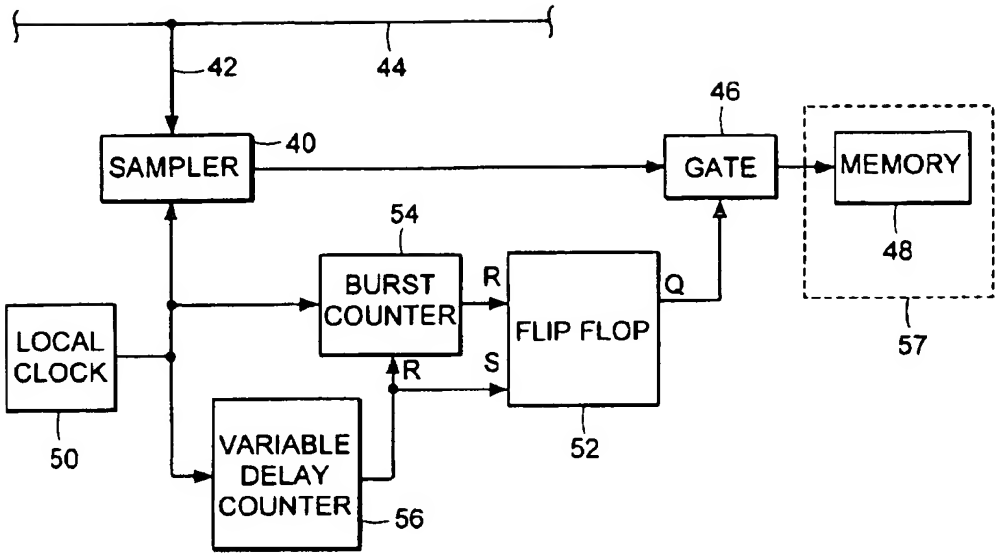

42
44
46
SAMPLER
40
GATE
MEMORY
48
57
54
BURST COUNTER
R
Q
FLIP FLOP
S
R
LOCAL CLOCK
50
VARIABLE DELAY COUNTER
56
52

FIG. 3A

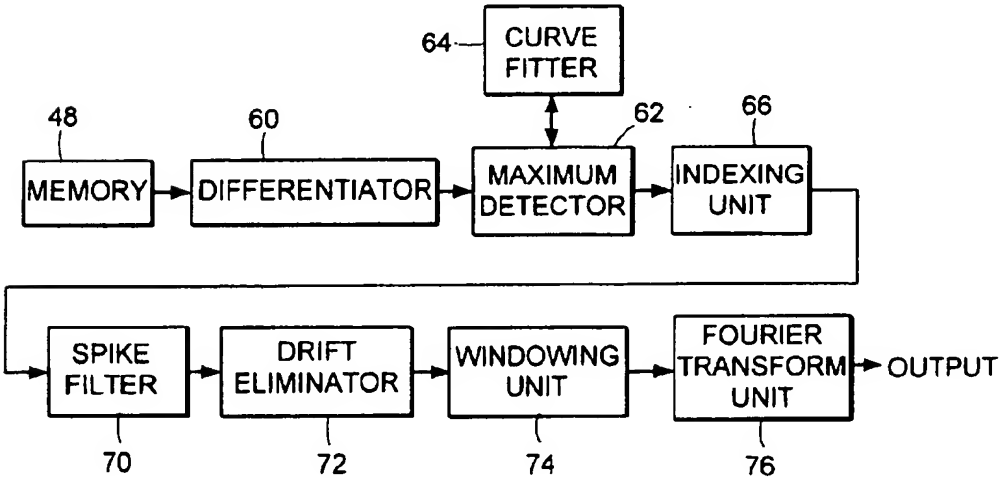

64
CURVE FITTER
48
60
62
66
MEMORY
DIFFERENTIATOR
MAXIMUM DETECTOR
INDEXING UNIT
SPIKE FILTER
DRIFT ELIMINATOR
WINDOWING UNIT
FOURIER TRANSFORM UNIT
OUTPUT
70
72
74
76

FIG. 3B

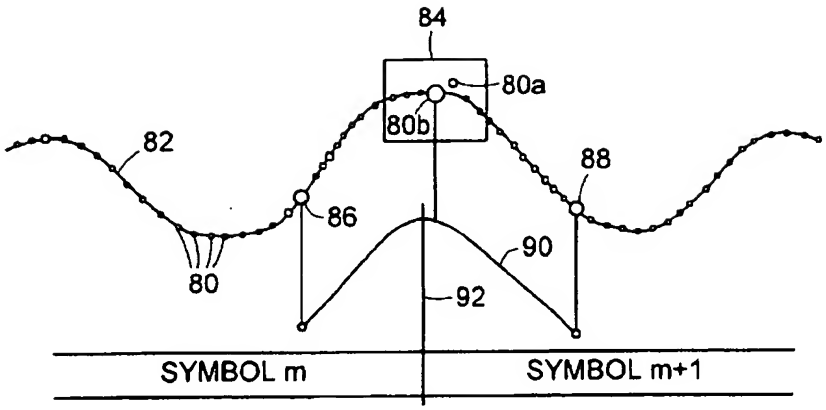


FIG. 4

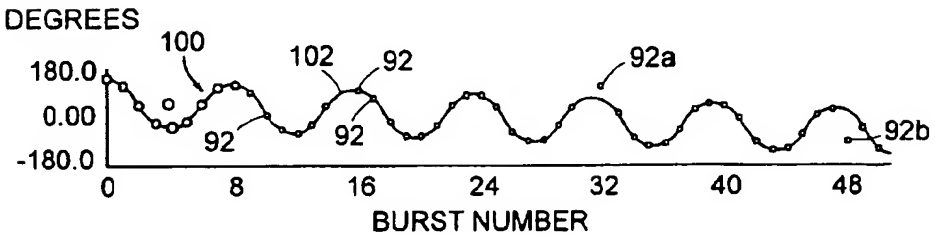


FIG. 5

	SIGNAL SAMPLES/ BURST	SYMBOLS/ BURST	SKIP-INTERVAL (SYMBOLS)	JITTER SAMPLE RATE (Hz)	NUMBER OF BURSTS PER MEASUREMENT
0.15 - 39 Hz	128	2	1022	78.125 Hz	512
0.5 - 62 Hz	255	4	636	125 kHz	256
62 Hz - 8 kHz	255	4	1	16 kHz	256
78 Hz - 20 kHz	128	2	0	40 kHz	512

FIG. 6

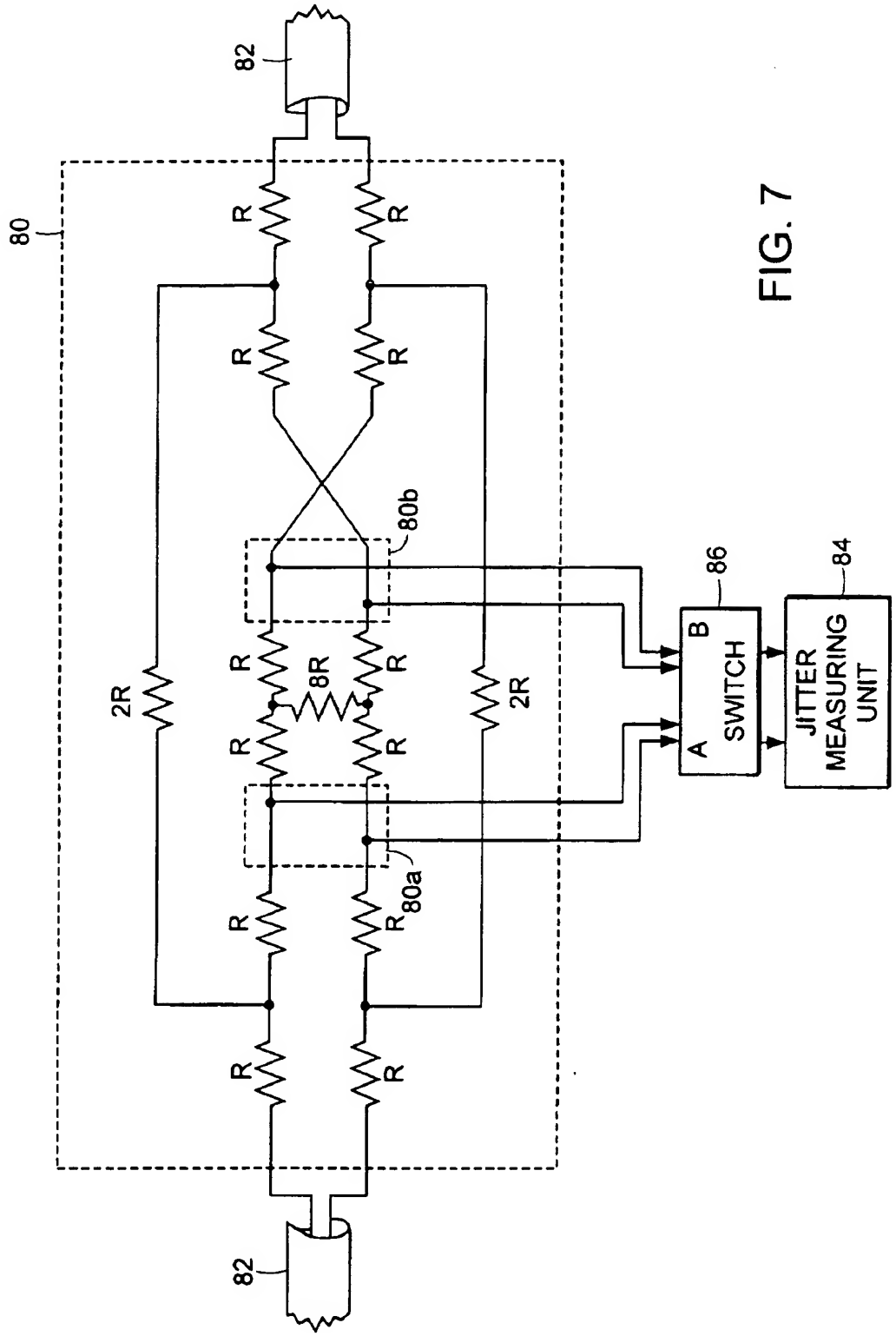

82
80
R
R
R
R
80b
86
84
B
A
SWITCH
JITTER
MEASURING
UNIT
2R
8R
R
R
R
R
2R
R
R
80a
R
R
82

FIG. 7

SYSTEM FOR MEASURING JITTER IN A NON-BINARY DIGITAL SIGNAL

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

A. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to the measurement of clock jitter in self-clocking digital data signals. More specifically, it relates to the sampling of the data signals to recover phase variations of the clock signals embedded therein.

The reception of digital data transmissions requires that the incoming signals be sampled or "strobed" at periodic, precise intervals to sense the values of the signals at those times. For example, a simple binary data signal should be sampled in the middle of each bit cell to determine whether the bit is a 1 or a 0. Obviously the sampling, which is timed by a clock signal, must be synchronized with the data signal if errors are to be minimized.

Usually self-clocking schemes are used in the transmission of data. The clock signal is, in essence, embedded in the data signal. It is recovered at the receiver to control a local clock whose output is used to strobe the incoming data signal and thereby detect the data. Thus the timing of the clock signal relative to the data signal is fixed at the transmitter and is not affected by the characteristics of the path from the transmitter to the receiver. Accordingly, if the characteristics of the transmitter or the path change, the relative clock-data timing will not change. The phase-lock-loop that controls the local clock will adjust the phase of the clock so as to preserve the proper clock timing relative to the data.

However, if the phase of the received data signal varies too rapidly, the phase-lock loop will be unable to adjust the local clock fast enough, to follow the corresponding changes in the phase of the embedded clock signal and errors in data detection will result. For this reason standards have been promulgated, governing the amount and rate of phase change ("phase jitter") that are allowed in the transmission paths. The present invention is directed to an improved system for ascertaining the phase jitter to determine compliance with the applicable standard.

B. Description of Related Art

Prior systems sense the zero crossings of the data signals to determine the phases of the embedded clock signals. However, this requires that the transitions involve zero crossings and, furthermore, that they be symmetrical with respect to the crossings. For example, with the 2B1Q format used in ISDN communications, most of the signal transitions will not meet this criterion. Systems using this ISDN format may transmit at a rate of 80,000 symbols/second, while a jitter standard for the 2B1Q format may cover jitter frequency components from 0.15 Hz to 20k Hz. Accordingly the use of zero-crossing detection to ascertain jitter magnitude will usually not provide a high enough sampling rate to measure jitter components in the mid to upper portions of this frequency range unless normal transmissions are interrupted and a predetermined pattern of symbols is transmitted.

Accordingly it is an object of the invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for measuring phase jitter in digital data signals. A more specific object of the invention is to provide accurate measurements of phase jitter in signals transmitted during normal operation of a monitored system. A further object is to provide accurate measurements of phase jitter over a wide range of jitter frequencies. Yet another object of the invention is to provide accurate measurement of phase jitter in signals propagating in either direction over a transmission line.

DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

A. BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with the invention we sense transitions in a data signal by differentiating the signal and using the maximum absolute value of the derivative as the timing mark for each transition. Thus, each transition is eligible for use in measuring phase jitter and the high-frequency components of the jitter are easily within the range of the measuring system.

The system operates digitally, by sampling the data signal at a relatively high rate, e.g. 64 samples/symbol and using these samples in computing the derivative. Together with a curve-fitting procedure, described below, this provides sufficient resolution in locating the derivative maxima.

The invention can also be used to measure phase jitter in signals propagating in both directions over a transmission line. For this purpose we insert a directional coupler into the transmission line. The coupler has two output ports, one for signals travelling in one direction and the other for signals travelling in the opposite direction. The jitter-measuring unit described herein can be switched between the two ports to measure the jitter for signals travelling in the respective directions.

FIG. 1 illustrates a fragment of a signal representing a sequence of symbols transmitted with the 2B1Q format. The depicted waveform is idealized in that the various transitions in voltage level are indicated as occurring instantaneously. In fact, however, because of bandwidth limitations in the circuitry that generates the waveforms and in the transmission lines over which they are propagated, each transition occurs over a finite time interval.

In order to provide uniformity in sensing the timing of each transition, the occurrence of the transition is usually defined as the midpoint between the starting and ending points of the transition. The midpoint, in turn, can be sensed by means of a zero-crossing detector, but only for those transitions for which the zero axis is the midpoint. In FIG. 1 only the transitions indicated at 12 and 14 have this characteristic. The remaining transitions either do not cross the zero axis or cross it but are asymmetrical with respect to the axis. Indeed, the consecutive symbols indicated at 16 and 18 have the same voltage level and thus have no intervening voltage transition.

Thus prior systems which are based on the sensing of zero axis crossings may, because of the intervals often encountered between usable crossings, miss high-frequency phase jitter components which are covered by the applicable standards. It will be apparent that with the signal sequence depicted in FIG. 1, and given a data rate of 80,000 symbols/second, high-frequency phase jitter components will not be detected if only symmetrical zero axis crossings are used for measurement of the timing of signal transitions.

On the other hand, with our invention, which uses the occurrence of the maximum absolute value of the slope, i.e. rate of change of signal voltage, as the indication of the midpoint of each transition, every transition can be used for the measurement of transition timing. The resulting determination of the timing of a transition provides a single sample of the phase jitter. For any frequency component in the phase jitter, the system must obtain enough jitter samples to ascertain the magnitude of that component with a reasonable degree of accuracy. In the high frequency portion of

the measurement range, e.g. from 2,000 Hz to 20 kHz, 500 samples of the phase jitter will provide an accurate characterization of the magnitude of the jitter components at the frequencies involved. At the low frequency end of the spectrum, i.e. 0.15 Hz, jitter samples taken over approximately a single cycle of that component will accurately characterize the magnitude of the jitter. However, with the sampling rate provided for the high-frequency components, there will be an inordinately large number of samples, with corresponding demands on memory capacity and computation time.

We therefore sample the data signal in accordance with a burst arrangement. As shown in FIG. 2, sampling of the data signal is performed in bursts 30 separated by skip intervals indicated at 32. The bursts and skip intervals are synchronized to a local clock and the total length of a sample burst, plus a delay period is an integral number of symbols. The number of samples in each burst is sufficient to encompass multiple symbols increases the likelihood that at least one signal transition will occur during each burst. In each burst, the timing of the transition having the greatest absolute slope is selected as a jitter sample.

The burst length and the length of the skip interval depend on the range of jitter frequencies involved in the measurement. For measurement of the higher frequency components of the phase jitter a relatively short or even zero-length skip interval is required in order to provide a sufficiently high sampling rate for the phase jitter. On the other hand, at low frequencies, where the sampling rate is not an imposing limitation, we use a relatively long skip interval to conserve system resources as noted above. Specifically we have found that the jitter-frequency spectrum of 0.15 Hz to 20 KHz can be divided into four ranges, each having a different skip interval. These burst and the sampling sequences relating thereto are set forth in FIG. 6, assuming a symbol rate of 80.000/sec in the monitored signal and a sampling rate of 64 samples/symbol. For example, over the jitter frequency range 0.5–39 Hz we use a burst length of 128 samples, or two symbols, and a skip interval of 1022 symbols. This provides a jitter sample rate of 78.125, slightly in excess of the minimum sampling rate for the upper level of the frequency range. A total of 512 sampling bursts, i.e. jitter samples, are used for this measurement.

Similar measurement parameters are provided in FIG. 6 for three further jitter frequency ranges extending to 20 kHz. In the uppermost range, 78 Hz to 20 kHz, the skip intervals is zero and each sampling burst thus immediately succeeds the preceding burst.

B. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

For a fuller understanding of the nature of the invention, reference should be had to the following detailed description taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 depicts an idealized signal waveform in the 2B1Q format;

FIG. 2 depicts a succession of sampling bursts used in sampling signals in accordance with the invention;

FIG. 3A is a block diagram of a signal sampling unit incorporated in a jitter-measuring system embodying the invention;

FIG. 3B is a block diagram of a signal analysis unit incorporated in the jitter-measuring system;

FIG. 4 illustrates a waveform of the time derivative of a monitored signal and the application of the invention to the waveform by the signal analysis unit to ascertain the timing of transition in the monitored signal;

FIG. 5 is a waveform of the phase of the monitored signal as measured by the signal analysis unit;

FIG. 6 is a chart of the signal-sampling sampling sequences for the various frequency ranges in the jitter spectrum; and

FIG. 7 is a diagram of a system for measuring phase jitter in signals passing in either direction over a transmission line.

C. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

With reference to FIG. 3A, a sampler 40 which is connected to a tap 42 on a transmission line 44 provides a sequence of digital representations of the instantaneous signal voltage levels on the line. These digital signals are passed by a gate 46 to a random access memory 48 where they are accumulated for subsequent processing as described below. Operation of the sampler 40 is timed by the output of a local clock 50. The clock 50 is highly stable and has an output frequency as close as is practicable to an integral multiple of the symbol rate f_0 of the signals transmitted over the line 44. We have found that a multiple of 64 provides the desired resolution in sampling of the monitored signals when the interpolation arrangement described herein is used. The gate 46 is controlled by the output of a flip-flop 52 whose state is controlled by the outputs of a burst counter 54 and a skip counter 56, both of which count the output pulses of the clock 50.

The burst counter 54 has a capacity corresponding to a time length corresponding to multiple symbols in the monitored signal. It is adjustable to provide for different burst lengths according to the jitter frequency range involved in the measurement, as described above. The adjustments of the skip counter 56 are limited to counter capacities corresponding to integral numbers of symbols, i.e. integral multiples of 64 samples. Overflow of the counter 56 sets the flip-flop 52 so that its output enables the gate 46 and at the same time resets the counter 54. The gate 46 thereupon passes samples from the sampler 40 to the memory 48 until the counter 54 reaches its maximum count, at which point the counter 54 output resets the flip-flop 52, thereby disabling the gate 46.

As pointed out above, the burst of samples passed by the gate 46 during each of these cycles of the counters 54 and 56 ultimately provides one sample of the timing of the monitored signal. A sufficient number of bursts are passed to provide the requisite number of samples for a selected frequency range of the phase jitter in the monitored signal.

The capacities of the burst counter 54 and the skip counter 56 are thus changed to provide different burst lengths and timings between the bursts (i.e. skip intervals) and thereby provide for measurement of the phase jitter components in the respective frequency ranges. At the highest frequency range the capacity of the counter 56 is equal to that of the counter 54 so that continuous bursts of samples are fed to the memory 48.

It will be apparent that the gate 46, counters 54 and 56 and flip-flop 52 can be implemented in hardware or their functions can be provided by a digital computer 57 of which the memory 48 is a component.

After the samples for a measurement have been accumulated in the memory 48, the computer 57 executes a series of software routines to process the samples and thereby provide the desired phase jitter measurements. FIG. 3B

illustrates these routines as blocks of a corresponding hardware diagram. Specifically the samples from each burst are applied to a differentiator **60** whose output is a series of samples of the time derivative of the monitored signal. The output of the differentiator **60** is applied to a maximum detector **62** which calculates the position of the absolute maximum slope of the signal during the burst.

More specifically, the differentiator **60** simply calculates the differences between the values of successive signal samples to provide the derivative samples, indicated at **80** (FIG. **4**), that define a derivative curve **82**. The maximum detector **62** then selects a primary reference point which is, in essence, a rough determination of an absolute maximum of the derivative curve **82**.

To determine the position of each primary reference point, we prefer to use a moving "window", as indicated at **84** in FIG. **4**, encompassing a number of samples, e.g. 7. The window **84** is moved through the sample set in each burst and the sample values in the window are summed. The primary reference point is the central sample in the window when the sum has a maximum (or minimum) value. This arrangement diminishes the effects of noise in selecting the primary reference point. For example, if the values of individual samples were to be used in selecting the primary reference point, the sample **80***a* would be selected, whereas the sample **80***b*, which is at the center of the window **84** at the depicted position of the window, is clearly closer to a maximum of the curve **82**.

In general the primary reference point will not be the true position of a maximum of a derivative curve **82**. For example, errors are caused by noise and by the spacing between adjacent signal samples. We therefore prefer to use a curve-fitter **64**, which reduces this error. A quadratic curve is fitted to the primary reference point and to samples preceding and following that sample. The latter two samples may, for example, be spaced from the primary reference point by twelve sample intervals, as indicated at **86** and **88** in FIG. **4**. These three samples **80***b*, **86** and **88**, fix the coefficients of the quadratic expression.

The system derives the first two coefficients and uses them in differentiating the expression to find the position of the maximum. Thus, with the illustrated curve **82** and the maximum encompassed by the window **84**, a quadratic curve **90** fits the samples **80***b*, **86** and **88**. This curve has a maximum at **92**, which is taken as a maximum of the derivative and thus the location, i.e. timing, of the signal transition involved in the calculation.

As an example of the advantages to be gained from the foregoing procedure, measurements were taken which provided the illustrated derivative curve **82**. If the maximum sample value is taken as the point of the derivative maximum, i.e. the position of the sample **80***a*, there was an error of 32.6 degrees. The selection of the primary reference point **80***b* as the maximum reduced the error to 17.6 degrees. On the other hand, selection of the maximum point of the quadratic approximation, i.e. the position indicated at **92**, reduced the error to 0.3 degrees.

As noted above, each burst of signal samples is of sufficient duration to encompass multiple transitions in the monitored signal. In an illustrative system the burst durations are as set forth in FIG. **6**. Thus, when making a measurement in the jitter-frequency range 62 Hz to 8 kHz there will be four possible points in each burst where a signal transition having the absolute maximum slope in that burst may occur. To facilitate the development of a jitter waveform from the transition information provided by the maximum detector **62**, the maxima in all the bursts must be referenced to the same position within the bursts. That is, with up to four possible transition positions in each burst, one of those positions is selected as a reference and the maxima that occur at or in the neighborhood of the other three positions are indexed to that position by adding or subtracting the nominal phase differences between those positions and the reference position.

Any one of the four transition positions can be selected as the reference position. However, since indexing of the positions to a common reference is a source of error, we prefer to select, as the reference, the position involving the greatest number of derivative maxima. Accordingly, after the maxima have been identified by the maximum detector **62**, the system uses an indexing unit **66** to essentially calculate a histogram of the number of selected maxima in the neighborhood of each of the four nominal transition positions. It then selects as the reference position the position involving the greatest number of maxima and indexes all the other maxima to that burst position. A similar arrangement is followed in the frequency ranges in which two signal transitions are encompassed by each sample burst.

After they are indexed to a single burst position, the selected transitions define a curve of which the curve **100** in FIG. **5** is an example. This curve has a sinusoidal component and an overall slope. The sinusoidal component is a graphical representation of the phase jitter and the slope represents drift, mainly due to the difference in frequency between the clock **50** (FIG. **3A**) and the clock (not shown) that is used in generating the monitored signal. The waveform may have some impulse noise as indicated by the samples **92***a* and **92***b* and it is therefore passed through a spike filter **70** (FIG. **3B**) that will tend to smooth out high frequency spikes.

Also, in some cases a burst may contain a sequence of symbols that does not provide sufficiently good transitional information to select a maximum. In such cases a transition will be missing from the curve **100** as indicated, for example, at **102**. A pseudo transition is then inserted by interpolation, preferably linear interpolation.

Next the drift is removed from the waveform **100** by a drift eliminator **72** (FIG. **3B**). The drift eliminator calculates the slope of the ramp of the curve by first determining average values of the bursts in the first and last portions of the waveform, e.g. the first quarter and the last quarter. The difference between the two values is averaged over the number of bursts to give the average drift. Then an accumulated drift is subtracted from the waveform to "level" the waveform. The average value of the entire waveform is then calculated and also subtracted from the waveform, thereby leaving only the AC components, i.e. the jitter.

Returning to FIG. **3B**, a Fourier transform can be applied to the resulting waveform to ascertain the frequencies and amplitudes of the various components in the waveform. Since the waveform has a finite length and since the measurement system is not coherent with the jitter frequencies, a transform at this juncture will generally produce spurious side lobes in the output. Accordingly, we prefer to pass the waveform through a windowing unit **74** which applies a cosine-bell window to the waveform to force the ends of the waveform to zero amplitude. The windowed waveform is then passed to a FFT-unit **76** which performs the Fourier transform to produce the output of the system.

The foregoing procedure is applied separately in the respective frequency bands as explained above. That is, for each band a different signal-sampling burst length and burst

rate are used as set forth above. The invention thus provides a high degree of accuracy without resort to undue storage and processing time for determination of the low-frequency jitter components.

In FIG. 7 we have illustrated a system for monitoring phase jitter of signals propagating in either direction over a transmission line having a characteristic impedance R. A directional coupler indicated generally at 80 is inserted in the transmission line. The illustrated coupler 80 is a resistive network configured as shown, with the individual resistors preferably having the resistance values shown so as to match the transmission impedance. The coupler also has a pair of sampling ports 80*a* and 80*b*, which, respectively, provide replicas of the signals propagating in opposite directions on the transmission line 82.

A jitter measuring unit 84, of the type illustrated in FIGS. 3A and 3B, is selectively connected to the ports 80*a* and 80*b*, for example, by a switch 86. Thus, connecting the switch 86 first in one position and then the other position, one may monitor the phase jitter in signals propagating in one direction over the line 82 and then in signals propagating in the opposite direction.

The terms and expressions which have been employed are used as terms of description and not of limitation, and there is no intention, in the use of such terms and expressions, of excluding any equivalents of the features shown and described or portions thereof, but it is recognized that various modifications are possible within the scope of the invention claimed.

What is claimed is:

1. A jitter measuring system for measuring phase jitter of the transitions in a multiple-level digital signal, the system comprising:

A. a local clock,

B. sampling means for sampling the signal in synchronism with the local clock at a rate substantially greater than the symbol rate in the signal, thereby to provide a series of digital signal samples, each of which represents a value of the signal,

C. derivative means for

1) processing the signal samples to obtain a series of samples of the time derivative of signal, and

2) processing the derivative samples to provide a series of values of the timing of absolute maxima of the derivative, the timing values being samples of the waveform of the phase jitter.

2. The system defined in claim 1 in which the sampling means samples the signal in spaced-apart bursts, and wherein the timing values are samples of the low-frequency components of the phase jitter.

3. The system defined in claim 1 in which the sampling means samples the signal in consecutive sets of bursts, each set having a different burst rate, whereby the timing values obtained from the respective burst sets are samples of different ranges of frequency components of the phase jitter.

4. The system defined in claim 3 in which the derivate means includes:

A. means for identifying for each burst the derivative sample closest to the absolute maximum slope of the signal, and

B. means for fitting a quadratic curve to a set of samples including the closest sample and calculating the timing of the maximum of the curve to provide a sample of the jitter waveform.

5. The system defined in claim 3 in which the derivative means

A. passes a multiple-sample window along the series of samples of the time derivative in each burst,

B. ascertains the position of the window when the sum of the values of the samples contained therein corresponds with an absolute maximum value of the time derivative, and

C. selects the central sample in the window at that position as a primary reference point of the absolute maximum.

6. The system defined in claim 5 further including means for

A. fitting a quadratic curve to a set of samples including the primary reference point and a pair of samples preceding and following the primary reference point, and

B. calculating the maximum of the curve provide a sample of the jitter waveform.

7. The system defined in claim 1 including transform means for generating a Fourier transform of the curve represented by the timing values, thereby to provide a spectrum of the phase jitter.

8. The system defined in claim 7 in which the transform means includes:

means for processing the jitter waveform samples to remove therefrom any variation in the timing values due to a frequency difference between the signal transitions and the local clock.

9. The system defined in claim 1 including:

A. a directional coupler connected in a transmission path of digital signals whose phase jitter is to be measured, the directional coupler having a pair of output ports providing replicas of the signals passing in the respective directions in the transmission path, and

B. means for connecting the sampling means alternatively to the first and second output ports, thereby to selectively measure the phase jitter and the signals passing in the respective directions.

10. A jitter measuring system for measuring phase jitter of the transitions in a multiple-digital signal, said system comprising a:

A. local clock;

B. sampling means for sampling the signal in synchronism with the local clock at a rate substantially greater than the symbol rate in the signal, thereby to provide a series of digital signal samples, each of which represents a value of the signal, the sampling means sampling the signal in bursts, each of which encompasses multiple transitions of the signal;

C. derivative means for:

1. processing the signal samples to obtain a series of samples of the time derivative of the signal; and

2. processing of derivative samples to provide a series of timing values, each of which represents the timing of the absolute maximum of the derivative in a burst, the timing values being samples of the waveform of the phase jitter.

11. The system defined in claim 10 in which the derivative means:

A. passes a multiple-sample window along the series of samples of the time derivative in each burst,

B. ascertains the position of the window when the sum of the values of the samples contained therein corresponds with an absolute maximum value of the time derivative, and

C. selects the central sample in the window at that position as a primary reference point of the absolute maximum.

12. A system defined in claim 11 further including means for:

A. fitting a quadratic curve to a set of samples including the primary reference point and a pair of samples preceding and following the primary reference point, and

B. calculating the maximum of the curve to provide a sample of the jitter waveform.

13. A method of measuring phase jitter of the transitions in a digital signal, the method comprising the steps of:

A. sampling the signal at a rate substantially greater than the symbol rate in the signal to provide a series of digital signal samples, each of which represents a value of the signal,

B. obtaining from the signal samples a series of samples of the time derivative of the signal, and

C. processing the derivative samples to provide a series of timing values representing the timing of absolute maxima of the derivative samples, the timing values being samples of the waveform of the phase jitter.

14. The method defined in claim 13 in which:

A. the signal is sampled in bursts, each of which encompasses multiple transitions of the digital signal, and

B. in the processing step, the absolute maximum of the derivative samples in each burst is ascertained to provide a sample of the waveform of the phase jitter.

15. The system defined in claim 14 in which the digital signal is sampled in sets of bursts, each set having a different burst rate, whereby the timing values obtained from the respective sets of bursts are samples of different ranges of frequency components of the phase jitter.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 5,748,672
DATED : May 5, 1998
INVENTOR(S) : Marc L. Smith, t al.

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

On the title page, item [73] Assignee, should read—GenRad, Inc., Conord, MA--.

Signed and Sealed this

Twenty-fifth Day of August, 1998

Bruce Lehman

Attest:

BRUCE LEHMAN

Attesting Officer

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

US006622256B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Dabral et al.

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,622,256 B1**
(45) **Date of Patent: Sep. 16, 2003**

(54) **SYSTEM FOR PROTECTING STROBE GLITCHES BY SEPARATING A STROBE SIGNAL INTO POINTER PATH AND TIMING PATH, FILTERING GLITCHES FROM SIGNALS ON POINTER PATH THEREOF**

(75) Inventors: **Sanjay Dabral**, Palo Alto, CA (US); **Alper Ilkbahar**, Santa Cruz, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Intel Corporation**, Santa Clara, CA (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/539,666**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 30, 2000**

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **G06F 1/04**
(52) **U.S. Cl.** **713/600**; 713/401; 365/193
(58) **Field of Search** 713/400, 401, 713/500, 501, 503, 600; 327/141, 153, 147, 158, 269; 365/191, 193

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,519,342 A * 5/1996 McEwan 327/94
5,828,257 A * 10/1998 Masleid 327/276
5,872,959 A * 2/1999 Nguyen et al. 713/401

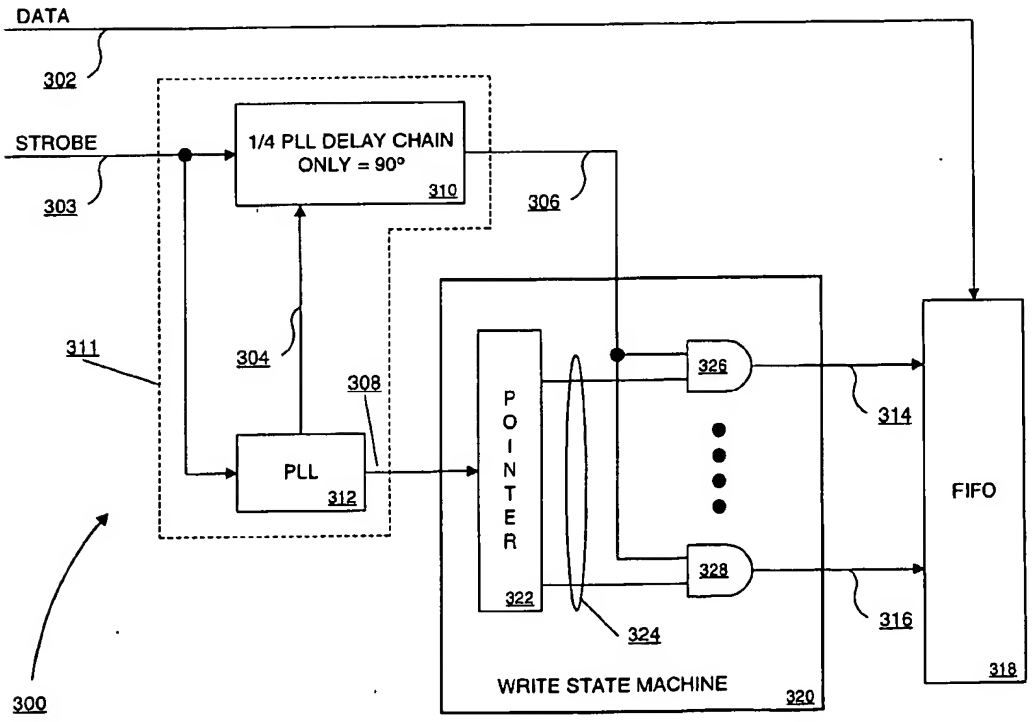
* cited by examiner

Primary Examiner—Thomas Lee
Assistant Examiner—Thuan Du
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Peter Lam

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A method and apparatus for a strobe glitch protection mechanism for a source synchronous I/O link. One method of the present invention comprises separating a transfer clock having a plurality of transfer clock edges into a pointer path and a timing path. Glitches are filtered from signals on said pointer path. The pointer path and the timing path are coupled to generate latch enable signals to latch data bits.

33 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets



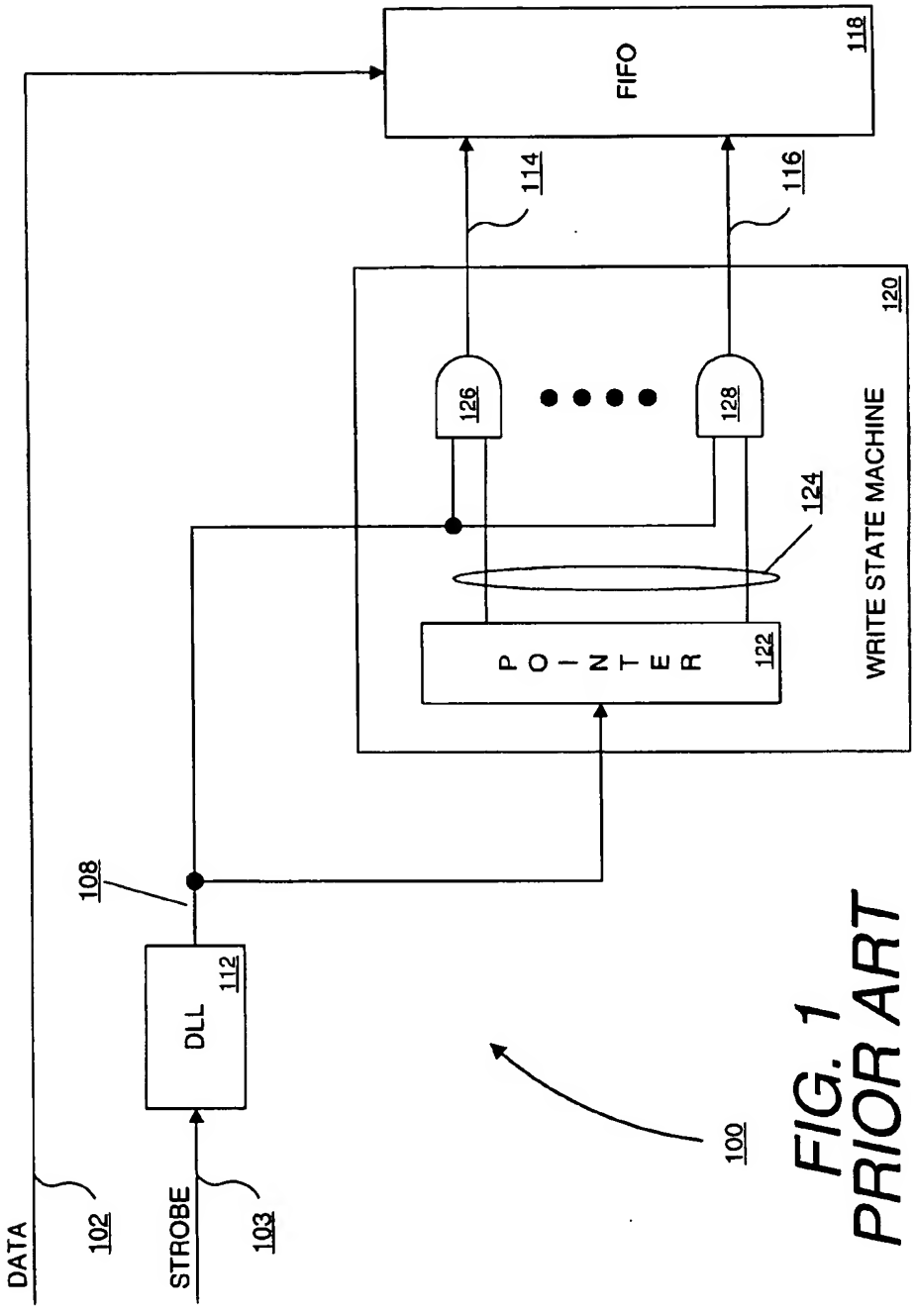


FIG. 1
PRIOR ART

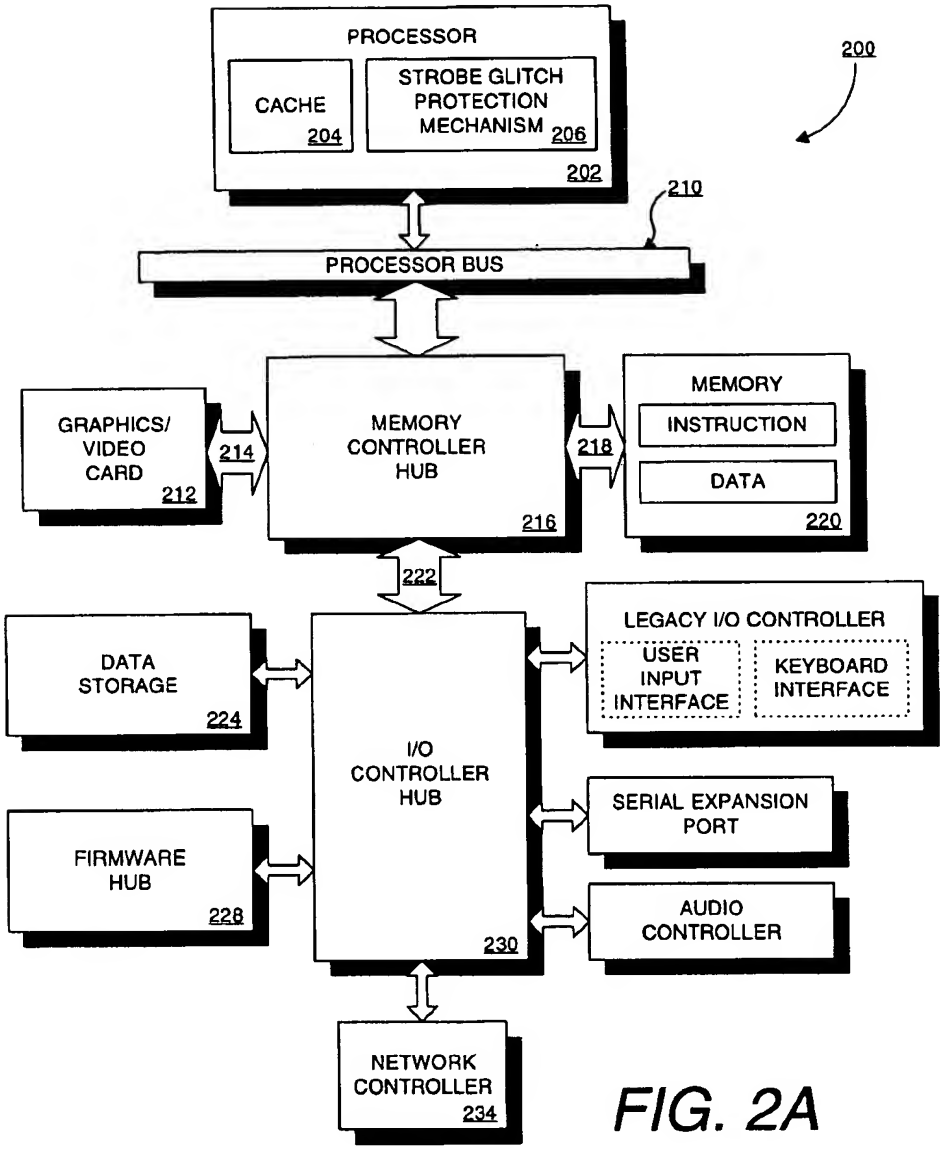

PROCESSOR
CACHE
204
STROBE GLITCH PROTECTION MECHANISM
206
202
200
210
PROCESSOR BUS
GRAPHICS/ VIDEO CARD
212
214
MEMORY CONTROLLER HUB
216
218
MEMORY
INSTRUCTION
DATA
220
222
DATA STORAGE
224
I/O CONTROLLER HUB
230
LEGACY I/O CONTROLLER
USER INPUT INTERFACE
KEYBOARD INTERFACE
SERIAL EXPANSION PORT
AUDIO CONTROLLER
FIRMWARE HUB
228
NETWORK CONTROLLER
234

FIG. 2A

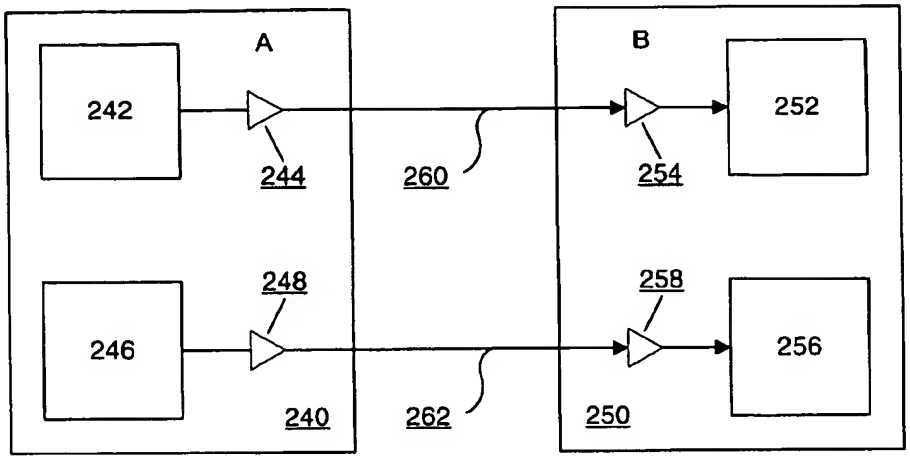

A
B
242
244
260
252
254
248
258
246
256
240
262
250

FIG. 2B

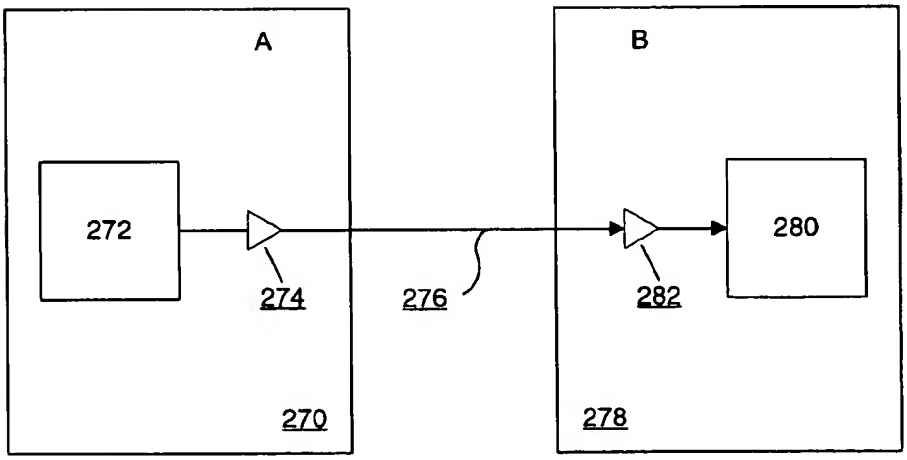

A
B
272
274
276
280
282
270
278

FIG. 2C

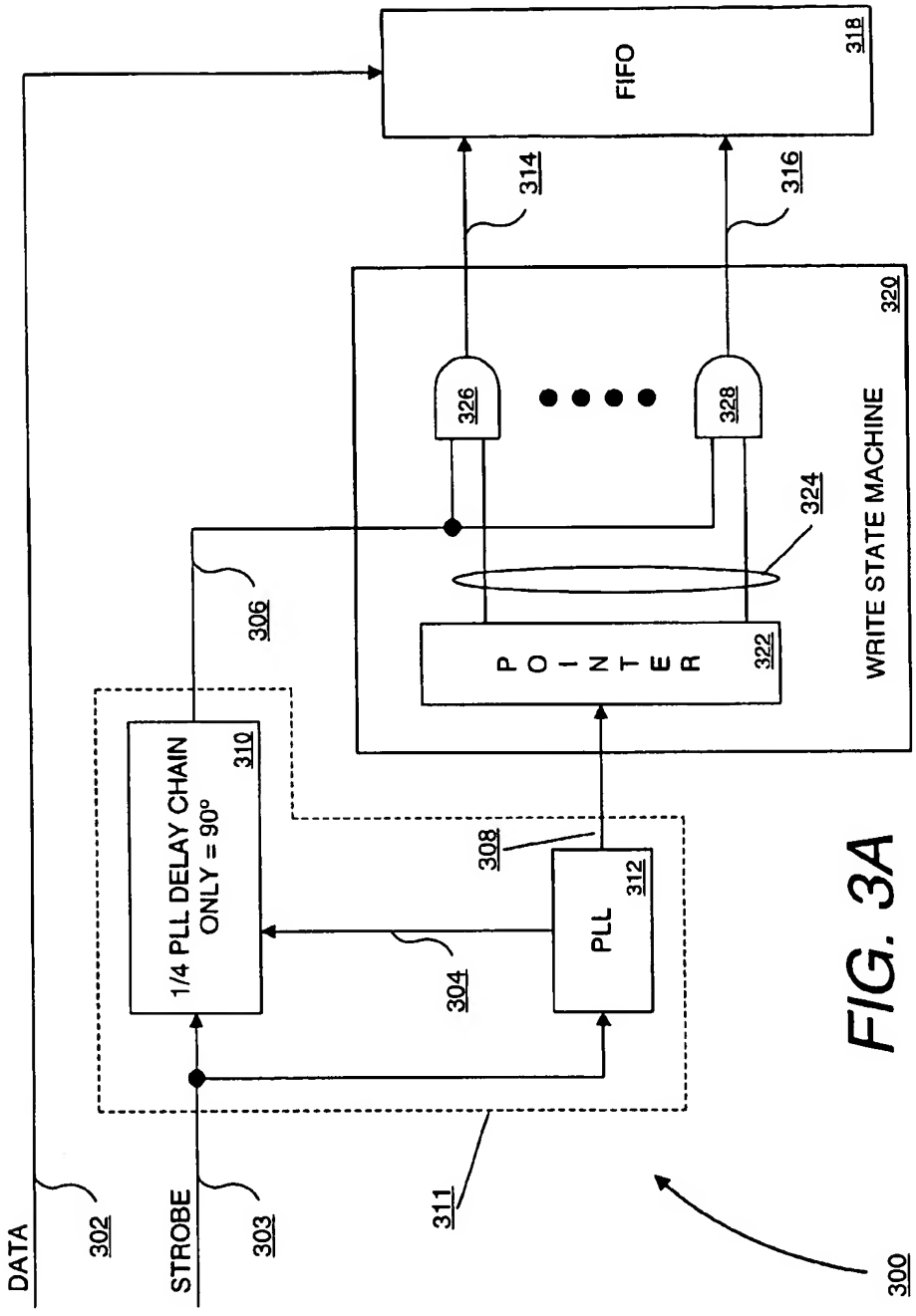

FIFO
318
314
316
320
WRITE STATE MACHINE
326
328
324
306
POINTER
322
1/4 PLL DELAY CHAIN
ONLY = 90°
310
308
PLL
312
304
311
DATA
302
STROBE
303
300

FIG. 3A

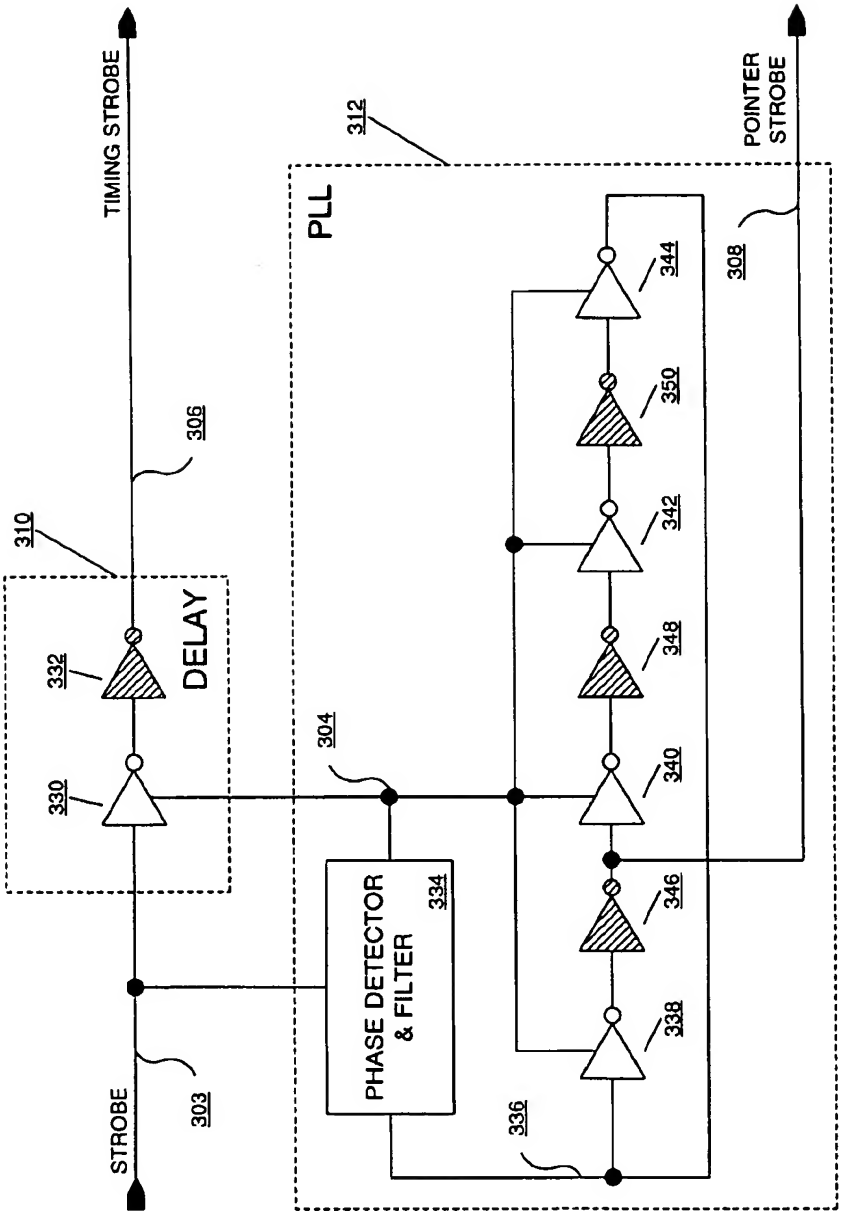

TIMING STROBE
306
310
DELAY
332
330
304
312
PLL
344
350
342
348
340
346
338
308
POINTER STROBE
PHASE DETECTOR & FILTER
334
336
STROBE
303

FIG. 3B

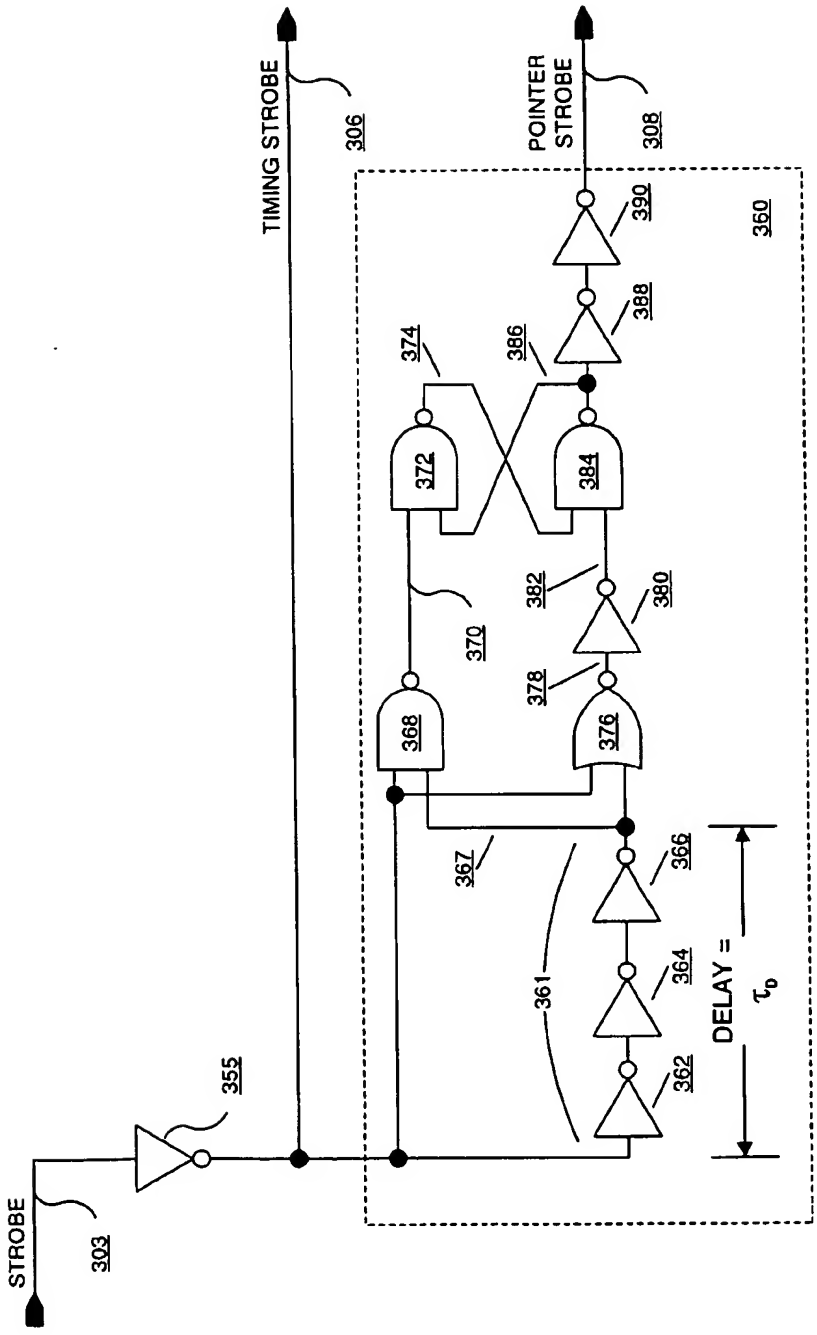

TIMING STROBE
306
POINTER STROBE
308
360
390
388
374
386
372
384
382
380
370
378
368
376
367
366
361
364
362
DELAY = τ_D
355
STROBE
303

FIG. 3C

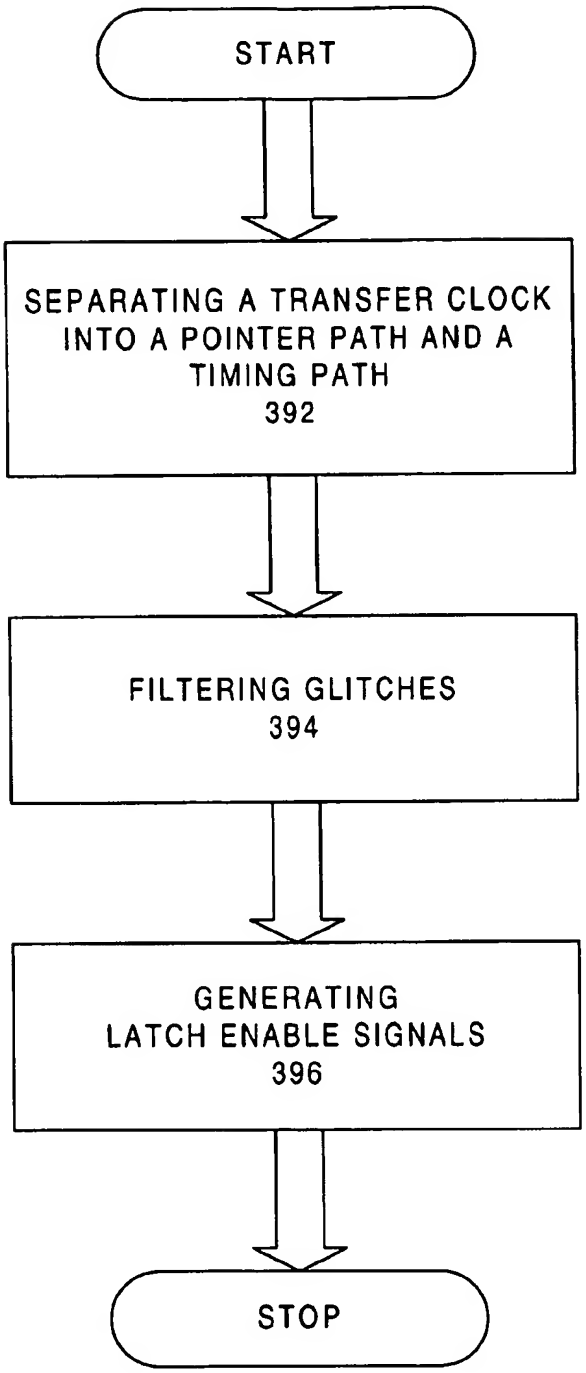

START
SEPARATING A TRANSFER CLOCK INTO A POINTER PATH AND A TIMING PATH
392
FILTERING GLITCHES
394
GENERATING LATCH ENABLE SIGNALS
396
STOP

FIG. 3D

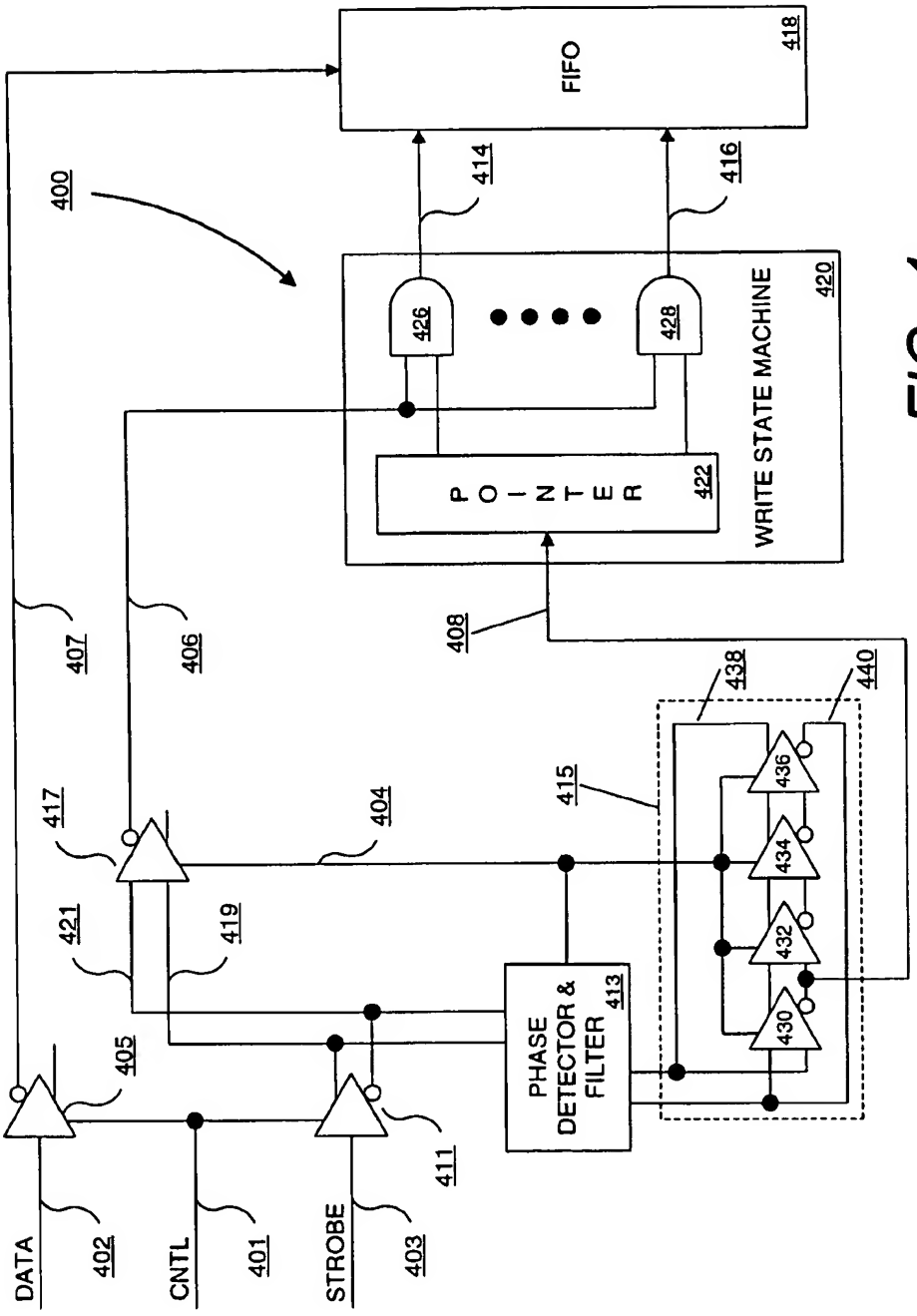

FIFO
418
400
414
416
426
428
WRITE STATE MACHINE
420
P O – N T E R
422
408
407
406
438
440
415
417
404
436
434
421
419
432
430
PHASE DETECTOR & FILTER
413
405
411
DATA
402
CNTL
401
STROBE
403

FIG. 4

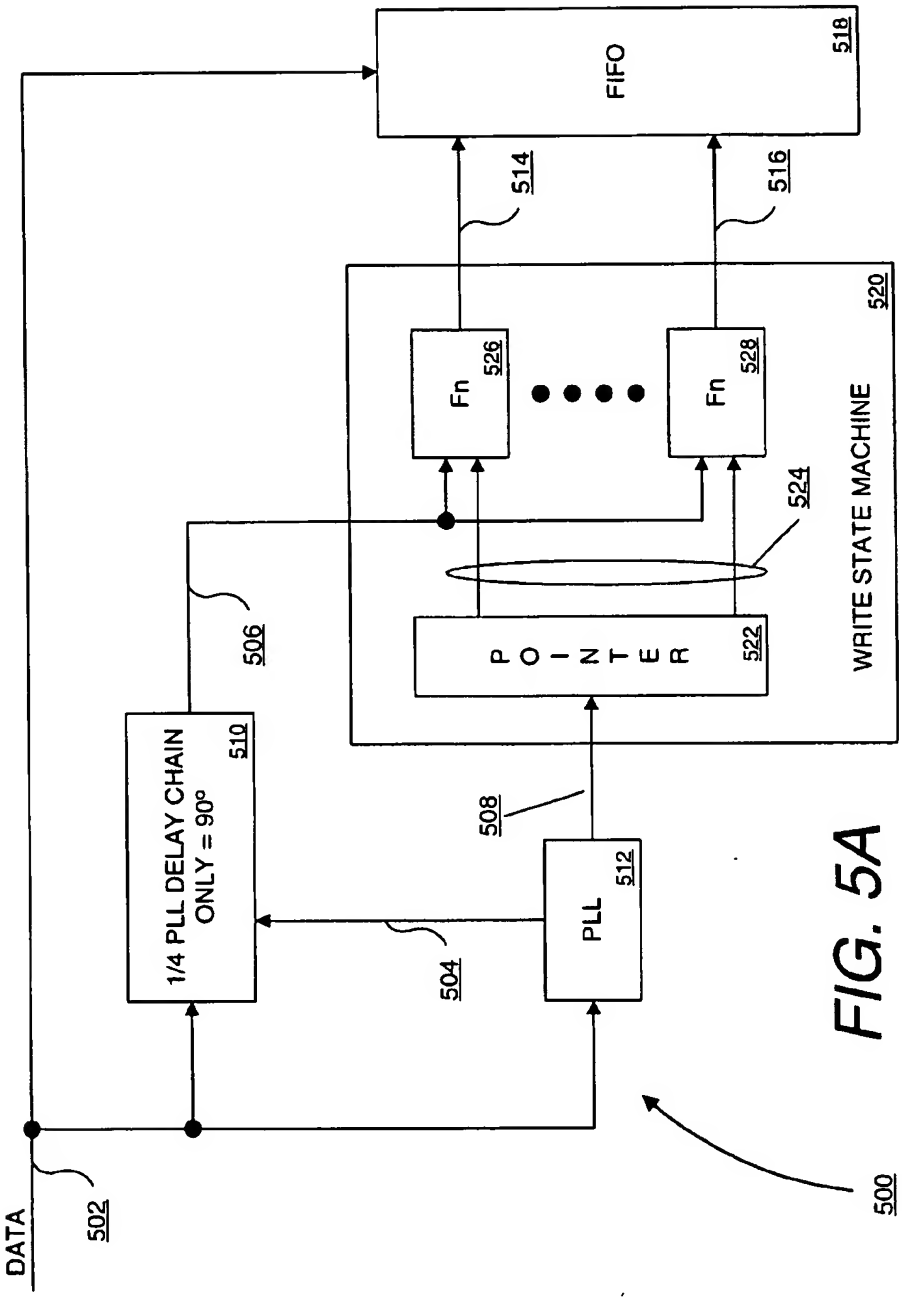

FIFO
518
514
516
520
Fn
526
Fn
528
524
WRITE STATE MACHINE
P O – N T E R
522
506
1/4 PLL DELAY CHAIN
ONLY = 90°
510
508
PLL
512
504
DATA
502
500

FIG. 5A

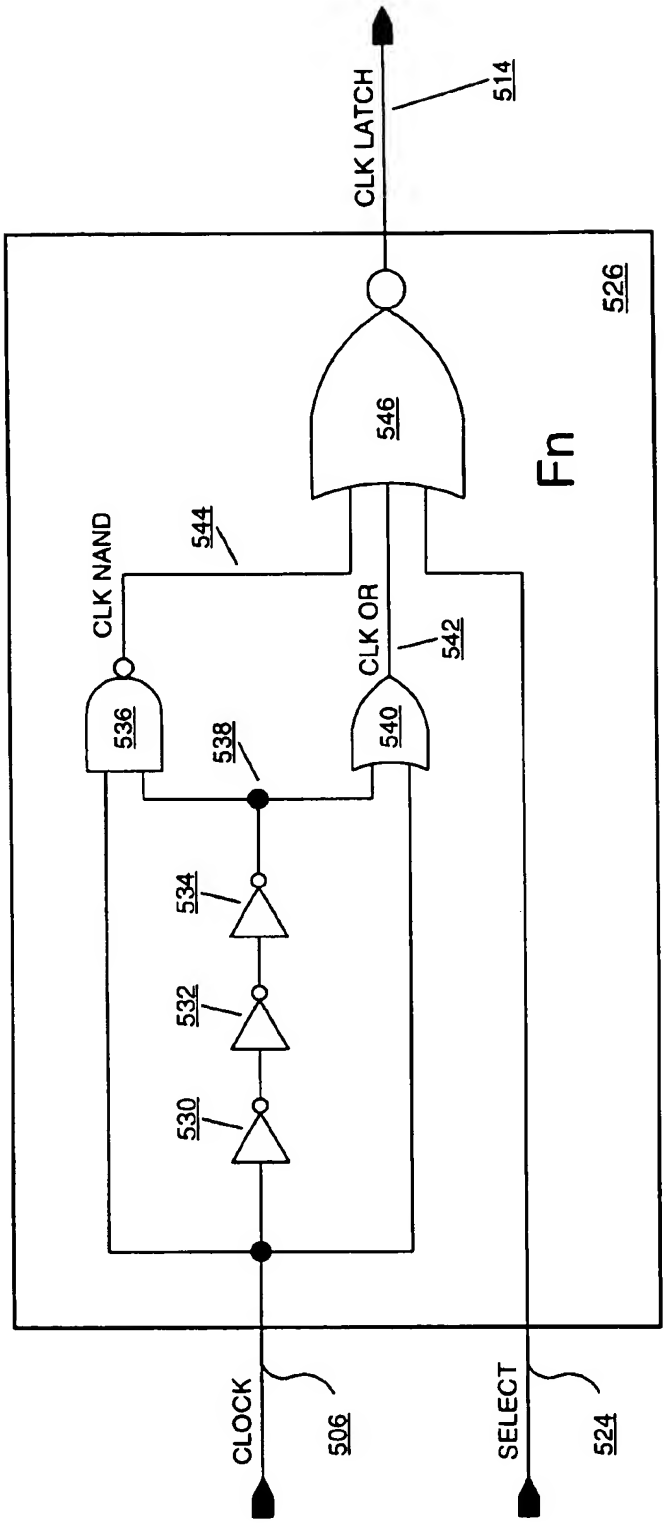

CLK LATCH
514
526
546
Fn
544
CLK NAND
CLK OR
542
536
538
540
534
532
530
CLOCK
506
SELECT
524

FIG. 5B

SYSTEM FOR PROTECTING STROBE GLITCHES BY SEPARATING A STROBE SIGNAL INTO POINTER PATH AND TIMING PATH, FILTERING GLITCHES FROM SIGNALS ON POINTER PATH THEREOF

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates generally to the field of signal transfer between components, and more specifically to a strobe glitch protection mechanism for a source synchronous I/O link.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

One limitation on the throughput of a computer or other processing system is the interface between integrated circuits and/or other components in the system. Interface circuits often provide input/output (I/O) links for data transfers between components. Improved data transfer circuitry may allow faster and more efficient signaling between various components.

I/O links between components and systems often use data, reference voltage and strobe lines. The reference voltage provides a threshold which allows a signal to be qualified as low or high state, whereas the strobe provides the timing reference i.e. the position of the data bit in a time sequence. The strobe signal functions as a transfer clock. In some data transfer communications, glitches can occur in these signals. A glitch is generally defined as an undesired transition or bounce in a signal. Glitches destroy the integrity of signals on a line. Sources of glitches can include interference, cross talk, ground bounce, mechanical vibrations, etc. Data glitches can cause corruption of data if the glitch occurs at the sampling time at the receiver. Data error checking techniques such as parity or error-correcting code (ECC) can detect and possibly correct an error. However, any glitches in the strobe signal can alter the state machine and disturb the timing context, therefore corrupting future data. Therefore, a strobe glitch can have a catastrophic effect on the I/O link.

There are two types of strobe failures of concern. The first type is an analog glitch or noise that is long enough to cause errant internal strobe behavior, but does not manifest as a double pulse. This type of behavior can be difficult to detect. This error can amount to a slower signal transition edge or a moved edge, but not a full transition. During such a failure, the phase of the strobe with respect to the incoming data could be lost. The second type of strobe failure involves signal noise that creates a double pulse that may be mistakenly counted at the receiver. A double pulse can cause the logic in a state machine to erroneously increment to the next state.

One existing glitch protection scheme can only protect against glitches during master changeover scenarios. Another existing scheme can only detect an error and then flag the error during a break in bus activity. Other glitch protection schemes have uses a phase locked loop (PLL) to filter strobe signals. However, a PLL also filters out data and strobe cycle to cycle timing jitters, leading to undesired loss of timing margin.

FIG. **1** illustrates a block diagram of a typical prior art source synchronous strobe and data circuit **100** at a receiver. The circuit **100** receives a data signal **102** and a strobe signal **103** that have been sent from an external data transfer source. Data **102** is connected to a latch mechanism. The latch mechanism in this example is a set of first in/first out

(FIFO) latches **118**. Strobe **103** is connected to a delayed lock loop (DLL) **112**. The DLL **112** is a chain of delay element that delays the propagation of strobe **103** to node **108** by a desired amount (usually 90°). The delayed version of strobe at node **108** is coupled to a write state machine (WSM) **120** at pointer **122** and latch enable logic **126, 128**. Pointer **122** generates a plurality of latch select signals **124** based on transitions on strobe **103**. Latch enables **114, 116** to the FIFO **118** are generated from latch enable logic **126, 128**. For this example, latch selects **124** are logically anded together with delayed strobe **108** at and gates **126, 128**.

The DLL **112** rotates STROBE **103** to a 90° position. This 90° phase shift allows the strobe signal to center the data window. However, the DLL **112** only performs a rotation and delays STROBE **103**. If STROBE **103** is noisy or has glitches, the noise and glitches are simply rotated 90° and propagated out to the WSM **120**.

This example circuit at the receiver end of the data transfer uses a strobe having a 90° rotation to advance the write pointer and latch incoming data. In other circuits, the strobe can be set at a 90° position at the driver end. But in either case, the noise and degraded signal quality can cause strobe glitches. It may be especially advantageous to identify options for strobe glitch protection and detection.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The present invention is illustrated by way of example and not limitations in the figures of the accompanying drawings, in which like references indicate similar elements, and in which:

FIG. **1** illustrates a block diagram of a typical prior art source synchronous strobe and data circuit at a receiver;

FIG. **2A** illustrates one embodiment of a system employing a strobe glitch protection mechanism;

FIG. **2B** illustrates one embodiment of a parallel I/O link between two components;

FIG. **2C** illustrates one embodiment of a serial I/O link between two components;

FIG. **3A** illustrates one embodiment of a single ended source synchronous strobe and data circuit having a modified strobe path at the receiver end of a parallel I/O link;

FIG. **3B** illustrates one embodiment of strobe glitch mechanism in the modified strobe path of FIG. **3A**;

FIG. **3C** illustrates another embodiment of the modified strobe path of FIG. **3A** including a glitch filtering mechanism;

FIG. **3D** illustrates a flow chart of a method for strobe glitch protection for one embodiment;

FIG. **4** illustrates one embodiment of a single ended source synchronous strobe and data circuit including a differential VCO at the receiver end of a parallel I/O link;

FIG. **5A** illustrates one embodiment of a data circuit at the receiver end of a serial I/O link; and

FIG. **5B** illustrates one embodiment of the latch enable mechanism of FIG. **5A**.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

A strobe glitch protection mechanism for a source synchronous I/O link is disclosed. The described strobe and data circuits are used to transfer data between integrated circuits, but are not so limited. Although the following embodiments are described with reference to processors, other embodiments are applicable to other integrated circuits or logic devices. The same techniques and teachings of the present

invention can easily be applied to other types of circuits or semiconductor devices that use a synchronous I/O link.

In the following description, for purposes of explanation, numerous specific details are set forth in order to provide a thorough understanding of the present invention. One of ordinary skill in the art, however, will appreciate that these specific details are not necessary in order to practice the present invention. In other instances, well known electrical structures and circuits have not been set forth in particular detail in order to not necessarily obscure the present invention.

During a data transfer, a source device sends data via a link to a receiver device. Typical devices can include items ranging from integrated circuit components to systems. When a source sends data to a receiver, a strobe or clock is also sent to the receiver. However, the exact arrival of a signal at the receiver and its signal quality can vary due to factors such as line discontinuities, parasitic capacitance & inductance, propagation delay, etc. The receiver has to know exactly when a signal is arriving and how to react.

When data arrives at the receiver, the data generally needs to be stored or latched away. Furthermore, if bits of data are being constantly transmitted and received, the receiver has to keep track of what bits are coming in and how to shift the data bits in the correct order. Logic, such as a write state machine, can place the bits in time sequence using the strobe as they arrive at the receiver.

Preserving the precise order of the data bits is critical. A strobe signal from the receiver often assists in this process. The strobe can serve two functions. First, a strobe signal can be used to capture data into a latch. Second, a strobe can help to place the bits in a proper sequence. For example, a receiving device can have a set of latches that behave like a cyclic buffer. Every time the strobe signal toggles, the receiver latches a data bit into a latch and advances a pointer to the next latch. The pointer advancement prevents the incoming bit from overwriting the stored data. Meanwhile, other logic in the receiving device can be reading out data from the previously written latches. By the time the last latch is filled, the first latch has been freed up and ready for new data. The pointer can wrap around and the latches are rewritten.

In source synchronous input/output (I/O) signaling, a precisely known data and strobe timing relationship is used to capture data at a receiver. Maintaining the integrity of the strobe signal and the write pointer is of great importance. The strobe edge is used to time the data and also to advance the state machine. Any glitches in the strobe can result in the incorrect advancement of the write pointer and also incorrect data capture. Incorrect data capture can be detected by using parity or ECC or CRC checks. However, an incorrect write pointer can lead to errors in subsequent data transfers and ultimately system failure. Strobe glitch issues can also be present in point to point links. Two types of problems can have an impact on data transfer. The first involves having extra pulses on the strobe signal. A second problem involves missing pulses on the strobe. In order to prevent strobe glitches, some circuit designers have implemented strobe glitch protection circuits into their components and systems.

A strobe glitch protection circuit can filter out the glitches and prevent the state machine from advancing states erroneously. Furthermore, the circuit can be configured to allow the data timing information to propagate through for proper data capture. These actions can be achieved by splitting the incoming strobe signal into two separate paths. One timing strobe path can retain the timing information and jitter. The other strobe path can be filtered to obtain a clean pointer strobe signal.

Embodiments of the present invention allow the write pointers to operate on clean strobes. Thus, accurate write state machine information can be maintained. Furthermore, the system reliability of a system or a component implementing an embodiment of the present scheme may not be limited by write pointer accuracy. This strobe glitch protection mechanism also provides an accurate cycle by cycle tracking between the data and strobe signals. Signal timing in the critical timing path is preserved as the path is kept free of additional circuit elements.

Depending on the implementation, alternative embodiments of the present mechanism can require fewer additional circuit elements than other glitch schemes. One method of present invention can also be adapted for use in a self clocked serial I/O link where no explicit strobing clocks are available.

Referring now to FIG. 2A, a computer system **200** is shown. System **200** includes a component, such as a processor, employing a strobe glitch protection mechanism in accordance with the present invention, such as in the embodiment described herein. System **200** is representative of processing systems based on the PENTIUM®, PENTIUM® Pro, PENTIUM® II, PENTIUM® III microprocessors available from Intel Corporation of Santa Clara, Calif., although other systems (including PCs having other microprocessors, engineering workstations, set-top boxes and the like) may also be used. Thus, the present invention is not limited to any specific combination of hardware circuitry and software.

FIG. 2A is a block diagram of one embodiment of a system **200**. The computer system **200** includes a processor **202** that processes data signals. FIG. 2A shows an example of an embodiment of the present invention implemented in a single processor system **200**. However, it is understood that other embodiments may alternatively be implemented as systems having multiple processors. Processor **202** is coupled to a processor bus **210** that transmits data signals between processor **202** and other components in the system **200**. The elements of system **200** perform their conventional functions well known in the art.

System **200** includes a memory **220**. A cache memory **204** can reside inside processor **202** that stores data signals stored in memory **220**. Alternatively, in another embodiment, the cache memory may reside external to the processor.

A strobe glitch protection mechanism **206** also resides in processor **202**. Alternate embodiments of a strobe glitch protection mechanism **206** can also be used in microcontrollers, embedded processors, graphics devices, DSPs, and other types of logic circuits.

A system logic chip **216** is coupled to the processor bus **210** and memory **220**. The processor **202** communicates to a memory controller hub (MCH) **216** via a processor bus **210**. The MCH **216** directs data signals between processor **202**, memory **220**, and other components in the system **200** and bridges the data signals between processor bus **210**, memory **220**, and system I/O **222**. The graphics card **212** is coupled to the MCH **216** through an Accelerated Graphics Port (AGP) interconnect **214**.

System **200** uses a proprietary hub interface bus **222** to couple the MCH **216** to the I/O controller hub (ICH) **230**. The ICH **230** provides direct connections to I/O devices such as a firmware hub (BIOS) **228**, data storage **224**, a serial expansion port such as Universal Serial Bus (USB), and a network controller **234**.

The present enhancement is not limited to computer systems. Alternative embodiments of the present invention

can be used in other devices such as, for example, handheld devices and embedded applications. Some examples of handheld devices include cellular phones, Internet Protocol devices, digital cameras, personal digital assistants (PDAs), and handheld PCs. Embedded applications can include a microcontroller, a digital signal processor (DSP), system on a chip, network computers (NetPC), set-top boxes, network hubs, wide area network (WAN) switches, or any other system which uses a latch type mechanism for other embodiments.

FIG. 2B illustrates one embodiment of a parallel I/O link between two components **240**, **250**. This example shows component A **240** communicating with component B **250** via a parallel I/O link. Parallel here refers to the use of separate signals for data **260** and strobe **262**, and not the presence of multiple data lines in the link. During a data transfer, data **260** and strobe **262** are both driven from A **240** to B **250**. Strobe **262** can be used to notify the receiver as to when data is available.

Component A **240** comprises a data source **242** and a strobe source **246**. Data source **242** provides a data signal to an output driver **244**, which in turn drives data **260** from component A **240** to component B **250**. Strobe source **246** provides a strobe signal to an output driver **248**, which in turn drives strobe **262** from A **240** to B **250**.

Component B **250** comprises a data receiver **252** and a strobe receiver **256**. Data signal **260** is received at input driver **254**, which in turn provides the data to data receiver **252**. Data receiver **252** may be a latch type mechanism. Strobe **262** is received at input driver **258** and propagated to strobe receiver **256**. Strobe receiver **256** may be a write state machine.

FIG. 2C illustrates one embodiment of a serial I/O link between two components. This example shows component A **270** communicating with component B **278** via a serial I/O link. Serial here refers to the use of only a data signal and the absence of a strobe signal. During a data transfer, data **276** is driven from A **270** to B **278**. Data **276** can include an embedded clock to notify the receiver as to when data is available.

Component A **270** comprises a data source **272**. Data source **272** provides a data signal to an output driver **274**, which drives data **276** from A **270** to B **278**. Component B **278** comprises a data receiver **280**. Data signal **276** is received at input driver **282**, which provides the data to data receiver **280**. Data receiver **278** may be a logic circuit that can generate a strobe from the embedded clock in data and latch the data.

FIG. 3A illustrates one embodiment of a single ended source synchronous strobe and data circuit **300** having a modified strobe path at the receiver end of a parallel I/O link. This circuit **300** receives a data signal DATA **302** and a strobe signal STROBE **303** from a data transfer source. DATA **302** is coupled is a set of FIFO latches **318**. For alternative embodiments, other types of latch mechanisms can be used. STROBE **303** is coupled to a write state machine (WSM) **320** through a modified strobe path.

The modified strobe path **311** of the embodiment described here provides a first strobe **306** derived from a delay element **310** and a PLL filtered strobe **308** to the WSM **320**. For this example, both the first strobe **306** and the PLL filter strobe **308** are rotated 90° relative to STROBE **303**. The 90° rotation on the strobe signals centers the data window for latching. By splitting STROBE **303** into two separate signals, this scheme can provide a robust strobe **308** to the WSM **320** and also allow for tight data/strobe matching in the timing path. The timing path of FIG. 3A traces from the delay chain **310**, along node **306**, and through the latch enable logic **326**, **328** to the FIFO latches **318**.

The modified strobe path comprises a strobe glitch protection mechanism **311** that is coupled to STROBE **303**. Strobe glitch protection mechanism **311** provides two versions of a delayed strobe **306**, **308** to WSM **320**. For this embodiment, the strobe glitch protection mechanism **311** comprises of a delay chain **310** and a phase locked loop (PLL) **312**. The delay chain **310** is a ¼ PLL delay chain having a phase shift of 90° (or the desired rotation). The delay chain **310** generates a first delayed strobe **306** by shifting STROBE **303** by 90° as STROBE **303** passes through. Delayed strobe **306**, also known as the timing strobe, is unfiltered relative to STROBE **303** such that cycle to cycle jitter is preserved to match DATA **302**. Timing strobe causes the latching action to occur in the latches **318**. By keeping the timing strobe in phase with DATA **302**, timing loss and noise margins may be reduced. Hence, the timing paths of the DATA **302** and timing strobe are preserved from the output latch or driving pad of the sender over to the inbound latch of the receiver.

PLL **312** of this embodiment includes a voltage controlled oscillator such as a large inverter chain or a ring oscillator. The oscillator provides an oscillating signal based on the voltage level of a control signal. The oscillator can be controlled to speed up or slow down as desired. The oscillator is inputted a frequency at which to function. A phase detector attempts to lock the input and output signals of the oscillator.

The PLL **312** takes STROBE **303** and generates a second delayed strobe **308**, pointer strobe. This second delayed strobe **308** is PLL filtered and rotated 90° with respect to STROBE **303**. Pointer strobe **308** causes the WSM **320** to point at the latch to store DATA **302**. Glitches are not desirable on the pointer strobe **308** because an incorrect pointer strobe **308** can lead to latching data in the wrong sequence. Noise and glitches can occur on signal lines due to transmission line reflections, mismatches, ground bounce, etc. PLL **312** also provides a control signal **304** to delay chain **310**. Control signal **304** can cause the delay in the delay chain **310** to vary as needed. The shared control **304** of some embodiments can include analog voltages or digital bits.

If an extra pulse is seen on STROBE **303**, pointer strobe **308** is still properly supplied a pulse from the oscillator. The PLL **312** tries to speed up the oscillator to catch up with the extra strobe pulse. However, the loop time constant is extremely large and the acceleration of the oscillator is converted to jitter instead. Similarly, when a pulse is missing on STROBE **303**, pointer strobe **308** is still properly supplied a pulse from the oscillator. The PLL **312** tries to slow the oscillator to make up for the missing pulse. However, the loop time constant is extremely large and the deceleration of the oscillator is converted to opposite jitter. In either situation, the strobe glitch protection mechanism **311** is able to recover from the problem with STROBE **303**. The glitches are converted to jitter and do not incorrectly advance or miss advancing the latch pointers.

The circuit **300** of the present embodiment is designed to latch data on the edge transition of a strobe pulse. The actual width of the strobe pulse is as important here. However, the strobe pulse should be reasonably close to the center of the timing window in order to maximize timing margins.

For this embodiment, an accurate strobe rotation path is provided by inserting a delay element path through delay

chain **310** in parallel with PLL **312**. Control elements in PLL **312** such as a delay element, control voltages, or control bits, can be shared with the delay chain **310** as with control signal **304**. Cycle by cycle jitter tracking of the DATA **302** and STROBE **303** signals is also available.

The PLL **312** in the modified strobe path **311** of this embodiment filters out any occasional glitches in the strobe signal **303**. The glitch is converted into additional jitter in the PLL **312** instead of being propagated as an invalid transition to WSM **320**. Hence, the WSM **320** should get a clean strobe signal **308** and be able to maintain accurate state information.

The PLL **312** of one embodiment can use the same low pass filtering (LPF) capacitor as that of a DLL **112** in FIG. **1**. An embodiment of the present strobe glitch mechanism may be implemented so that there are only small differences in performance characteristics such as area and power capture range between the DLL **112** and the PLL **312** solutions.

The first delayed strobe **306** is coupled to the latch enable logic **326, 328** in the WSM **320**. The second delayed strobe **308** coupled to the pointer logic **322**, which generates a plurality of latch select signals **324**. Pointer logic **322** enables only one of the latch enable logic **326, 328**. Latch select signals **324** are coupled to the latch enable logic **326, 328**. Latch enable logic **326, 328** of this embodiment logically and together the first delayed strobe signal **306** and latch select signals **324** to generate a latch enable signal **314, 316**. When the timing strobe **306** transitions, the selected latch enable logic will generate a pulse to the latches **318** to perform the latching action. Each one of these latch enable signals **314, 316** are used to sequentially activate a corresponding latch **318** to receive and store DATA **302**. DATA **302** is not limited to a single data line. For alternative embodiments, the larger number of data lines may be used.

FIG. **3B** illustrates one embodiment of the strobe glitch mechanism **311** in the modified strobe path of FIG. **3A**. This glitch strobe mechanism **311** comprises a delayed chain **310** and a PLL **312**. STROBE **303** is connected to both the delay chain **310** and the PLL **312**. The exemplary strobe glitch mechanism **311** of FIG. **3B** includes two different strobe paths **306, 308**.

Delay chain **310** of this embodiment is a ¼ PLL delay chain proving a 90° phase shift for STROBE **303**. STROBE **303** is connected to the input of inverter **330**. Delay chain **310** comprises an inverter **330** with a delay of τ chained to a fast inverter **332** with a delay of τ'. Delay τ of this embodiment is much larger than delay τ'. Inverter **330** is controlled with a control signal **304** that is generated from a phase detector and filter circuit **334** in the PLL **312**. Control signal **304** can alter the transition speed of inverter **330**. TIMING STROBE **306** is outputted from fast inverter **332**. TIMING STROBE **306** of this embodiment is not filtered and retains the jittering characteristics of STROBE **303**. Thus TIMING STROBE **306** can track the jittering of DATA **302**.

STROBE **303** is connected to a phase detector and filter circuit **334**. PLL **312** of this embodiment comprises a phase detector and filter circuit **334** and an oscillator inverter chain. Since a voltage controlled oscillator requires an odd number of inversions, extra inverter stages **346, 348, 350** were added to the oscillator of this embodiment. This inverter chain comprises of four inverters **338, 340, 342, 344** with delay τ chained to three fast inverters **346, 348, 350** with delay τ'. The output **336** of the inverter chain from inverter **344** is fed into the phase detector and filter circuit **334**. A control signal **304** is generated based on the sampled signal **336** and STROBE **303**. The transition rate of inverters **338, 340, 342, 344** can be modified by control signal **304** to speed up or slow down.

POINTER STROBE **308** is tapped from the inverter chain between the first fast inverter **346** and the second inverter **340**. Because delay τ of this embodiment is much greater than τ', the phase shifts is predominately due to inverters **338, 340, 342, 344**. Each of the inverters **338, 340, 342, 344** provide a phase shift of approximately 90°. The signal at node **308** is shifted approximately 90° from STROBE **303**. The signal at node **336** has an offset of 0° degrees from STROBE **303**. The signal between the second inverter **340** and the second fast inverter **348** has a offset of approximately 180° from STROBE **303**. The signal between the third inverter **342** and the third fast inverter **350** has an offset of approximately 270° from STROBE **303**. The phase shift of the signal between the fourth inverter **344** and STROBE **303** is approximately 360°. The fast inverters **346, 348, 350** invert the signal, but cause minimal phase shifts. Thus the error of the signal position of the transitions in the oscillator with respect to STROBE **303** is minimal. For this embodiment, POINTER STROBE **308** is a filtered and 90° rotated version of STROBE **303**.

FIG. **3C** illustrates another embodiment of the modified strobe path of FIG. **3A** including a glitch filtering mechanism **360**. STROBE **303** is coupled the input terminal of an inverter **355**. Inverter **355** provides a 180° phase shifted version of STROBE **303** at its output terminal. For alternative embodiments, this shift may be performed at the data sender, making this inverter **355** unnecessary. The output terminal of inverter **355** is TIMING STROBE **306**. This glitch filtering circuit **360** filters STROBE **303** for the pointer path.

TIMING STROBE **306** is also coupled to the glitch filtering mechanism **360**. The logic of this circuit **360** can be designed to catch and filter out certain types of glitches in the input signal, TIMING STROBE **306** in this example. This mechanism **360** includes an inverter delay chain **361** having at total delay of τ_D. The number of inverters in the delay chain **361** can be increased and decreased to obtain the desired delay. For this embodiment, the inverter chain **361** propagates TIMING STROBE **306** through three inverters **362, 364, 366**. The output of the final inverter **366** of inverter chain **361** is connected to a second terminal of nand gate **368** and a second terminal of nor gate **376**. TIMING STROBE **306** is connected to a first terminal of nand gate **368** and a first terminal of nor gate **376**.

Logic gates **372, 380, 384** are connected together to form an R-S type latch mechanism. Node **370** can be viewed as SET#, node **378** as RESET, node **382** as RESET#, node **374** as Q, and node **386** as Q#. The output terminal **370** of nand gate **368** is connected to a first input of nand gate **372**. The output terminal **374** of nand gate **372** is fed to a first input terminal of nand gate **384**. The output terminal **378** of nor gate **376** is connected to the input terminal of inverter **380**, whose output terminal **382** is connected to a second input terminal of nand gate **384**. The output terminal **386** of nand gate **384** is fed to a second input terminal of nand gate **372**. The output terminal **386** of nand gate **384** is also connected to the input terminal of inverter **388**, whose output terminal is connected to the input of output driver **390**. The signal at the output terminal of driver **390** is POINTER STROBE **308**.

Glitch filtering circuit **360** takes an incoming signal, node **306** in this example, and filters out certain types of glitches.

The path through delay chain **361** has a delay of τ_D. The circuit **360** of this embodiment filters out transitions on the incoming signal that occur within a window of width D provided that τ_D is greater than D. Time D is the time duration of the glitch or transitions. If the incoming signal glitches or transitions, but returns to its original signal level with a certain time D, then the circuit **360** of this embodiment can filter out the glitches or movements if D is less than τ_D. The delay may be stabilized across process voltage and temperature variations using a compensated delay chain such as used in a Voltage Controlled Oscillator.

It should be noted that the filtered pointer strobe is delayed by τ_D, that may be acceptable in slower interfaces. For fast interfaces, the delay in the pointer strobe path must be matched by the timing strobe path delay.

FIG. 3D illustrates a flow chart of a method for strobe glitch protection for one embodiment. For this embodiment, a transfer clock is separated into a pointer path and a timing path at step **392**. The pointer path comprises a pointer strobe and the timing path comprises a timing strobe. At step **394**, glitches are filtered from the pointer path. The pointer path and timing path are coupled at step **396** to generate latch enable signals to latch data bits.

For alternative embodiments, such as in a serial link, the method for strobe glitch protection will be different from FIG. 3D. In a serial I/O link, a data input having a plurality of signal transitions is received. The data input comprises of data and an embedded clock. A clock signal is extracted from the data input. A timing strobe and pointer strobe are generated. A latch enable signal is in turn generated from the timing strobe and pointer strobe. The latch enable signal is used to latch data from the data input.

FIG. **4** illustrates another embodiment of a single ended source synchronous strobe and data circuit **400** including a differential voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) **415** at the receiver end of a parallel I/O link. This circuit **400** takes single ended inputs, such as DATA **402** and STROBE **403**, and converts the signals into differential signals. Hence this embodiment can be used in a singled ended implementation.

DATA signal **402** comes into the input of a single ended to differential converter **405**. Similarly, STROBE signal **403** is connected to the input of another single ended to differential converter **411**. Control signal CNTL **401** is connected to the differential converters **405**, **411** to adjust and set the delay (usually least). The signal paths and differential converters **405**, **411** on DATA **402** and STROBE **403** are matched in order to maintain the transition and timing relationships of the signals. The inverted version of DATA **402** at that output terminal **407** of differential converter **405** is connected to the FIFO latches **418**.

The two outputs (normal **419** and inverted **421**) of the strobe differential converter **411** are connected to a phase detector and filter **413** and a third differential converter **417**. The third differential converter **417** provides a 90° shifted inverted output **406** of the signals **419**, **421**. This inverted output SHIFT STROBE **406** is coupled to latch enable logic **426**, **428** in the WSM **420**.

The differential VCO **415** of this example comprises of four differential converters **430**, **432**, **434**, **436** chained together. The outputs **438**, **440** of the final stage **436** are fed back to the input terminals of the first stage **430** and also to the phase detector and filter **413**. The phase detector and filter circuit samples the outputs **419**, **421** of the strobe differential converter and the outputs **438**, **440** of the last stage **436** in the VCO **415**, and generates a control signal **404**. Control signal **404** is connected to the differential converters **430**, **432**, **434**, **436** of the VCO **415** and the strobe differential converter **417**.

For this embodiment, the differential VCO is set for accurate 90° delays. The four differential converters **430**, **432**, **434**, **436** in the VCO **415** each provide a 90° shift in the signal. POINTER STROBE **408** is tapped off at the 90° point between the first **430** and second **432** converters. POINTER STROBE **403** is coupled from the VCO **415** to pointer logic **422** in the WSM **420**. Pointer logic **422** generates a plurality of latch select signals coupled to latch enable logic **426**, **428**. Latch enable logic **426**, **428** logically and together the TIMING STROBE **406** and latch select signals to generate latch enable signals **414**, **416**. Each one of these latch enable signals **414**, **416** are used to sequentially activate a corresponding latch **418** to receive and store the shifted version **407** of DATA **402**. Further it must be noted that the write state machine and the timing path and the FIFO can be maintained differential after the single ended to differential conversion. Also the circuit shown in FIG. **4** is easily adapted to differential data and strobe signals. The single ended to differential stages **405** and **411** are replaced by differential receivers.

Not all data transfers or communications are performed over parallel I/O links having separate data and strobe lines. A serial I/O link may also be used. Serial links can be cheaper than parallel links since only one signal line is needed, and they can be faster as there is no interconnect induced skew between strobe and data. For instance, a transmission medium such as a cable link is expensive. Minimizing the number of wires needed can reduce costs.

A serial link does not have an explicit strobing clock. Serial I/O links with an embedded clock are also used to transfer data. In serial links, the latching of the data occurs using a recovered clock from the data stream. The clock recovery employs a special PLL which uses the data transitions to act as the reference. This PLL effectively isolates the data and clock jitter tracking on a cycle by cycle basis.

FIG. **5A** illustrates one embodiment of a data circuit **500** at the receiver end of a serial I/O link. This circuit **500** receives a data signal DATA **502** from a data transfer source. DATA **502** is coupled to a set of FIFO latches **518**, a PLL delay chain **510**, and a PLL **512**. This serial I/O link does not include a strobe signal. The latching edge to capture DATA **502** in the FIFO latches **518** needs to be generated from DATA **502** itself. For this embodiment, the latching clock **506** needs to include the pointer position and trigger edge. The trigger edge can be a low to high transition or a high to low transition depending on the data values. A clock can be created by including a edge to pulse converter circuit in delay chain **510** or elsewhere along the critical timing path. The critical timing path of this example traces from the delay chain **510**, along clock signal **506**, through latch enable logic **526**, **528**, and latch enables **514**, **516** to the latches **518**.

The PLL delay chain **510** of this embodiment provides a phase shift of **900** to DATA **502** and generates a clock signal **506** as a delayed version of DATA **502**. The clock signal **506** is coupled to latch enable logic **526**, **528** in the WSM **520**. The latch enable logic of this embodiment is a logic block Fn **526**, **528** able to generate select signals **514**, **516** for a serial link. The delay chain **510** of this embodiment also preserves timing jitters in DATA **502** and thus maintaining the clocking relationship between DATA **502** and clock signal **506**. Timing margin is also improved in the data latching operations.

The PLL **512** of this embodiment is designed to use the intermittent signal transitions edges of DATA **502** to latch.

The PLL **512** transforms faulty edges into a jitter term. The PLL **512** takes DATA **502** and generates a POINTER STROBE signal **508** to pointer logic in the WSM **520**. PLL **512** also provides a control signal **504** to delay chain **510**. Control signal **504** can cause the delay in the delay chain **510** to vary as needed. The pointer logic **522** generates a plurality of latch select signals **524**, which are coupled to Fn **526**, **528**. Fn **526**, **528** uses clock signal **506** and latch select signals **524** to generate latch enable signals **514**, **516**. Each one of these latch enable signals **514**, **516** are used to sequentially activate a corresponding latch **518** to receive and store DATA **502**. If there is no data edge, such as when two consecutive data bits are the same level, then the pointer strobe **508** is toggled and latch select signals **524** advanced appropriately.

FIG. **5**B illustrates one embodiment of the latch enable mechanism Fn **526** of FIG. **5**A. Input signals CLOCK **506** and SELECT **524** are coupled to Fn **526**. CLOCK **506** is connected to a first terminal of nand gate **536**, to a first terminal of or gate **540**, and to the input terminal of inverter **530**. Three inverters **530**, **532**, **534** for a delay chain. A delayed version **538** of CLOCK **506** is propagated from the output terminal of inverter **534** to a second input terminal of nand gate **536** and to a second input terminal of or gate **540**.

CLOCK signal **506** and the delayed CLOCK **538** signal are nanded together to generate CLK NAND **544**. CLOCK signal **506** and the delayed CLOCK **538** signal are ored together to generate CLK OR **542**. The output signal CLK NAND **544** from nand gate **536** is connected to an input terminal of nor gate **546**. Similarly, the output signal CLK OR **542** of or gate **540** is connected to as second input terminal of nor gate **546**. SELECT **524** is connected to a third input terminal of nor gate **546**. The output of the three input nor gate **546**, and Fn **526**, is CLK LATCH **514**. CLK LATCH **514** can be activated to enable a latch to capture data.

In the foregoing specification, the invention has been described with reference to specific exemplary embodiments thereof. It will, however, be evident that various modifications and changes may be made thereof without departing from the broader spirit and scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims. The specification and drawings are, accordingly, to be regarded in an illustrative rather than a restrictive sense.

What is claimed is:

1. A method comprising:

separating a transfer clock having a plurality of transfer clock edges into a pointer path and a timing path, wherein said pointer path and said timing path have dissimilar timing;

filtering glitches from signals on said pointer path and allowing certain glitches from said transfer clock to appear on signals on said timing path; and

coupling said pointer path and said timing path to generate latch enable signals to latch data bits.

2. The method of claim **1** wherein said timing path comprises a timing strobe, said timing strobe retaining jittering of said transfer clock.

3. The method of claim **1** wherein said pointer path comprises a pointer strobe.

4. The method of claim **3** wherein said pointer strobe activates latch enable logic.

5. The method of claim **1** further comprising generating a clock signal for said pointer path.

6. The method of claim **1** further comprising delaying propagation of said transfer clock to said timing path.

7. An apparatus comprising:

a strobe glitch protection mechanism configured to receive a strobe signal, said glitch protection mechanism further configured to provide a timing strobe and a pointer strobe, said timing strobe to include timing information from said strobe signal, and said pointer strobe to be filtered of one or more glitch on said strobe signal; and

a state machine coupled to said strobe glitch protection mechanism, said state machine configured to receive said timing strobe and said pointer strobe, and to generate a latch enable signal based on said timing strobe and said pointer strobe.

8. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said glitch protection mechanism comprises a phased locked loop to generate a pointer strobe.

9. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said glitch protection mechanism comprises a delay mechanism to generate a timing strobe.

10. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said glitch protection mechanism comprises a glitch filter mechanism to remove glitches having a duration less than a set time limit on said strobe signal.

11. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said pointer strobe is rotated 90° relative to said strobe signal.

12. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said timing strobe is rotated 90° relative to said strobe signal and retains jittering of said strobe signal.

13. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said strobe glitch mechanism splits said strobe signal into a timing path and a pointer path.

14. The apparatus of claim **7** further comprising a latch mechanism coupled to said state machine.

15. The apparatus of claim **7** wherein said latch enable signal is used latch data bits.

16. An integrated circuit device comprising:

a data input configured to receive data bits;

a strobe input configured to receive a strobe signal;

a circuit coupled to said data input and said strobe input, said circuit to configured to receive data from an I/O link, said circuit comprising:

a strobe glitch protection mechanism to receive a strobe signal, said glitch protection mechanism configured to provide a timing strobe and a pointer strobe, said timing strobe including timing information from said strobe signal, and said pointer strobe filtered of one or more glitch appearing on said strobe signal;

a state machine coupled to said strobe glitch protection mechanism, said state machine configured to receive said timing strobe and said pointer strobe, and to generate a latch enable signal based on said timing strobe and said pointer strobe; and

a latch mechanism coupled to said write state machine, said latch mechanism configured to receive a plurality of data bits and said latch enable signal, said latch mechanism to latch said data bits in accordance with said latch enable signal.

17. The integrated circuit device of claim **16** wherein said integrated circuit device is a processor.

18. The integrated circuit device of claim **16** wherein said integrated circuit device is a firmware hub.

19. The integrated circuit device of claim **16** wherein said integrated circuit device is a memory device.

20. A system comprising:

a system bus, said bus configured to propagate data bits and a clock signal;

an I/O interface coupled to said system bus;

a component coupled to said system bus, said component to receive data from an I/O link during a data transfer, said component comprising:

a strobe glitch protection mechanism configured to receive a strobe signal, said glitch protection mechanism further configured to provide a timing strobe and a pointer strobe, said timing strobe to include timing information from said strobe signal, and said pointer strobe to be filtered of one or more type of glitch on said strobe signal;

a state machine coupled to said strobe glitch protection mechanism, said state machine configured to receive said timing strobe and said pointer strobe, and to generate a latch enable signal based on said timing strobe and said pointer strobe;

a latch mechanism coupled to said write state machine, said latch mechanism configured to receive a plurality of data bits and said latch enable signal, said latch mechanism to latch said data bits in accordance with said latch enable signal.

21. The system of claim **20** wherein said timing strobe retains jittering of said strobe signal.

22. The system of claim **20** wherein glitches are filtered from said pointer strobe.

23. The system of claim **20** wherein said strobe glitch mechanism splits said strobe signal into a timing path and a pointer path.

24. The system of claim **20** wherein said I/O interface is coupled to data transfer source.

25. A method comprising:

receiving a data input having a plurality of signal transitions, said data input comprising data and an embedded clock;

extracting a clock signal from said data input and generating a timing strobe and a pointer strobe, said timing strobe to include timing information from said strobe signal, and said pointer strobe to be filtered of at least one type of glitch on said strobe signal;

generating a latch enable signal from said timing strobe and said pointer strobe; and

using said latch enable signal to latch said data from said data input.

26. The method of claim **25** wherein said timing strobe retains jitters of said data input.

27. The method of claim **25** wherein said timing strobe is a delayed version of said data input.

28. The method of claim **25** wherein said pointer strobe controls activation of latching.

29. A method comprising:

separating a strobe signal into a pointer strobe on a pointer path and a timing strobe on a timing path, said pointer strobe filtered of one or more strobe glitches that appear on said strobe signal, said timing strobe unfiltered of said strobe glitches and retaining timing information and jitter from said strobe signal;

generating a select signal in response to said pointer strobe, said select signal to select one of a plurality of data latches;

generating a latch enable signal in response to said timing strobe for said selected data latch, said latch enable signal to activate said data latch to capture data.

30. The method of claim **29** further comprising receiving said pointer strobe at a write state machine, said write state machine to sequentially activate and deactivate select signals in response to transitions on said pointer strobe.

31. The method of claim **30** further comprising receiving said timing strobe at latch enable logic, said latch enable logic to provide a latch pulse to selected data latch based on a logical combination of said select signals and said timing strobe.

32. The method of claim **31** wherein said pointer strobe and said timing strobe are dissimilar versions of said strobe signal.

33. The method of claim **32** wherein said pointer strobe and said timing strobe have dissimilar signal timing.

* * * * *

United States Patent [19]

Agoston

[11] **Patent Number: 4,678,345**

[45] **Date of Patent: Jul. 7, 1987**

[54] **EQUIVALENT TIME PSEUDORANDOM SAMPLING SYSTEM**

[75] Inventor: Agoston Agoston, Beaverton, Oreg.

[73] Assignee: Tektronix, Inc., Beaverton, Oreg.

[21] Appl. No.: 858,424

[22] Filed: May 1, 1986

[51] Int. Cl.[4] G04F 8/00; G03K 21/32

[52] U.S. Cl. ..... 368/119; 368/120; 377/20; 324/77 R

[58] Field of Search ..... 368/113, 118-120; 324/77 R, 77 A, 77 C; 307/516; 364/484, 487; 377/19, 20

[56] **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,164,648	8/1979	Chu	368/118 X
4,165,459	8/1979	Curtice	368/119
4,383,166	5/1983	Chu et al.	377/20
4,507,740	3/1985	Star et al.	324/77 R

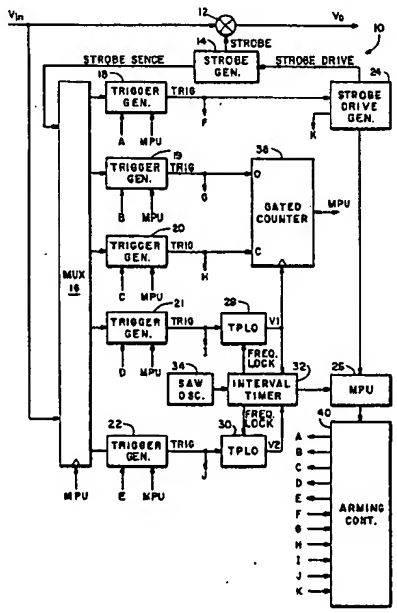
Primary Examiner—Vit W. Miska

Attorney, Agent, or Firm—John Smith-Hill; George T. Noe

[57] **ABSTRACT**

An equivalent time pseudorandom sampling system samples a repetitive waveform within each of several narrow acquisition windows bounding repetitive sections of the waveform in order to obtain equivalent time sample data characterizing the shape of the waveform included within the acquisition windows. The period between successive triggering events is measured and sampling is delayed following an initiating triggering event by delay time adjusted according to the measured period so as to maximize the probability that sampling will occur within an acquisition window. The time difference between samples and subsequent triggering event is measured with high accuracy and resolution utilizing a time interval measurement system based on a dual vernier interpolation.

13 Claims, 6 Drawing Figures



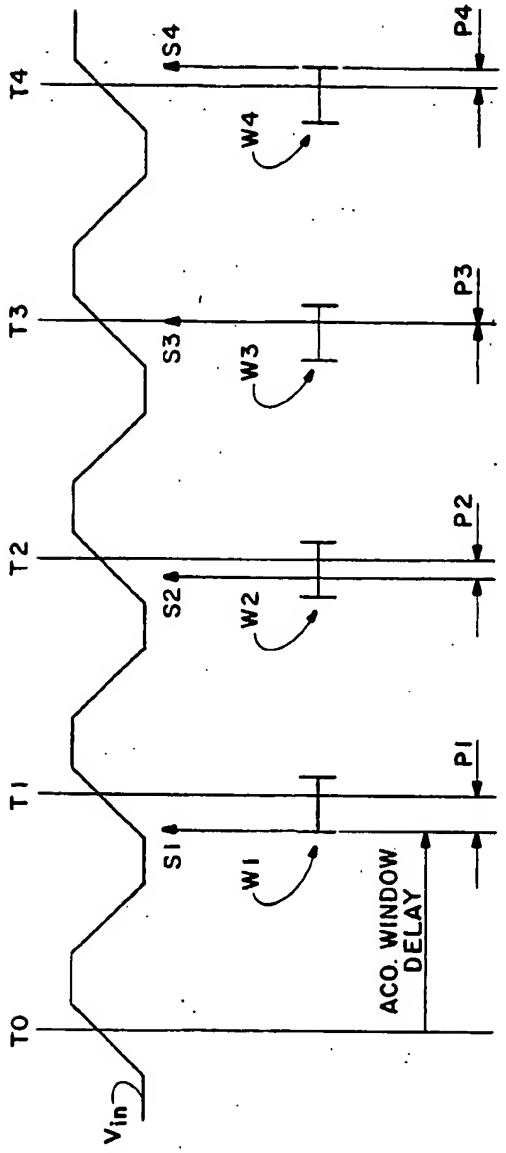

T4
T3
T2
T1
T0
S4
S3
S2
S1
W4
W3
W2
W1
P4
P3
P2
P1
ACQ. WINDOW DELAY
V_{in}

FIG. 1

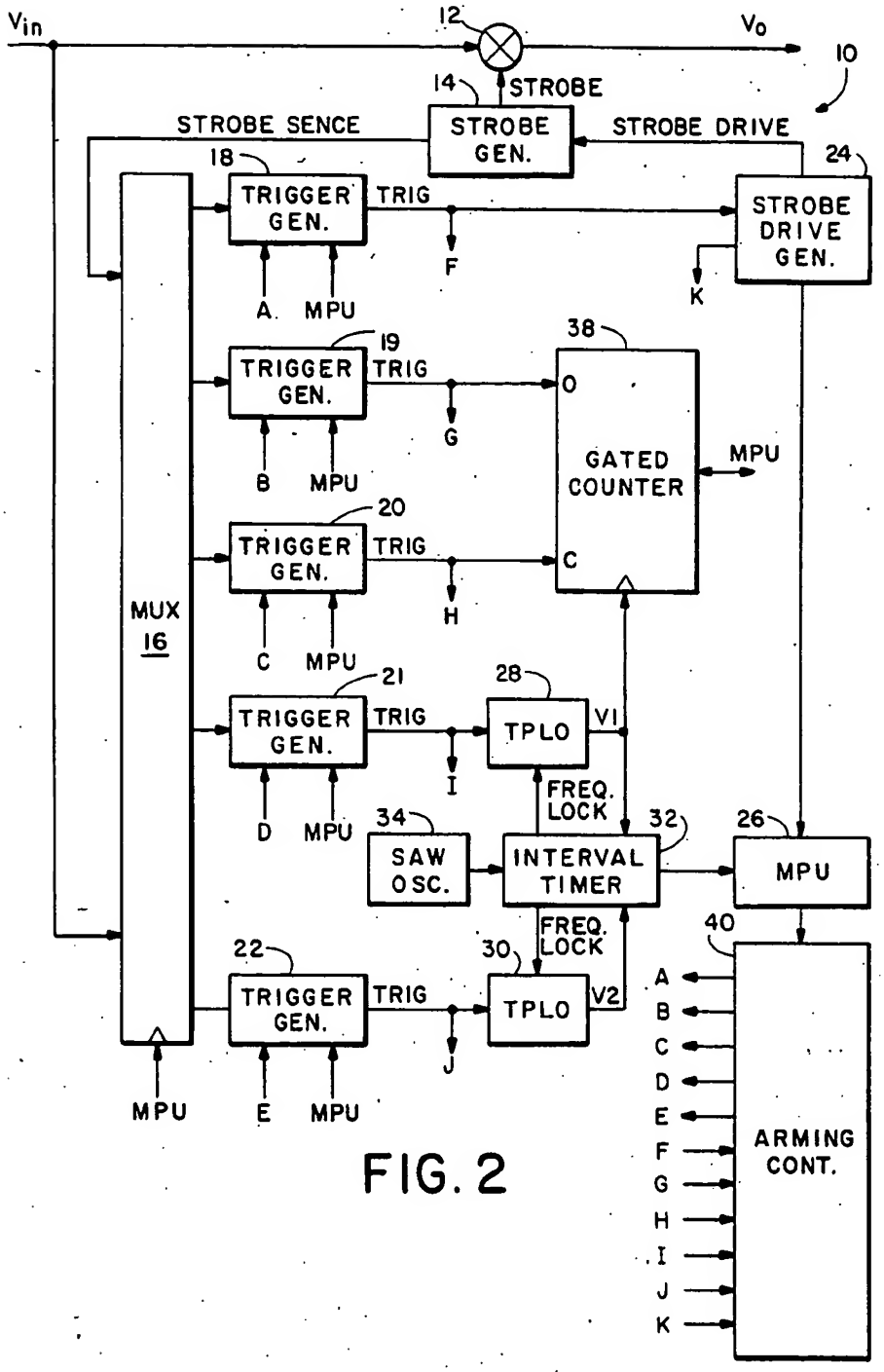

Vin
12
Vo
10
14
STROBE
STROBE SENCE
STROBE GEN.
STROBE DRIVE
24
18
TRIGGER GEN.
TRIG
STROBE DRIVE GEN.
F
K
A
MPU
19
38
TRIGGER GEN.
TRIG
0
G
GATED COUNTER
MPU
B
MPU
20
TRIGGER GEN.
TRIG
C
MUX 16
H
C
MPU
21
28
TRIGGER GEN.
TRIG
TPLO
VI
I
FREQ. LOCK
D
MPU
34
32
26
SAW OSC.
INTERVAL TIMER
MPU
FREQ. LOCK
40
22
30
TRIGGER GEN.
TRIG
TPLO
V2
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
J
ARMING CONT.
MPU
E
MPU

FIG. 2

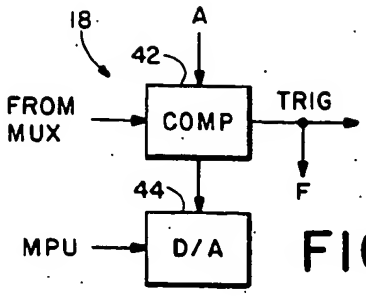

18
A
42
FROM MUX
COMP
TRIG
F
44
MPU
D/A

FIG. 3

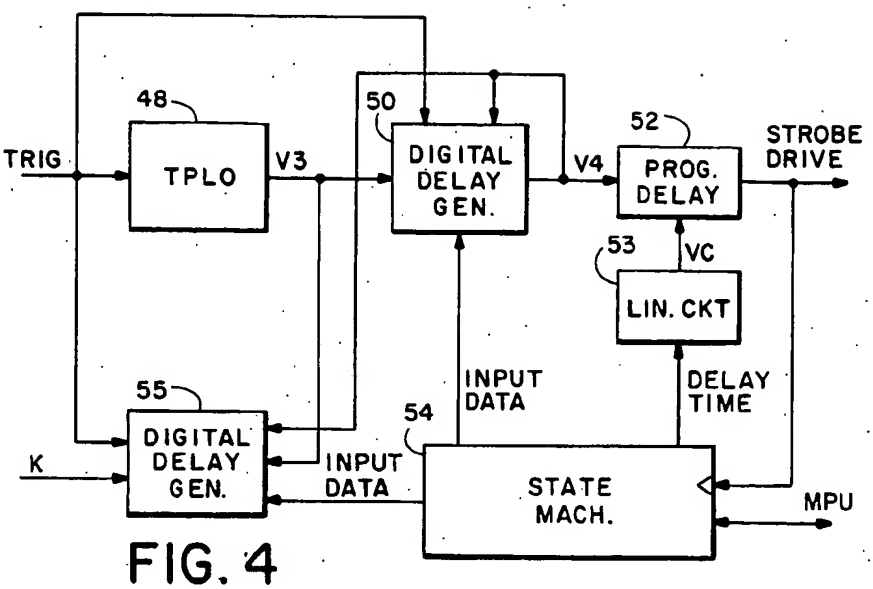

48
TRIG
TPLO
V3
50
DIGITAL DELAY GEN.
V4
52
PROG. DELAY
STROBE DRIVE
53
VC
LIN. CKT
55
DIGITAL DELAY GEN.
K
INPUT DATA
54
INPUT DATA
DELAY TIME
STATE MACH.
MPU

FIG. 4

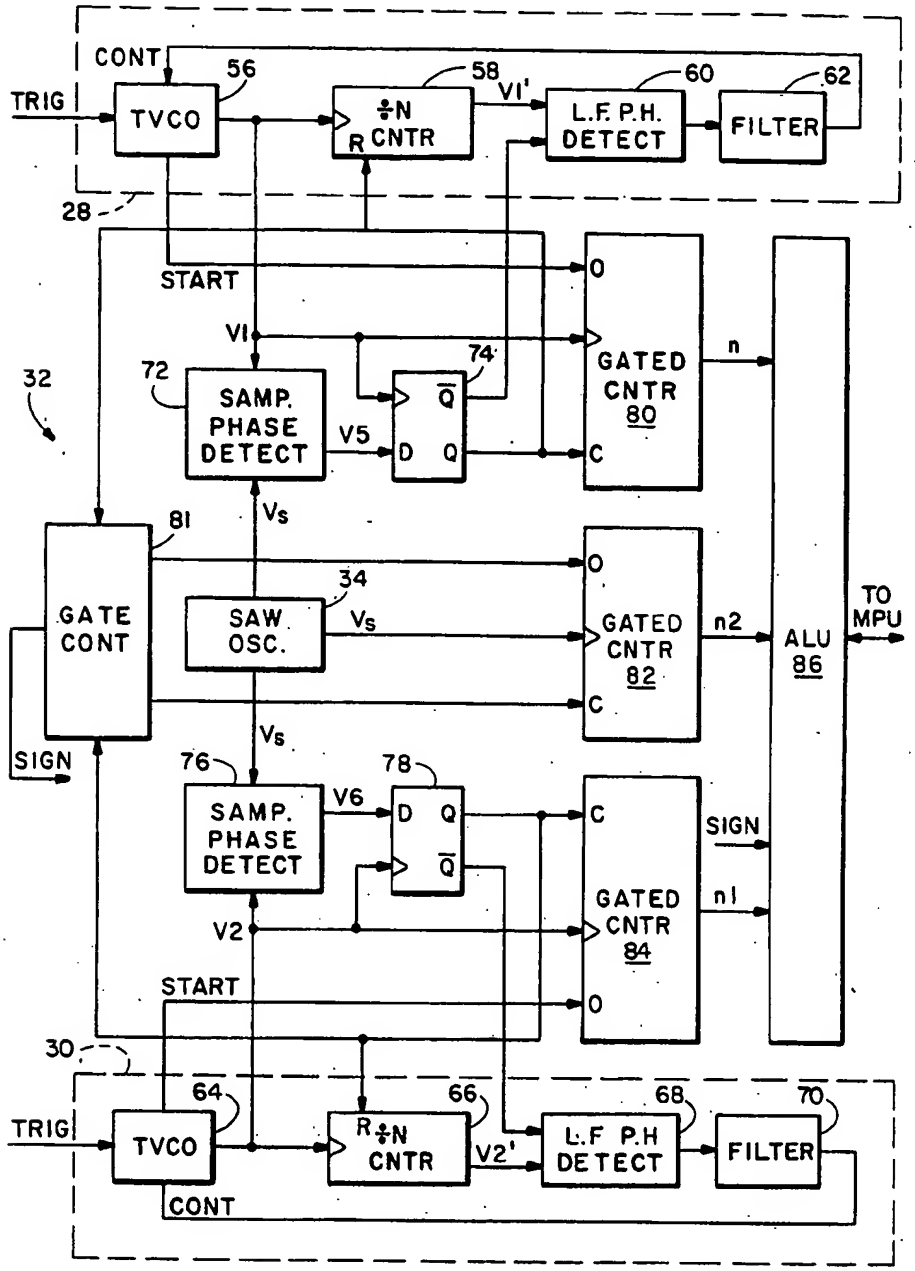

CONT
TRIG
TVCO
56
÷N
R CNTR
58
VI'
L.F. P.H. DETECT
60
FILTER
62
28
START
VI
72
SAMP. PHASE DETECT
V5
74
Q
D Q
0
GATED CNTR 80
C
n
32
81
GATE CONT
Vs
34
SAW OSC.
GATED CNTR 82
n2
ALU 86
TO MPU
SIGN
76
SAMP. PHASE DETECT
V6
78
D Q
Q
C
SIGN
GATED CNTR 84
n1
V2
START
0
30
64
TRIG
TVCO
R ÷N CNTR
66
V2'
L.F P.H DETECT
68
FILTER
70
CONT

FIG. 5

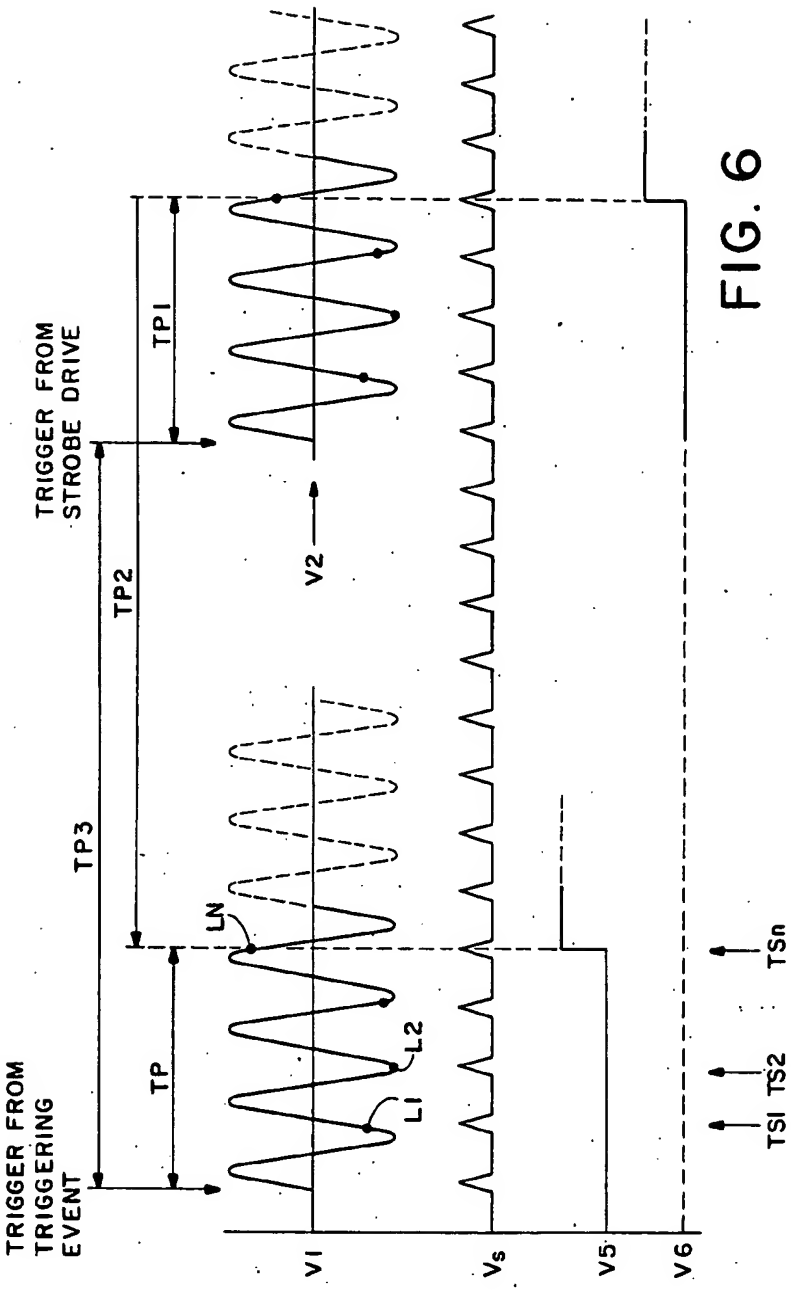

TRIGGER FROM STROBE DRIVE
TRIGGER FROM TRIGGERING EVENT
TP1
TP2
TP3
TP
V2
LN
L2
L1
V1
Vs
V5
V6
TSn
TS1 TS2

FIG. 6

EQUIVALENT TIME PSEUDORANDOM SAMPLING SYSTEM

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates in general to waveform sampling systems and more particularly to a pseudorandom sampling system wherein a repetitive waveform is sampled at a predetermined time following a triggering event in a waveform and wherein the time interval between the sample and a subsequent triggering event is accurately measured.

A typical waveform sampling system repetitively strobes a sampling gate to sample a waveform at several points and the analog samples obtained are converted into digital data and stored in memory. In order to accurately characterize the shape of a sampled waveform, sample data should convey not only the magnitude of each waveform sample but the relative timing of each sample with respect to a triggering event (such as a zero crossing) in the waveform. Sequential and random sampling systems each provide timing information in a different way. Sequential sampling systems typically sample the waveform at predetermined regular time intervals following a triggering event in the waveform being sampled. The sampled waveform magnitude data is stored in memory in the order that it is acquired and since the sample timing is regular and predetermined, the position of the sample data in the memory is indicative of relative timing. In random sampling systems, sampling strobe signals are not synchronized to triggering events in the waveform and therefore the timing of each sampling strobe is "random" with respect to triggering events and not predetermined. Thus in random sampling systems it is necessary to measure the time interval between each sample and a triggering event in the waveform in order to determine the relative timing of each sample. The measured timing data is stored in memory along with the sampled waveform magnitude data.

Sampling systems are also characterized as to whether they perform real time or equivalent time sampling. In real time sampling systems a single section of a waveform is sampled and the resolution of the sampling, i.e., the maximum time between samples, depends entirely on the sampling frequency. Real time sampling is most suitable for non-repetitive or relatively low frequency periodic waveforms.

The equivalent time sampling method is used to obtain data characterizing a repeating section of a relatively high frequency, repetitive waveform. In equivalent time sampling, the waveform is sampled one or more times during each of several successive "acquisition windows", each acquisition window comprising a time period bounding a different repetition of the particular section of the waveform to be sampled. In sequential equivalent time sampling systems, a repetitive triggering event in the waveform occurring at some known time with respect to each acquisition window initiates sampling during each acquisition window. The initiation of sampling is delayed by differing predetermined times after each triggering event so that sampling occurs at different relative times within each acquisition window. The sample data is then ordered according to the relative sampling time within an acquisition window rather than according to the actual order in which the sample data was acquired. In random equivalent time sampling systems, sampling times and triggering events are not synchronized but the time interval between samples within each acquisition window and a triggering event associated with the window is measured.

The resolution of sequential sampling systems depends on the resolution in control over sample timing delay while the resolution of random sampling systems depends on the resolution in measurement of the time differences between sampling strobes and triggering events. In sequential equivalent time sampling the timing of each sample is predetermined and there is essentially a one hundred percent probability that each sample will be taken within an acquisition window. However in random equivalent time sampling systems, the timing of each sample is not predetermined and many samples may be taken outside the intended acquisition window and must be discarded. The controllability of sample timing within an acquisition window afforded by sequential sampling permits samples to be taken at evenly spaced relative times within the acquisition windows such that a minimum number of samples are required to obtain a given resolution while in random sampling systems samples are not necessarily evenly spaced and more samples must be taken in order to achieve the same degree of resolution. Therefore when the sampling frequency for random and sequential equivalent time sampling is comparable, the random sampling method requires more time to achieve a desired degree of sampling resolution than sequential sampling.

Due to practical limitations of sequential sampling strobe drive circuitry, a triggering event must precede an acquisition window by a certain amount of time. If the triggering event is in the acquisition window, samples cannot be taken before the triggering event and therefore the entire window cannot be sampled. A triggering event occurring during one acquisition window may be utilized to trigger sampling for a subsequent acquisition window. However in such systems waveform "jitter" reduces sampling accuracy. Not all repetitive waveforms are periodic since the time between repetitive waveform sections in "jittery" waveforms may vary and the sample timing within an acquisition window may vary from expectations if the triggering event occurs outside the acquisition window. Consequently, in many equivalent time sequential sampling systems the sampled waveform is delayed following trigger pickoff, before being applied to the sampling gate, so that a triggering event within an acquisition window may be utilized to trigger sampling over the full range of the sample of the acquisition window. However, delay circuits may distort some waveforms to an intolerable degree and must be periodically measured to ensure that the delay time is accurately known.

What is needed is a method and apparatus for sampling a waveform with high resolution and high speed which is not subject to error due to waveform jitter and which does not require the delay of the waveform being sampled.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with one aspect of the invention an equivalent time pseudorandom sampling system samples a repetitive waveform within each of several narrow acquisition windows positioned at similar times with respect to similar triggering events along the waveform in order to obtain equivalent time sample data characterizing the shape of a waveform section

included within each acquisition window. The period between successive triggering events is measured and sampling is delayed following an initiating triggering event by a delay time which is adjusted according to the measured period between triggering events so as to maximize the probability that sampling will occur within an acquisition window. The time difference between each sample and a triggering event within or near the acquisition window bounding the sample is then measured in order to accurately determine the timing of the sample with respect to the triggering event. The equivalent time pseudorandom sampling system of the present invention improves the data acquisition speed over prior art equivalent time random sampling systems by maximizing the number of samples taken within an acquisition window. The effect of waveform jitter is reduced by accurately measuring sample timing with respect to triggering events and there is no need to delay the waveform between trigger pickoff and sampling.

In accordance with another aspect of the invention, the relative timing within an acquisition window of each successive sample is delayed by regularly increasing time intervals so that samples are taken at substantially evenly spaced relative times within the acquisition windows, thereby minimizing the number of samples required to achieve a given sampling resolution.

In accordance with another aspect of the invention, the time intervals between waveform samples and triggering events are measured with high accuracy utilizing a novel time interval measurement system based on dual vernier interpolation. The strobe and triggering events each trigger the periodic output signal of a separate triggerable oscillator, each operating at a frequency differing slightly from the frequency of a surface acoustic wave (SAW) generator which periodically produces a reference signal. The triggering of one triggerable oscillator starts a count of the SAW generator output signals while the triggering of the other triggerable oscillator stops the count. The completed count is thus a gross measurement of the time interval between the strobe and the trigger. The phase differences between the first SAW strobe signal counted and the triggering of the first oscillator and between the last SAW strobe signal counted and the triggering of the second oscillator are also measured and used to finely adjust the measured time interval between the triggering events and strobe signals.

It is accordingly an object of the invention to provide an new and improved pseudorandom equivalent time waveform sampling system capable of sampling high speed repetitive waveforms with high accuracy, high resolution and high speed.

The subject matter of the present invention is particularly pointed out and distinctly claimed in the concluding portion of this specification. However, both the organization and method of operation, together with further advantages and objects thereof, may best be understood by reference to the following description taken in connection with accompanying drawings, wherein like reference characters refer to like elements.

DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows a timing diagram depicting the operation of the equivalent time pseudorandom time sampling system according to the present invention;

FIG. 2 is a block diagram of the equivalent time pseudorandom time sampling system according to the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a block diagram of a typical trigger generator of the sampling system of FIG. 2;

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of the strobe drive generator circuit of FIG. 2;

FIG. 5 is a block diagram showing the phase locked oscillators and the interval timer of FIG. 2 in more detail; and

FIG. 6 shows a timing diagram of the operation of the phase detectors of FIG. 5.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

FIG. 1 shows a timing diagram illustrating equivalent time pseudorandom sampling according to the present invention. A repetitive input waveform Vin is sampled during each of four successive acquisition windows (W1-W4), each coinciding with a separate instance of a repetitive section of the input waveform. Each of four waveform samples is initiated by one of a sequence of four sampling strobes (S1-S4). In the example of FIG. 1, strobe S1 occurs at the beginning of acquisition window W1, strobe S2 occurs after the beginning of acquisition window W2 (about one-third of the time through the window), strobe S3 occurs within window W3 (about two-thirds of the time through the window), and strobe S4 occurs at the end of acquisition window W4. If each waveform sample is converted into a representative digital quantity and stored in memory, the stored data can be utilized to recreate the approximate shape of the waveform section within the acquisition windows, provided that the relative timing of each sample within a acquisition window is known. Accordingly the times (P1-P4) between each strobe signal S1-S4 and a corresponding triggering event T1-T4 (such as a zero crossing in the input waveform) occurring within or near the same acquisition window as the corresponding strobe signal is measured. This measured time interval may also be stored in memory along with the waveform magnitude data, and when the magnitude and timing data are displayed as dots on a screen with each dot having a vertical elevation proportional to the corresponding sample magnitude data and a horizontal position proportional to the measured timing data, the result approximates the shape of the waveform during the acquisition window.

The strobe signals are initiated in delayed response to a triggering event. For instance, strobe signal S1 is initiated in responde to a triggering event T0 occurring in the input waveform Vin during a cycle of the waveform preceding acquisition window W1. Similarly, strobe signal S2 is generated in delayed response to triggering event T1, strobe S3 is generated in response to triggering event T2 and strobe S4 is generated in response to triggering event T3. According to the present invention, the delay between a triggering event and the strobe that it initiates is adjusted so that the strobe is most likely to occur within the corresponding sampling window and so that the position of each successive strobe is progressively delayed by a regular amount of time with respect to the triggering event. In order to determine the acquisition window delay time, i.e., the time between a triggering event and the next section of the waveform to be sampled, the period between triggering events (not shown) occurring before triggering event T0 is measured and used as a predictor of when triggering events T1-T4 will occur with respect to

triggering event T0. The delay times between triggering events T0-T3 and strobe signals S1-S4, respectively, are then adjusted so that strobe signals S1-S4 are generated at predetermined, regularly incremented times with respect to the predicted timing of corresponding triggering events T1-T4. Although for simplicity the example of FIG. 1 shows only four strobes, many more samples may be taken, the relative sampling times of successive samples being progressively increased by smaller amounts to provide higher sampling resolution.

The use of the premeasured time interval between prior triggering events as a predictor of the time interval between subsequent triggering events enables strobe signal timing to be controlled so as to maximize the probability that each strobe signal will be generated within an acquisition window, even when the acquisition window is relatively narrow. By subsequently measuring the actual time interval between each strobe signal and a triggering event within or near the acquisition window to determine the actual timing of each strobe, the effect of input waveform jitter on sampling accuracy is minimized.

Referring to FIG. 2, depicting in block diagram form the equivalent time pseudorandom sampling system 10 according to the present invention, sampling system 10 includes a sampling gate 12 for sampling the input waveform Vin on each occurrence of a strobe signal in order to produce an output voltage sample Vo. The strobe signal is generated by a strobe generator 14 in response to an input strobe drive signal. At the same time, strobe generator 14 also generates a strobe sense signal which is applied as an input to a multiplexer 16. The Vin signal is also provided to another input of multiplexer 16. Multiplexer 16 has five outputs, each connected to a separate trigger generator 18-22, and the multiplexer is adapted to selectively connect any one of its inputs to any one or more of the trigger generators.

The triggering event recognized by trigger generators 18-22 is the crossing of a predetermined level by an input waveform, the level being determined by data supplied by microprocessor 26. When generator 18 produces an output trigger signal in response to a triggering event in an input signal from multiplexer 16, its output trigger signal is transmitted to a strobe drive generator 24. After a predetermined delay time following the trigger signal produced by trigger generator 18, strobe drive generator 24 produces the strobe drive signal which initiates operation of the strobe generator 14.

When trigger generator 21 produces an output trigger signal in response to a predetermined triggering event in its input signal, this trigger signal triggers a triggered phase-locked oscillator (TPLO) 28. On receipt of the trigger signal from trigger generator 21, TPLO 28 stops and restarts its periodic output signal V1 such the the V1 signal is synchronized to the trigger signal. The trigger signal output of trigger generator 22 is applied as a triggering input to another TPLO 30 which also stops and restarts is periodic output signal V2 in response to the triggering input. The V1 output signal of TPLO 28 and the V2 output signal of TPLO 30 are applied as inputs to an interval timer circuit 32 adapted to measure the time interval between the restarting of the V1 and V2 signals and to provide data indicating the measured time intervals to a microprocessor (MPU) 26. A surface acoustic wave (SAW) oscillator 34 provides a reference signal which interval timer circuit 32 utilizes when determining the time interval between the triggering of TPLO 28 and TPLO 30. The interval timer circuit also provides signals which frequency lock the V1 and V2 signals to predetermined frequencies using the SAW oscillator 34 frequency as a reference.

The trigger signal outputs of trigger generators 19 and 20 are connected to gate open (O) and gate close (C) inputs of a gated counter 38. Counter 38 counts the cycles of the output signal V1 from TPLO 28 which occur after the trigger signal produced by trigger generator 19 and before the trigger signal produced by trigger generator 20. The count data is then provided to microprocessor 26.

Each trigger generator 18-22 is armed by a signal from an arming controller 40, suitably comprising a state machine programmed by data from microprocessor 26, and each trigger generator 18-22 transmits an indicating signal to arming controller 40 whenever it detects a triggering event.

In order to measure the period between successive triggering events in the Vin waveform, microprocessor 26 switches multiplexer 16 so that it supplies the Vin waveform as input to both trigger generators 19 and 20 and programs arming controller 40 to alternately arm trigger generators 19 and 20. After trigger generator 19 detects a triggering event in the Vin waveform, it generates its trigger signal output to start the count of cycles of the V1 output signal of TPLO 28 by period counter 38. Trigger generator 19 also transmits a signal to the arming controller 40 indicating that the triggering event has been recognized. In response to the indicating signal, the arming controller 40 immediately disarms trigger generator 19 and arms trigger generator 20 so that trigger generator 20 generates its output trigger signal on detection of the next triggering event in the Vin waveform in order to stop the count of period counter 38. When the trigger generator 20 transmits its indicating signal back to the arming controller 40, the arming controller sends a signal to the microprocessor telling it that it may read and reset the count in period counter 38. The period between the successive triggering events can be determined by dividing the count by the frequency of the V1 signal output of TPLO 28.

The microprocessor 26 then utilizes the measured period data when setting the delays between the trigger output of trigger generator 18 and the strobe drive signal produced by strobe drive generator 24 so as to properly time the strobe signals applied to the sampling gate 12. The microprocessor also supplies count limit data to each trigger generator 18-20 which tells the trigger generator to initiate a trigger signal only after a predetermined number of trigger signals have been generated. Thus, for instance, if trigger generator 20 is told to initiate a trigger only after detecting 10 trigger signals, the resulting count produced by counter 38 can be used to determine an average period between triggering events. The use of of an averaging measurement is preferable when the input waveform is subject to random jitter.

Prior to an equivalent time pseudorandom sampling operation, microprocessor 26 sets trigger generator 21 to detect a predetermined triggering event in the Vin waveform and sets trigger generator 22 to detect the occurrence of the strobe sense signal produced by strobe generator 14 so that interval timer 32 measures the time intervals between triggering events and strobe sense signals. Referring to both FIGS. 1 and 2, the

initial triggering event T0 causes trigger generator 18 to transmit its output trigger signal to stribe drive generator 24 which produces a strobe drive signal at a predetermined delay time following the trigger signal, the delay time being predetermined by data previously supplied to the strobe drive generator 24 by the microprocessor 26. The strobe drive signal causes the strobe generator 14 to generate strobe signal S1 along with a strobe sense signal. The strobe sense signal is transmitted through multiplexer 16 to the trigger generator 22 which causes trigger generator 22 to trigger (stop and restart) the output of TPLO 30. When the output signal V2 of TPLO 30 is triggered, interval timer 32 begins an interval measurement. On detection of triggering event T1, trigger generator 21 produces its output trigger signal which triggers the V1 output signal of TPLO 28 thereby marking the end of the interval measured by interval timer 32. Thus the interval timer 32 measures the time interval P1 of FIG. 1 between the strobe signal S1 and the triggering event T1.

The triggering event T1 also causes trigger generator 18 to produce another trigger signal provided to strobe drive generator 24 causing strobe drive generator 24 to produce a second strobe drive signal in order to initiate strobe signal S2. The timing between triggering event T1 and strobe signal S2 is also determined by data previously provided to the strobe drive generator 24 by the microprocessor 26. When strobe generator 14 produces strobe signal S2 it produces a second strobe sense signal which is transmitted through multiplexer 16 to trigger generator 22 thereby causing trigger generator 22 to initiate a second triggering signal, retriggering the TPLO 30, and starting another time interval measurement. When trigger generator 21 detects triggering event T2, it retriggers TPLO 28 to mark the end of the interval measured by interval timer 32. Thus the output of interval timer 32 now represents the period P2 between the strobe signal S2 and the triggering event T2. The process continues such that the interval timer 32 successively measures the period P3 between the strobe signal S3 and event T3 and the period P4 between the event T4 and the strobe signal S4. The interval timer 32 is adapted to measure the interval between the initiation of V1 and V2 regardless of which signal is initiated first. Therefore in the case of period P4 between the triggering event T4 and the strobe signal S4, the triggering of TPLO 28 initiates interval measurement while the triggering of TPLO 30 in response to the strobe sense signal terminates the interval measurement.

Referring to FIG. 3, depicting in more detailed block diagram form trigger generator 18 of FIG. 2, the trigger generator includes a comparator 42 for producing an output pulse the first time the magnitude of the output signal from the multiplexer 16 of FIG. 2 rises above an output signal of a digital-to-analog converter 44 following receipt of an arming signal A from the arming controller 40 of FIG. 2. The magnitude of the output signal of converter 44 is determined by data from the microprocessor 26 of FIG. 2. The trigger signal output of comparator 42 is applied as an input F to the arming controller 40 of FIG. 2. Trigger generators 19-22 are similar to trigger generator 18 of FIG. 3.

A strobe drive circuit suitable for use as strobe drive generator 24 of FIG. 2 is described in detail in co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 06/858,490 filed Apr. 30, 1986. Referring to FIG. 4, depicting in more detailed block diagram form the strobe drive generator 24 of FIG. 2, strobe drive generator 24 includes a triggered phase-locked oscillator (TPLO) 48 which stops and restarts a periodic output signal V3 when triggered by a trigger signal produced by trigger generator 18 of FIG. 2. The trigger signal is also applied to an enable input of a low jitter digital delay generator 50 similar to a delay generator described in copending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 06/845,282 filed Mar. 28, 1986. The V3 output signal of TPLO 48 is applied to a count input of delay circuit 50 and when the trigger signal is asserted, the delay circuit begins decrementing a prestored number, the number being decremented by one on each cycle of the V3 signal. When the stored number reaches zero, the delay circuit 50 outputs a pulse V4 to a programmable delay circuit 52. Delay circuit 52 delays the V4 pulse by a delay time determined by an applied control voltage Vc in order to produce the strobe drive output signal of the strobe drive generator 24. The V4 pulse is also fed back to a data load input of delay generator 50 which causes delay generator 50 to stop counting and to load a new number for starting a new count down when enabled by the next occurrence of a trigger signal.

The input data for the delay generator 50 and the predetermined delay time of programmable delay circuit 52 are controlled by data from the state machine 54 which is clocked by the strobe drive signal. The delay time data output of state machine 54 is converted to the control voltage Vc by a linearizing circuit 53 adapted to linearize changes in time delay of delay circuit 52 with respect to changes in delay time data provided by state machine 54. A circuit suitable for use as programmable delay circuit 52 is described in co-pending patent application Ser. No. 06/846,320 filed Mar. 31, 1986 and a circuit suitable for use as linearizing circuit 53 is described in co-pending patent application Ser. No. 06/846,319 filed Mar. 31, 1986.

The input data applied to delay generator 50 grossly adjusts strobe delay while the delay time data transmitted to linearizing circuit 53 finely adjusts the strobe delay. Prior to a sampling operation, but after determining the nominal period between successive triggering events, microprocessor 26 of FIG. 2 programs state machine 54 to properly adjust the delays between successive trigger signals and the output strobe drive signal. In the example illustrated in FIG. 1, state machine 54 is programmed to step through four separate states, one for each strobe signal. While in a first state, state machine 54 generates delay control data sufficient to provide the appropriate delay between triggering event T0 in the input waveform Vin and the strobe signal S1. When the strobe drive signal initiating strobe signal S1 is generated by the programmable delay circuit 52, the strobe drive signal switches the state machine 54 to a second state in which the data output of the state machine increases the delay between the trigger and strobe drive signal to the interval required between triggering event T1 and strobe signal S2 as shown in FIG. 1. When the strobe drive signal initiating strobe signal S2 is produced, state machine 54 switches to a third state wherein the delay is increased once again to the time interval required between triggering event T3 and strobe signal S4 of FIG. 1. When the last strobe drive signal is generated, state machine 54 transmits a signal back to microprocessor 26 indicating the end of a sampling cycle.

The periodic output signal V3 of the TPLO 48 is also applied to the count input of another digital delay generator 55, similar to delay generator 50. The trigger

signal and the V4 signal are also applied to the count enable and data load control inputs of delay generator 55 and the state machine 54 also supplies input data to delay generator 55. When a V4 pulse is generated, delay generator 55 stores input data from state machine 54 and, when subsequently enabled by the trigger signal, begins decrementing the stored input data by one on each cycle of the V3 signal. When the stored input data is decremented to zero, delay generator transmits an indicating signal K to the arming controller 40 of FIG. 2. The arming controller then transmits an arming signal A to the trigger generator 18 of FIG. 2, which permits the trigger generator to produce another trigger signal on occurrence of the next triggering event. The input data provided to delay generator 55 is adjusted to prevent trigger generator 18 from retriggering the TPLO 48 until a strobe drive signal has been generated in response to the last trigger signal. This feature is necessary when a very high frequency waveform is being sampled and not every triggering event is to initiate a sampling strobe.

Referring to FIG. 5 depicting in more detailed block diagram form the triggered phase-locked oscillators 28 and 30 and the interval timer circuit 32 of FIG. 2, TPLO 28 includes a triggered, voltage-controlled oscillator (TVCO) 56, a divide-by-N counter 58, low frequency phase detector 60, and a filter circuit 62. The trigger signal from the trigger generator 21 of FIG. 2 triggers TVCO 56 which stops and restarts the V1 output signal of the TPLO 28 so as to synchronize the V1 signal to the trigger signal. The V1 output signal clocks the divide-by-N counter 58 which produces an output signal V1' lower in frequency than V1 by a factor of N. The V1' signal is applied to the reference input of the low frequency phase detector 60 which produces an output signal equal to the difference in magnitude between the V1' signal and the frequency locking signal produced by the interval timer circuit 32. The output signal of the low frequency phase detector 60 is integrated by filter 62 and then applied to TVCO 56 as its frequency controlling voltage.

The V1 signal output of TVCO 56 and the output signal of SAW oscillator are applied as inputs to a sampling phase detection circuit 72. A circuit suitable for use as phase detector circuit 72 is described in detail in co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 06/858,428 filed May 1, 1986 and a circuit suitable for use as saw oscillator 34 is described in detail in co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 06/858,485 filed Apr. 30, 1986. Phase detection circuit 72 samples the V1 input waveform on each occurrence of a strobe output signal produced by the SAW oscillator 34 and produces an output signal V5 whenever the sampled V1 signal falls below zero potential. The output signal V5 is applied to a D input of a flip-flop 74 clocked by the V1 output signal of TVCO 56. The inverted Q output of flip-flop 74 provides the frequency-locking signal applied to a non-inverting input of phase detector 60 while the Q output of the flip-flop resets the divide-by-N counter 58.

The TVCO 56 operates continuously, the stopping and restarting of TVCO 56 by the trigger signal from trigger generator 18 of FIG. 2 being substantially instantaneous. In the preferred embodiment of the invention, the SAW oscillator 34 operates at a frequency of 315.457 megahertz and the count limit N of counter 58 is 4096. In this arrangement the frequency difference between the output Vs of the SAW oscillator 34 and the output V1 of TVCO 56 must be such that the output signal V5 of phase detector 72 oscillates at the same frequency as the output V1' of divide-by-N counter 58. This occurs when the output signal of TVCO 56 is (N+1)/N times the frequency of the SAW oscillator output signal, i.e., when V1 is 315.380 megahertz.

Referring to FIG. 6, showing a timing diagram of the operation of phase detector 72, the phase detector is adapted to sample the V1 input waveform on each occurrence of strobe signal Vs output of SAW oscillator 34. Since the strobe signal Vs is of a slightly higher frequency than the oscillator output signal V1, the phase detector 72 samples the oscillator output signal at a progressively earlier point on each cycle of the output signal V1. In the example of FIG. 6 the first strobe signal Vs occurring after TVCO 56 of FIG. 3 receives a trigger signal causes the phase detector 72 to sample the TVCO output signal at time TS1 and the next strobe signal causes the phase detector 72 to sample the V1 signal at time TS2. The magnitude of the sample at time TS2 is higher than the sample at time TS1. With each successive strobe signal Vs, the sampled magnitude changes until time TSn when the sampled magnitude of the V1 signal rises above zero. At this point phase detector 72 transmits the V5 pulse to flip-flop 74 of FIG. 5. The number of cycles n of V1 occurring after the trigger signal but before phase detector 72 produces the V5 output signal are counted and the time difference TP between the trigger signal and the point of phase coincidence between the zero crossing of the V1 signal and the Vs signal at time Tn is computed by multiplying n by the step size of the relative phase shift between Vs and V1 after each cycle of V1. In the preferred embodiment of the invention, with Vs at a frequency of 315.457 megahertz and with V1 at a frequency of 315.380 megahertz, the step size and therefore the resolution of the measurement is 0.774 picoseconds. Thus, for example, if n is 100, TP is about 77.4 picoseconds. In FIG. 6 the difference in frequency between the Vs and V1 signals has been exaggerated for illustrative purposes so that the step size is large enough to illustrate the stepping of the sample timing relative to the phase of V1.

Referring again to FIG. 5, TPLO 30 is similar to TPLO 28 and includes a triggered voltage controlled oscillator 64 driving a divide-by-N counter 68, triggered low frequency phase detector 68, and a filter 70, the output of filter 70 being fed back to the frequency control input of TVCO 64. The output of TVCO 64 comprises the V2 signal output of the TPLO 30 which is applied to another sampling phase detector 76, similar to phase detector 72. The output of phase detector 76 is applied to a D input of another flip-flop 78, the inverted Q output of flip-flop 78 being connected as the frequency locking signal to the low frequency phase detector 68. The divide-by-N counter 66 is also set with a count limit of N equal to 4096 and the output strobe signal Vs of SAW oscillator 34 is applied as the strobe signal to phase detector 76. In this arrangement the output signal V2 of TVCO 64 is also maintained at 315.380 megahertz.

The interval timer 32 also includes a set of three gated counters 80, 82 and 84, each having a gate-open control input (O), a gate-close control input (C), and a clock input. Each gated counter counts the number of cycles applied to its clock input following a pulse applied to the gate-open input, the count being terminated by a pulse applied to the gate-close input. The output Vs of SAW oscillator 34 is applied to the clock input of gated counter 82, the output V1 of TVCO 56 is applied to the

clock input of gated counter 80 and the output V2 of TVCO 64 is applied to the clock input of gated counter 84. The Q output of flip-flop 74 drives the gate-close terminal of gated counter 80 and the Q output of flip-flop 78 drives the gate-close terminal of gated counter 84. TVCO 56 generates a start signal pulse whenever the trigger generator 18 of FIG. 2 retriggers the output signal V1 of TVCO 56 and the start signal is applied to the gate-open input of counter 80. A similar start signal generated by TVCO 64 is also applied to the gate-open input of counter 84. The Q outputs of flip-flops 74 and 78 are connected to inputs of a gate control circuit 81. Gate control circuit 81 has three outputs, one driving the gate-open input of counter 82, another driving the gate-close input of counter 82 and a third (SIGN) indicating whether the Q output of flip-flop 74 sets before or after the Q output of flip-flop 78. The gate control circuit 81 is a state machine which asserts its gate-open output when the first of either of the Q outputs of flip-flop 74 or 78 is set and asserts its gate-close output when the second Q output sets.

Assuming by way of example that the time difference between a triggering event and a strobe signal is to be measured and that the triggering event appears before the strobe signal, the triggering event detected by trigger generator 21 of FIG. 2 causes the trigger generator 21 to transmit a trigger signal to TVCO 56 of TPLO 28 before the strobe sense signal produced by strobe generator 14 causes trigger generator 22 to transmit a trigger signal to TVCO 56 of the TPLO 30. When the TVCO 56 is triggered, it transmits its start signal to the gate-open terminal of gated counter 80. Gated counter 80 thereupon begins counting cycles of the V1 output signal of TVCO 56. When phase detector 72 detects a next zero crossing in the sampled value of V1, it sets flip-flop 74. The Q output of flip-flop 74 pulses the gate-close input of counter 80 to terminate the count. Thus the ending count n in gate counter 80 represents the time period TP of FIG. 6 between the trigger signal applied to TVCO 56 and the next coincidence between a zero crossing of V1 and a strobe signal Vs. When the gate control circuit 81 detects the Q output of flip-flop 74, it transmits a pulse to the gate-open terminal of counter 82 causing counter 82 to begin counting pulses of the Vs signal output of the SAW oscillator 34.

The trigger signal resulting from the strobe sense signal retriggers TVCO 64 and TVCO 64 generates a start signal pulse which gate opens counter 84 so that counter 84 begins counting pulses of the V2 signal. Phase detector 76 samples the V2 signal produced by TVCO 64 and when it detects a next zero crossing in the sampled value of V2, it sets flip-flop 78. The Q output of flip-flop 78 pulses the gate-close input of counter 84 to terminate its count. Thus the ending count n1 in gated counter 80 represents the time period TP1 of FIG. 6 between the trigger signal applied to TVCO 64 and the next coincidence between a zero crossing of V2 and a strobe signal Vs. When the gate control circuit 81 detects the Q output of flip-flop 78, it transmits a pulse to the gate-close terminal of counter 84 causing counter 84 to stop counting pulses of the Vs signal output of the SAW oscillator 34. The ending count n2 in counter 82 thus is indicative of the period TP2 between the V5 pulse and the V6 pulse. The time period TP3 between the triggering event and the strobe sense signal may be computed according to the following expression:

$$TP3 = Tsaw\{(n2)+[(N+1)(n-n1)/N]\} \quad [1]$$

where Tsaw is the period of the SAW oscillator 34 output signal Vs, N is the setting (4096) of the divide by N counters 58 and 66, n is the ending count in counter 80, n1 is the ending count in counter 84, and n2 is the ending count in counter 82.

When the strobe sense signal occurs before the triggering event, the period TP3 between the trigger signals generated in response to the strobe sense signal and the triggering event is determined by the expression:

$$TP3 = Tsaw\{(n2)+[(N+1)(n1-n)/N]\} \quad [2]$$

The count outputs n, n1 and n2 of gated counters 80, 84 and 82, along with the SIGN signal output of gate control circuit 81 are applied to an arithmetic logic unit (ALU) 86 which computes the above, depending on the state of the SIGN signal indicating whether the triggering event or the strobe drive signal occurred first. The ALU 86 then transmits the computed time to the microprocessor 26 of FIG. 2.

The interval timer 32 may also be utilized to measure jitter in the Vin signal with a high degree of accuracy. Referring to FIGS. 1 and 2, when a repetitive signal such as Vin is subject to jitter, the period between successive triggering events T0–T4 varies. To accurately measure the time period between successive triggering events the input signal Vin may be applied to both trigger generator 21 and trigger generator 22 of FIG. 2 and the trigger generators 21 and 22 may be successively armed by arming controller 40 so that trigger generator 21 generates a trigger signal on detection of a first triggering event in the input waveform Vin while trigger generator 22 generates a trigger signal on the second triggering event in the input waveform Vin. Thus interval timer 32 measures the time difference between the two triggering events with high accuracy. Signal jitter is determined by comparing measured time difference between successive pairs of triggering events.

Thus according to the foregoing description the equivalent time pseudorandom sampling system of the present invention samples a repetitive waveform within each of several acquisition windows bounding repetitive sections of the waveform. In order to obtain equivalent time sample data characterizing the shape of the waveform included within each acquisition window, the period between successive triggering events is measured and sampling is delayed following an initiating triggering event by delay times adjusted according to the measured periods so as to maximize the probability that sampling will occur within each acquisition window. The time intervals between samples and triggering events are measured with high accuracy utilizing the above-described dual vernier interpolation time interval measurement system.

While a preferred embodiment of the present invention has been shown and described, it will be apparent to those skilled in the art that many changes and modifications may be made without departing from the invention in its broader aspects. The appended claims are therefore intended to cover all such changes and modifications as fall within the true spirit and scope of the invention.

I claim:

1. A method for measuring a time interval between first and second events comprising the steps of:

periodically generating a reference signal;

triggering first and second periodic signals on occurrence of said first and second events, respectively;

sampling said first and second periodic signals on each occurrence of said reference signal and determining the magnitude of each signal sample;

counting cycles of said first periodic signal occurring after triggering said first periodic signal and before the sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses a predetermined level, thereby producing a first count;

counting cycles of said second periodic signal occurring after triggering said second periodic signal and before the sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level, thereby producing a second count; and

counting occurrences of said reference signal generated between a first moment when said sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses said predetermined level and a second moment when said sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level, thereby producing a third count.

2. The method according to claim 1 wherein said first and second periodic signals are of frequencies which differ from the frequency of said reference signal.

3. The method according to claim 2 further comprising the step of computing said time interval according to said first, second and third counts.

4. A method for sampling a repetitive waveform, the method comprising the steps of:

measuring a first time interval between first and second triggering events in said repetitive waveform; and

generating in delayed response to a third triggering event in said repetitive waveform a strobe signal for initiating sampling of said repetitive waveform, the delay between said third triggering event and generation of said strobe signal being adjusted according to said measured time interval.

5. The method according to claim 4 wherein said delay is adjusted to equal the sum of said measured first time interval and a predetermined interval.

6. The method according to claim 4 wherein said delay is adjusted to equal the difference between said measured first time interval and a predetermined interval.

7. The method according to claim 4 further comprising the step of measuring a second time interval between said strobe signal and a fourth triggering event in said repetitive waveform.

8. The method according to claim 7 wherein the step of measuring said second time interval comprises the substeps of:

periodically generating a reference signal;

triggering a first periodic signal on occurrence of said strobe signal and triggering a second periodic signal on occurrence of said fourth triggering event;

sampling said first and second periodic signals on each occurrence of said reference signal and determining the magnitude of each signal sample;

counting cycles of said first periodic signal occurring after triggering said first periodic signal and before the sample magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses a predetermined level;

counting cycles of said second periodic signal occurring after triggering said second periodic signal and before the sample magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses a predetermined level; and

counting occurrences of said reference signal generated between a first moment when said sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses said predetermined level and a second moment when said sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level.

9. An apparatus for measuring a time interval between first and second events comprising:

a reference oscillator for periodically generating a reference signal;

a first triggerable oscillator for generating a first periodic signal triggered by said first event;

a second triggerable oscillator for generating a second periodic signal triggered by said second event;

means for sampling said first and second periodic signals on each occurrence of said reference signal;

means for counting cycles of said first periodic signal occurring before the sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses a predetermined level;

means for counting cycles of said second periodic signal occurring before the sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses a predetermined level; and

means for counting occurrences of said reference signal generated between a first moment when said sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses said predetermined level and a second moment when said sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level.

10. An apparatus for timing sampling of a repetitive waveform comprising:

means for measuring a first time interval between first and second triggering events in said repetitive waveform; and

means for generating in delayed response to a third triggering event in said repetitive waveform a strobe signal for initiating sampling of said repetitive waveform, the delay between said third triggering event and generation of said strobe signal being set according to said measured first time interval.

11. The apparatus according to claim 10 wherein said delay is set equal to said measured first time interval adjusted by a predetermined interval.

12. The apparatus according to claim 10 further comprising means for measuring a second time interval between said strobe signal and a fourth triggering event in said repetitive waveform.

13. The apparatus according to claim 12 wherein said means for measuring said second time interval comprises:

means for periodically generating a reference signal;

a first triggerable oscillator for generating a first periodic signal when triggered by said strobe signal;

a second triggerable oscillator for generating a second periodic signal when triggered by said fourth triggering event;

means for sampling said first and second periodic signals on each occurrence of said reference signal;

means for counting cycles of said first periodic signal occurring after triggering of said first periodic signal and before the sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses a predetermined level;

means for counting cycles of said second periodic signal occurring after triggering of said second periodic signal and before the sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level; and

means for counting occurrences of said reference signal generated after a first moment when said sampled magnitude of said first periodic signal crosses said predetermined level and a second moment when said sampled magnitude of said second periodic signal crosses said predetermined level.

* * * * *

US006640193B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Kuyel

(10) **Patent No.: US 6,640,193 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent: Oct. 28, 2003**

(54) **METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR MEASURING JITTER**

(75) Inventor: **Turker Kuyel**, Dallas, TX (US)

(73) Assignee: **Texas Instruments Incorporated**, Dallas, TX (US)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 133 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **09/731,433**

(22) Filed: **Dec. 6, 2000**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2002/0103609 A1 Aug. 1, 2002

Related U.S. Application Data

(60) Provisional application No. 60/171,260, filed on Dec. 15, 1999.

(51) **Int. Cl.**[7] **G06F 19/00**

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **702/69**; 702/32; 702/57; 702/106; 714/751; 714/758; 375/226; 375/227; 370/516; 370/503; 340/310.03; 340/146.2; 324/613; 324/620

(58) **Field of Search** ..... 702/32, 57, 69–71, 702/74, 81, 82, 84, 85, 106, 112, 124–126, 189, 190; 324/600, 613–626, 76.19, 76.24, 76.38; 370/516, 503, 506, FOR 177, FOR 185; 375/226, 224, 227, 228; 714/751, 748, 746, 752, 758–762, 764, 765

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,542,514 A	*	9/1985	Watanabe	375/10
5,754,437 A	*	5/1998	Blazo	364/484
6,240,130 B1	*	5/2001	Burns et al.	375/226

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Fulton et al., "Delay Jitter First–Order and Second Order Statistical Functions of General Traffic on High–Speed Multimedia Networks" Jan. 1998, IEEE/ACM, No. 2, vol. 6, pp. 150–163.*

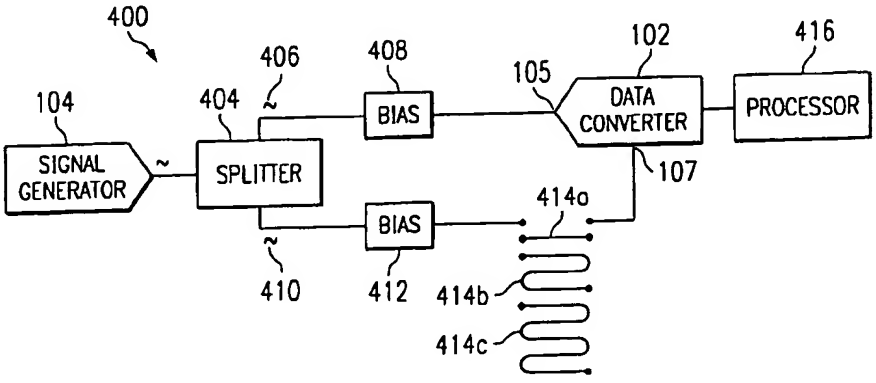
(List continued on next page.)

Primary Examiner—Marc S. Hoff
Assistant Examiner—Elias Desta
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Frederick J. Telecky, Jr.; W. James Brady, III

(57) **ABSTRACT**

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a system (**100**) for measuring overall jitter is disclosed that includes a data converter (**102**) that measures a signal to generate a first measurement set (**212**) and a second measurement set (**214**), which are used to compute overall jitter. According to one embodiment of the present invention, a method for measuring overall jitter is disclosed. The data converter (**102**) generates the first measurement set (**212**) and the second measurement set (**214**) by measuring the signal. The overall jitter is computed using the measurement sets (**212** and **214**). According to one embodiment of the present invention, a system (**400**) for measuring internal jitter is disclosed that includes a splitter (**404**) that splits a signal into an input signal (**406**) and a clock signal (**410**). The data converter (**102**) measures the input signal (**406**) to generate a first data set and a second data set, which are used to compute the internal jitter of the data converter (**102**). According to one embodiment of the present invention, a method for measuring internal jitter is disclosed. A signal is split into an input signal (**406**) and a clock signal (**410**). The data converter (**102**) measures the input signal to generate the first data set (**508**) and the second data set (**512**). The internal jitter is computed using the first data set (**508**) and the second data set (**512**). The external jitter is computed from the overall and internal jitter. The signal-to-noise ratio of the data converter (**102**) is computed from the external jitter.

22 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets



OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Rosing et al., "Off–Chip Diagnosis of Aperture Jitter in Full–flash Analog–to–Digital Converters", Feb., 1999, JETTA, pp. 1–8.*

Drexel, "The Square Wave in Detail" Jun. 1996, The Math Forum, pp. 1–3.*

L.B. Page, "Probability for Engineering, with Applications to Reliability" 1989, Computer Science Press, pp. 73–75.*

LeCroy Digital Oscilloscopes, "Accuracy in Time Jitter Measurements with LeCroy Oscilloscopes", LeCroy Corporation, 1–6.

Aeroflex Comstron Inc., "PN9000 Automated Phase Noise Measurement System," Comstron, 1–19.

Aeroflex Comstron Inc., "Phase Noise Theory and Measurement," Application Note, Comstron, 1–36.

Wavecrest Corporation, "Digital Time Systems," Wavecrest, 1–5.

* cited by examiner

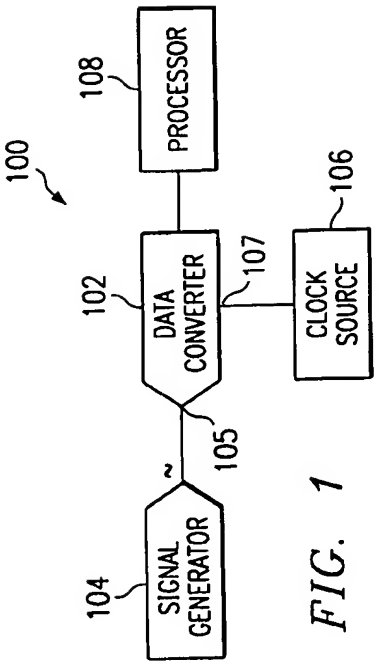

100
108
PROCESSOR
102
DATA CONVERTER
107
106
CLOCK SOURCE
105
104
SIGNAL GENERATOR

FIG. 1

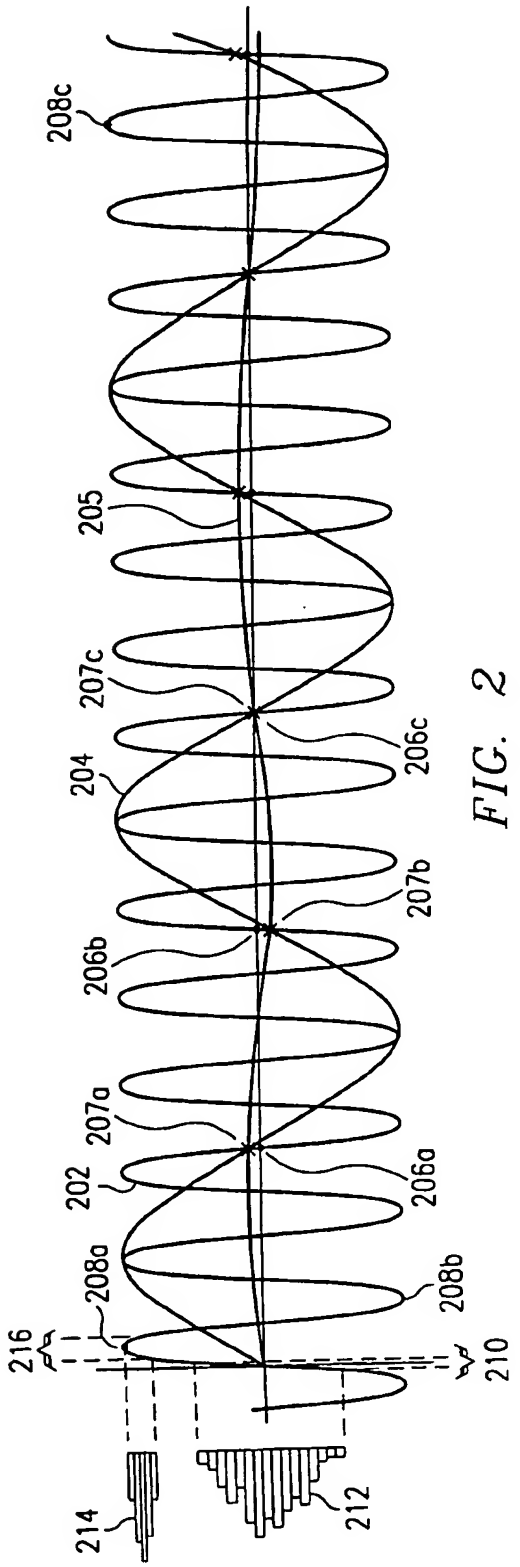

208c
205
207c
206c
204
207b
206b
207a
202
206a
208a
208b
216
210
214
212

FIG. 2

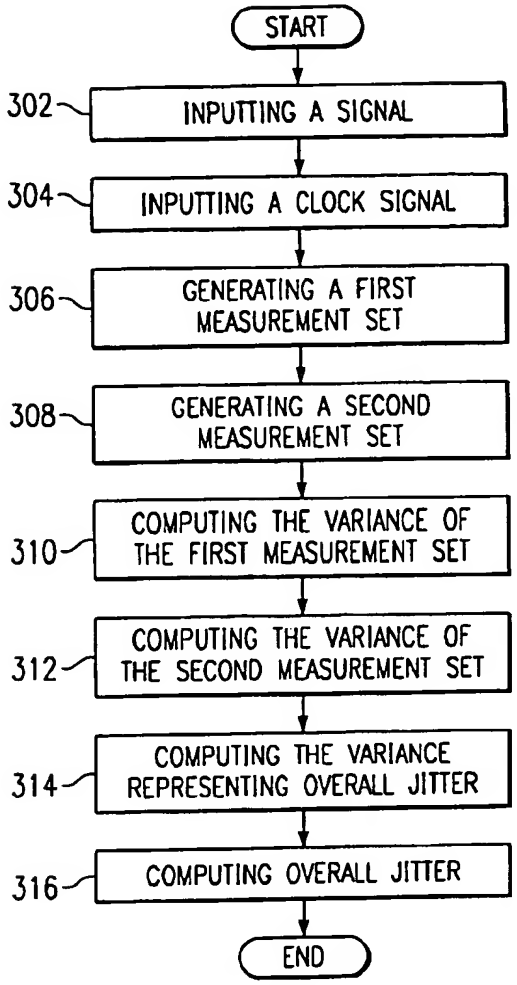

START
302
INPUTTING A SIGNAL
304
INPUTTING A CLOCK SIGNAL
306
GENERATING A FIRST MEASUREMENT SET
308
GENERATING A SECOND MEASUREMENT SET
310
COMPUTING THE VARIANCE OF THE FIRST MEASUREMENT SET
312
COMPUTING THE VARIANCE OF THE SECOND MEASUREMENT SET
314
COMPUTING THE VARIANCE REPRESENTING OVERALL JITTER
316
COMPUTING OVERALL JITTER
END

FIG. 3

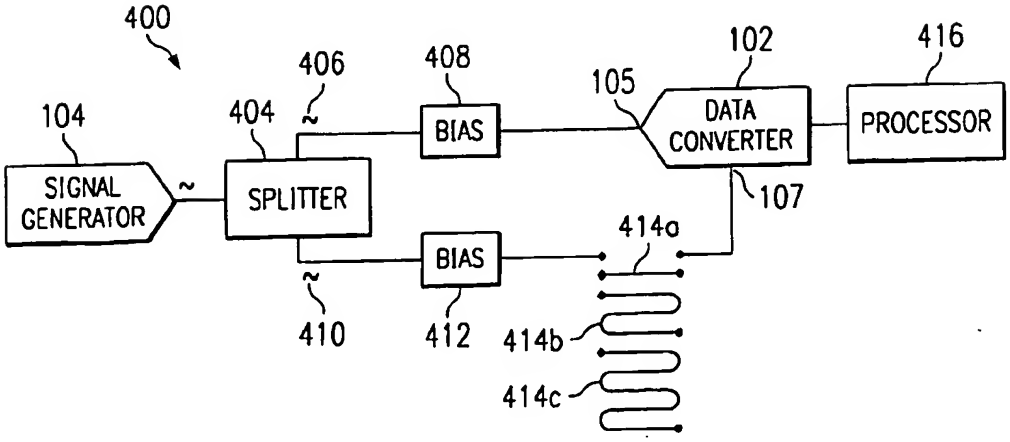

400
406
408
102
416
104
404
105
BIAS
DATA CONVERTER
PROCESSOR
SIGNAL GENERATOR
SPLITTER
107
414a
BIAS
410
412
414b
414c

FIG. 4

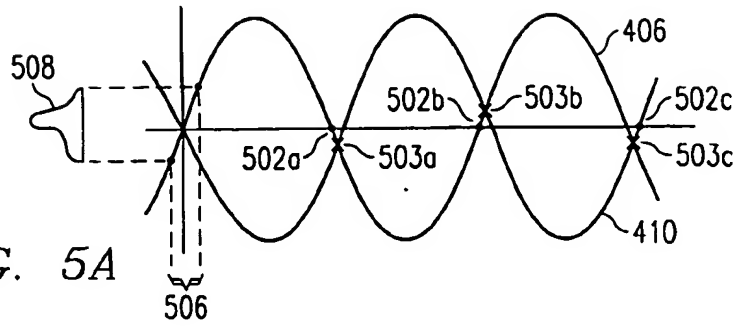


FIG. 5A

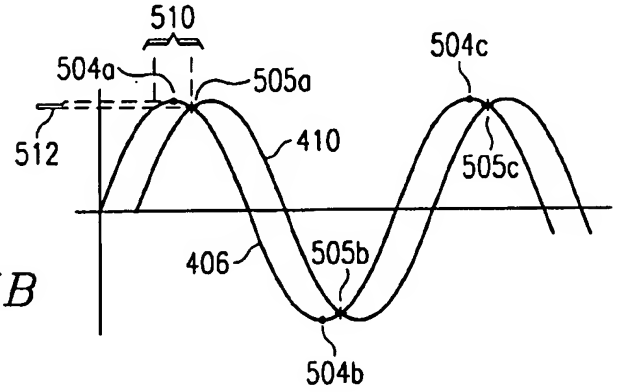


FIG. 5B

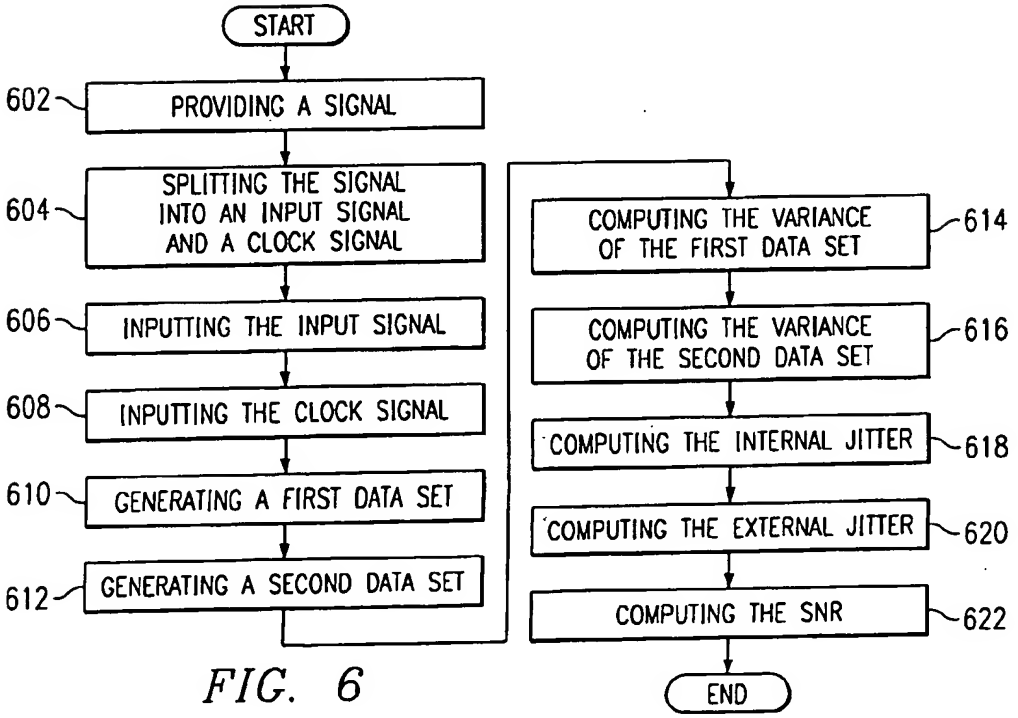


FIG. 6

METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR MEASURING JITTER

This application claims priority under 35 USC §119(e)(1) of provisional application No. 60/171,260 filed Dec. 15, 1999.

TECHNICAL FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates generally to the field of electronic circuits and more specifically to a method and system for measuring jitter.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The growing use of data converters has created a demand for more accurate and more precise methods for measuring jitter. Sampling time noise, or jitter, is a component of signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), which is an important parameter in assessing the performance of a data converter. Jitter causes deviations in the sampling time, which in turn causes deviations in the value of the signal sample. Jitter becomes a major factor in the SNR at relatively high input frequencies, for example, the frequencies at which communications analog-to-digital converters (ADCs) operate, because even a small deviation in the sampling time may result in a large deviation in the value of the signal sample. As the demand for intermediate frequency sampling in communication systems increases, ADC manufacturers are faced with the task of measuring the SNR at very high input frequencies. The SNR at high input frequencies may be measured using a test system with very low jitter. Even state-of-the-art test systems, however, cannot meet the low jitter requirement. Alternatively, the SNR may be measured using test systems with medium jitter by measuring the jitter of the system and then calibrating out the jitter. Known methods and systems of measuring jitter, however, have not been completely satisfactory in terms of accuracy, precision, and speed.

Calculation of the maximum jitter tolerance for a data converter begins with computing the SNR. Theoretically, the best possible SNR of an N-bit converter, assuming that the input is uniformly distributed between two adjacent data converter codes, is given by Equation (1):

$$SNR\max(dBs) = 6.02N \sim 6N \quad (1)$$

Practically, the measured SNR of a data converter may be worse than the above prediction due to various factors, including jitter. Overall jitter may be due to internal factors inside of the data converter such as the aperture jitter of a sample and hold circuit or to external factors such as the jitter of a dock source or the phase noise of an input wave generator. If the amplitude noise due to overall jitter is integrated and the input is a sine wave, Equation (2) describes how overall jitter limits the best SNE of a data converter:

$$SNR\max(dBs) = -20\log(2\pi f\epsilon) \quad (2)$$

where f is the input frequency, and ϵ is the root mean square (mis) value of the overall jitter in the system. Assuming that the jitter induced noise level should be Less than the quantization noise of an ideal converter, Equations (1) and (2) may be equated to yield Equation (3) describing the maximum jitter tolerance a of a data converter:

$$\epsilon < \frac{1}{f * 10^{0.5N} * 2\pi} \quad (3)$$

According to Equation (3), less than 1 ps rms jitter is tolerated in a 14-bit communication ADC sampling a 70 MHz if signal. This requirement is very stringent considering the fad that the typical jitter found in CMOS digital logic circuits is around 20–30 ps rms. Other maximum jitter tolerance levels are shown in TABLE 1.

TABLE 1

Maximum Jitter Tolerance for ADCs (ps rms × 2π)

Bits	8	10	12	14	16
Input Frequency:					
10 KHz	398107	100000	10000	6309	1585
100 KHz	39810	10000	1000	631	158
1 MHz	3981	1000	100	63	15.8
10 MHz	398	100	10	6.3	1.58
100 MHz	40	10	1	0.63	0.16

The stringent low jitter requirement makes the measurement of the SNR of data converters extremely difficult. According to a known approach for measuring the SNR, the SNR is directly measured. This approach requires that the jitter of the system used to measure the SNR of the data converter be much lower than the maximum jitter tolerance level. Low jitter sine wave generators and clock sources, however, are very expensive and often fail to meet the performance requirements needed to measure the SNR of communication ADCs. Moreover, it is difficult to integrate low jitter sine wave generators and clock sources into production testers. In another approach for measuring the SNR, instead of using an ideal clock source or sine wave generator to minimize system jitter, the noise due to system jitter is measured and calibrated out from the overall noise. Such calibration techniques, however, remove the requirement for low jitter hardware at the expense of the need for accurate and precise jitter measurements. For such calibration to work, the accuracy of the jitter measurement has to be much better than the jitter in the test system.

Known methods of measuring jitter include the sampling scope methods, comparator methods, and phase noise methods. According to the sampling scope methods, a clock waveform is digitized at a high speed and the time between the two signals edges is measured. Jitter is computed from the standard deviation of the measurements. A disadvantage of these methods is that the scope timebase must be jitter-free. Moreover, the accuracy of these methods is limited to approximately 10 ps rms, partly due to the insufficient 8-bit resolution of the ADCs used in scopes. The comparator methods use a comparator to trigger at the zero crossings of the clock and start a coarse and a fine counter. The fine counter works by digitizing the discharge voltage of a capacitor. The coarse counter takes the average of multiple measurements of the time between the zero crossings. These methods, however, are slow. Moreover, the accuracy of these methods is limited to approximately 10 ps rms. The phase noise methods measure the phase noise and mathematically relate the phase noise to clock jitter. These methods, however, require a very low phase noise signal generator and a high quality mixer to mix down the fundamental components of the clock frequency to the base band. Moreover, these methods are frequency-based and are very slow.

While these approaches have provided improvements over prior approaches, the challenges in the field of electronic circuits have continued to increase with demands for more and better jitter measurement techniques having greater accuracy and precision. Therefore, a need has arisen for a new method and system for measuring jitter.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with the present invention, a method and system for measuring jitter are provided that substantially eliminate or reduce the disadvantages and problems associated with previously developed systems and methods.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a system for measuring overall jitter is disclosed that comprises a data converter and a signal generator. The signal generator is coupled to the data converter and outputs a signal to the data converter. The data converter measures the signal to generate a first measurement set representing overall jitter and system noise, and to generate a second measurement set representing system noise. The overall jitter is computed using the first measurement set and the second measurement set. More specifically, the overall jitter is computed using the variance of the first measurement set and the variance of the second measurement set.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a method for measuring overall jitter is disclosed. First, a signal is input into a data converter. Second, a first measurement set representing overall jitter and system noise is generated by measuring the signal. Third, a second measurement set representing system noise is generated by measuring the signal. Finally, the overall jitter is computed using the first measurement set and the second measurement set. More specifically, the overall jitter is computed using the variance of the first measurement set and the variance of the second measurement set.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a system for measuring internal jitter is disclosed that comprises a signal generator that generates a signal. A splitter coupled to the signal generator splits the signal into an input signal and a clock signal. A data converter coupled to the splitter measures the input signal using the clock signal to generate a first data set representing internal jitter and system noise and to generate a second data set representing system noise. The internal jitter is computable using the first data set and the second data set. More specifically, the internal jitter is computed using the variance of the first data set and the variance of the second data set.

According to one embodiment of the present invention, a method for measuring internal jitter is disclosed. First, a signal is provided. Second, the signal is split into an input signal and a clock signal. Third, the input signal is input into a data converter. Fourth, the clock signal is input into the data converter. Fifth, a first data set representing internal jitter and system noise is generated by measuring the input signal using the data converter. Sixth, a second data set representing system noise is generated by measuring the input signal using the data converter. Finally, the internal jitter is computed using the first data set and the second data set. More specifically, the internal jitter is computed using the variance of the first data set and the variance of the second data set.

A technical advantage of the present invention is that, unlike the measurements of known approaches, the calculation of overall jitter and internal jitter does not include system noise, resulting in a more accurate estimate of jitter, approximately 0.1 ps rms accuracy. The exclusion of system noise also results in more accurate estimate of signal-to-noise ratio. Another technical advantage of the present invention is that the external jitter may be determined using the internal and overall jitter, allowing for a measurement of the jitter of the test system. Another technical advantage of the present invention is that it does not require practically jitterless components to determine the overall jitter and internal jitter of a data converter. Practically jitterless components are often expensive and fail to meet the requirements needed to measure the jitter of a communications data converter. Therefore, the present invention allows for a more accessible, more accurate calculation of jitter. Other technical advantages are readily apparent to one of skill in the art.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

For a more complete understanding of the present invention and for further features and advantages, reference is now made to the following description, taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of one embodiment of a system for measuring overall jitter that may be used in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 2 is a graph illustrating a first measurement set and a second measurement set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring overall jitter in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 3 is a flowchart demonstrating one embodiment of a method for measuring overall jitter in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 4 is a block diagram of one embodiment of a system for measuring internal jitter that may be used in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 5A is a graph illustrating a first data set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention;

FIG. 5B is a graph illustrating a second data set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention; and

FIG. 6 is a flowchart demonstrating one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Various embodiments of the present invention and its advantages are best understood by referring to FIGS. 1–6 of the drawings, like numerals being used for like and corresponding parts of the various drawings.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of one embodiment of a system **100** for measuring overall jitter that may be used in accordance with the present invention. The system **100** comprises a data converter **102**, and a signal generator **104**, a clock source **106**, and a processor **108**, all of which may be coupled to the data converter **102**. The overall jitter of the system **100** includes the internal jitter of the data converter **102**, the signal generator **104**, and the clock source **106**. The data converter **102** may be, for example, a high-frequency, high-amplitude, high-SNR analog-to-digital converter (ADC), for example, a ten- to sixteen-bit communication ADC. Time jitter creates a large variation in the output of the data converter **102** when the input has a high frequency and a high amplitude. Thus, a high-frequency, high-amplitude input may be used to improve sensitivity to jitter. Undersampling may be also used to achieve a desired jitter sensitivity. Undersampling occurs when the frequency of an input signal is greater than one-half the sampling frequency.

By using undersampling, the input frequency may be high, while the sampling frequency does not have to be high. Additionally, a converter with a high SNR may also be used to improve jitter sensitivity. For these reasons, ten- to sixteen-bit communication ADCs may provide more jitter sensitivity than the eight-bit ADCs often used in scopes.

The signal generator **104** may be, for example, a low phase noise sine wave generator or square wave generator. The signal generator **104** may be operable to output to the data converter **102** a signal that has maximum slew rate points, points of greatest slope, and minimum slew rate points, points of zero slope. The clock source **106** may be synchronized with the signal generator **104**, for example, it may be phase locked with the signal generator **104**. The signal from the signal generator **104** may be sent to the input **105** of the data converter **102**, and may be used as the signal to be sampled. The signal from the clock source **106** may be sent to the clock **107** of the data converter **102**, and may be used to determine which points of the input signal are to be sampled. If the input source has very low jitter, the clock source **106** may be the main source of the jitter. The processor **108** may be used to compute the overall jitter from the output of the data converter **102**.

In general, the data converter **102** is operable to generate a first measurement set by sampling the signal at the maximum slew rate points of the signal, and is operable to generate a second measurement set by sampling the signal at the minimum slew rate points of the signal. The overall jitter may then be computed using the first and the second measurement sets.

FIG. **2** is a graph illustrating a first measurement set and a second measurement set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring overall jitter in accordance with the present invention. A signal **202** may be an output from the signal generator **104**, and a clock signal **204** may be an output from the clock source **106**. The output signal **205** from the data converter **102** is formed by the sampling of the signal **202** by the clock signal **204**. Note that the output signal **205** may be a sine wave. In this embodiment, the signal **202** and the clock and signal **204** are sine waves. The signal **202** has maximum slew rate points **206***a*, **206***b* and **206***c*, which are the points of greatest slope of the sine wave. The signal **202** also has minimum slew rate points **208***a*, **208***b*, and **208***c*, which are points of zero slope of the sine wave. The signal generator **104** and the clock source **106** may be synchronized, and may be, for example, phase-locked. The frequency of the clock signal **204** may be less than that of the signal **202**. To capture a clear sine wave, the frequency of the signal **202** may be slightly larger than the frequency of the clock signal **204** multiplied by an integer. For example, the frequency of the clock signal **204** may be approximately 20 MHz, and the frequency of the signal **202** may be slightly larger than 100 MHz.

The overall jitter and the system noise cause the clock signal **204** and the signal **202** to fluctuate such that an attempted sampling of the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c* may result in actually sampling points **207***a–c* within a range **210** around the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c*. Since the slope is large around the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c*, deviations from the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c* cause a large variance in the measurements of the sine wave. Note that undersampling may be used to achieve a high slew rate. Undersampling occurs when frequency of an input signal is greater than one-half the sampling frequency. By using undersampling, the input frequency may be increased, thus increasing the slew rate, without increasing the sampling rate. A first measurement set **212** describes the measurements of the signal **202** at points sampled from within the range **210**, and represents overall jitter and system noise.

In order to calculate overall jitter without system noise, the second measurement set **214** is generated by measuring the signal **202** at minimum slew rate points **208***a–c*. System noise, but not jitter, causes the deviations when sampling the minimum slew rate points **208***a–c*, resulting in a range **216** of sampled points. The deviations caused by the system noise result in a variance of the measurements of the minimum slew rate points **208***a–c*, which are represented by the second measurement set **214**. The overall jitter may be computed from the variances of the first measurement set **212** and the second measurement set **214**. The variances may be computed using any suitable method, for example, directly from the measurements, using histograms, or using fast Fourier transforms.

FIG. **3** is a flowchart demonstrating one embodiment of a method for measuring overall jitter in accordance with the present invention. In general, the method shown inputs the signal **202** and the clock signal **204** into the data converter **102**. Using the clock signal **204**, the data converter measures the signal **202** at the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c* to formulate the first measurement set **212** representing overall jitter and system noise. The data converter **102** measures the signal **202** at the minimum slew rate points **208***a–c* to formulate the second measurement set **214** representing system noise. The overall jitter is computed from the first measurement set **212** and the second measurement set **214**.

Specifically, the method begins with step **302**, where the signal **202** is input into the input **105** of the data converter **102**. The signal **202** may be, for example, a sine wave signal generated by a sine wave generator. The signal **202** and the clock signal **204** may be synchronized with each other, and they may be, for example, phase-locked with each other. The frequency of the clock signal **204** may be less than that of the signal **202**. For example, the frequency of the clock signal **204** may be approximately 20 MHz, and the frequency of the signal **204** may be approximately 100 MHz. In step **304**, the clock signal **204** generated by the clock source **106** is sent to the clock **107** of the data converter **102**.

The method then moves to step **306**, where the first measurement set **212** representing overall jitter and system noise is generated. When attempting to sample the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c*, the overall jitter and system noise cause the clock signal **204** and the signal **202** to fluctuate and sample points within the range **210** around the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c*. Since the slope at the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c* is large, deviations around these points result in a large variance of the measurements of the signal **202**. The variance of first measurement set **212** of the measurements around the maximum slew rate points **206***a–c* corresponds to the sum of the square of the system noise and the square of the overall jitter induced noise, from which the overall jitter and system noise can be computed. The variance may be computed from a histogram of the first measurement set **212**, where the histogram is normalized to form $H_{max}(x)$. In step **308**, the second measurement set **214** representing system noise is generated. System noise, but not overall jitter, causes deviations **216** when sampling of the minimum slew rate points **208***a–c*, resulting in a variance of the measurements of the signal **202**. The variance of the second measurement set **214** of the measurements around the minimum (zero) slew rate points **208** corresponds to the square of the system noise. The variance may be computed from a histogram of the second measurement set **214**, where the histogram is normalized to form $H_{min}(x)$.

In general, in steps **310–316**, the overall jitter is computed from the variance of the normalized first histogram $H_{max}(x)$ and the variance of the normalized second histogram $H_{min}(x)$. Specifically, in step **310**, the variance of $H_{max}(x)$ generated in step **306** may be computed either directly from the data set or by using Equation (4):

$$var_1 = \int (x-\bar{x}_1)^2 H_{max}(x)dx \quad (4)$$

where

$$\bar{x}_1 = \int x H_{max}(x)dx$$

In step **312**, the variance of $H_{min}(x)$ generated in step **308** may be computed either directly from the data set or by using Equation (5):

$$var_2 = \int (x-\bar{x}_2)^2 H_{min}(x)dx \quad (5)$$

where

$$\bar{x}_2 = \int x H_{min}(x)dx$$

The variances of the first measurement set **212** and the second measurement set **214** may be computed using another suitable method, for example, computed directly from the measurement sets **212** and **214** or using fast Fourier transforms.

In step **314**, the variance representing overall jitter is obtained by subtracting the variance representing system noise from the variance representing overall jitter and system noise, as shown by Equation (6):

$$var_j = var_1 - var_2 \quad (6)$$

In step **316**, the overall jitter is computed from the variance representing overall jitter, as shown in Equation (7):

$$j_{overall} = \frac{1}{2\pi Af}\sqrt{\text{var}_j} \quad (7)$$

After computing the overall jitter, the method terminates.

FIG. **4** is a block diagram of one embodiment of a system **400** for measuring internal jitter that may be used in accordance with the present invention. In general, the system **400** comprises an signal generator **104** coupled to a splitter **404** coupled to the data converter **102**. Specifically, the signal generator **104** may be, for example, a low phase noise sine wave generator. The splitter **404**, which may be, for example, a power splitter, splits the signal from the signal generator **104** into a splitter-input signal **406** and a splitter-clock signal **410**. A splitter-input signal **406** of the splitter **404** may be biased using a first bias circuit **408** coupled to the splitter **404** and the data converter **102**. The splitter-input signal **406** may be sent to the input **105** of the data converter **102**. A splitter-clock signal **410** of the splitter **404** may be biased using a second bias circuit **412** coupled to the splitter **404** and the data converter **102**. The splitter clock signal **410** may be sent to the clock **107** of the data converter **102**. Since the signals to the input **105** and the clock **107** of the data converter are from the same source, any jitter in the source signal is present at both the clock and the input, canceling the jitter of the input and clock signals. The internal noise of the data converter **102** may be canceled by repeating the measurements under different phase conditions between the input and the clock, which may be obtained by varying the length of either the splitter-input signal **406** path or the splitter-clock signal **410** path. These paths may be varied by, for example, using traces **414***a–c* of different lengths, using relays to switch between the traces. A processor **416** may be used to compute the internal jitter of the data converter **102**.

In general, when the clock and input frequencies are the same, the input is undersampled at twice the Nyquist frequency. If there were no noise or jitter, the output would be a straight direct current line at certain codes of the data converter. When jitter or noise is present, they can be measured from the data at the maximum and minimum slew rate points of the input signal. The data converter **102** is operable to generate a first data set by sampling the input signal at the maximum slew rate points of the input signal, and is operable to generate a second data set by sampling the input signal at the minimum slew rate points of the input signal. The internal jitter may then be computed from the first and the second data sets.

FIG. **5**A is a graph illustrating a first data set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention. The splitter-input signal **406** has maximum slew rate points **502***a–c*, which are the points of maximum slope of the splitter-input signal **406**. Maximum slew rate points **502***a–c* are sampled by capturing data around the mid-code of the data converter **102**. When attempting to sample the maximum slew rate points **502***a–c*, internal jitter and system noise cause the data converter **102** to fluctuate and to sample points **503***a–c* in a range **506** around the maximum slew rate points **502***a–c*, resulting in a variance in the measurements of the splitter-input signal **406**. The variance of the first data set **508** of measurements of the points sampled around the maximum slew rate points **502** represents internal jitter and the data converter's **102** random noise.

FIG. **5**B is a graph illustrating a second data set generated in one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention. The splitter-input signal **406** has minimum slew rate points **504***a–c*, which are the points of zero slope of the splitter-input signal **406**. Minimum slew rate points **504***a–c* are sampled by capturing data around the zero-scale or full-scale codes of the data converter **102**. System noise causes the data converter **102** to fluctuate when sampling the minimum slew rate points **504***a–c* and measure points **505***a–c* within a range **510** around the points **504***a–c*, resulting in a variance of measurements. The variance of the second data set **512** of measurements of points sampled around the minimum slew rate points **504***a–c* represents the system noise.

FIG. **6** is a flow chart demonstrating one embodiment of a method for measuring internal jitter in accordance with the present invention. In general, in this embodiment, the splitter **404** splits a signal, for example, a radio frequency signal, into a splitter-input signal **406** that is sent to the input **105** of the data converter **102**, and splitter-clock signal **410** that is sent to the clock **107** of the data converter **102**. The data converter **102** samples the maximum slew rate points **502***a–c* of the splitter-input signal **406** to generate the first data set **508** representing internal jitter and system noise. The data converter **102** samples the minimum slew rate points **510** of the input signal **406** in order to generate the second data set **512** representing system noise. The internal jitter is computed from the first data set **508** and the second data set **512**. The external jitter is computed from the overall jitter and the internal jitter. Finally, the signal-to-noise-ratio (SNR) is computed from the external jitter.

Specifically, the method begins with step **602**, where a signal is provided. The signal may be provided using, for example, using the signal generator **402**. In step **604**, the signal is split using the splitter **404** into the splitter-input

signal **406** and the splitter-clock signal **410**. The input signal has maximum slew rate points **502***a–c* and minimum slew rate points **504***a–c*. In step **606**, the splitter-input signal **406** is input into the input **105** of the data converter **102**. In step **608**, the clock signal **410** is input into the clock **107** of the data converter **102**.

The method proceeds to step **610**, where the first data set **508** is generated. When attempting to sample the maximum slew rate points **502***a–c*, internal jitter and system noise cause the data converter **102** to sample points in the range **506** around the points **502***a–c*, which causes a variance in the measurements of the splitter-input signal **406**. The variance of the histogram of the first data set **508** of measurements around the maximum slew rate points represents internal jitter and system noise. To measure the maximum slew rate points **502***a–c*, the path lengths of the splitter input **406** and the splitter-clock **410** signals are varied until the measured data is around the mid-scale code of the data converter **102**. In step **612**, the second data set **512** is generated. System noise causes deviations when sampling the minimum slew rate points **504***a–c*, which results in a variance in the measurements of the splitter-input signal **406** around the minimum slew rate points **504***a–c*. The variance of the histogram of the second data set **512** of measurements represents system noise. To sample the minimum slew rate points **405***a–c*, the path lengths of the splitter input **406** and the splitter-clock **410** signals may be varied, for example, using traces **414***a–c*, until the measured data is around the zero-scale or full-scale codes of the data converter **102**.

In general, in steps **614** through **618**, the internal jitter is calculated from the variance of the first data set **508** generated in step **610** and the variance of the second data set **512** generated in step **612**. Specifically, in step **614**, the variance var_1 of the first data set **508** is computed. The variance may be computed, for example, by directly computing the variance from the data. Other appropriate alternatives may be used, for example, computing the variance from a histogram or a Fourier transform of the data set. In step **616**, the variance var_2 of the second data set **512** is computed. As in step **614**, variance var_2 may be computed, for example, directly from the data or from a histogram or a Fourier transform of the data set.

In step **618**, the internal jitter is computed using Equation (8):

$$j_{internal} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{var_1 - var_2}{[(f_1A_1\cos(\theta_1))^2 - (f_2A_2\cos(\theta_2))^2]}} \quad (8)$$

f_1 is the frequency of the signal of the first data set;

f_2 is the frequency of the signal of the second data set;

A_1 is the amplitude of the signal of the first data set;

A_2 is the amplitude of the signal of the second data set;

$output_1$ is the average value of the measured outputs from the first data set;

$output_2$ is the average value of the measured outputs from the second data set.

$$\theta_1 = \arcsin\left(\frac{2 * output_1}{A_1}\right); \text{ and}$$

$$\theta_2 = \arcsin\left(\frac{2 * output_2}{A_2}\right)$$

Note that the measurements may be taken such that $f_1=f_2$ and $A_1=A_2$, and the path lengths for the splitter clock **406** and the splitter input **410** signals are different. Note also that any amplitude, frequency or phase may be used in the above formulas.

The accuracy of the measurement depends on the size of the following value:

$$[(f_1A_1\cos(\theta_1))^2-(f_2A_2\cos(\theta_2))^2]$$

If the value is sufficiently large, the measurement will be more accurate. While known approaches have an accuracy of approximately 10 ps rms, this embodiment of the method of measuring jitter has an accuracy of approximately 0.1 ps rms.

In step **620**, the external jitter is calculated from the internal jitter determined in step **614** and the overall jitter. Assuming no correlation between the noise sources, the external jitter is given by Equation (9):

$$j_{external} = \sqrt{j_{overall}^2 - j_{internal}^2} \quad (9)$$

Also, the external jitter induced noise is given by Equation (10):

$$n_{j,external} = \sqrt{2}\pi A f_{in} j_{external} \quad (10)$$

where 'A' is the input amplitude and 'f' is the input frequency.

Finally, in step **622**, the SNR is calculated from the external jitter from step **620**. The SNR is calculated by calibrating out the effects of the external jitter. The true SNR of the data converter **102** is given by Equation (11):

$$SNR_{true} = 10\log\left(\frac{A^2/2}{N^2 - n_{j,external}^2}\right) \quad (11)$$

While a known method may estimate the SNR of a 12 bit 66 MSPS communication ADC at a frequency of 16 MHz to be approximately 58 dBs, applying the method of jitter correction to the calculation of the SNR of the same ADC may yield an SNR value of approximately 63 dBs

A technical advantage of the present invention is that, unlike the measurements of known approaches, the calculation of overall jitter and internal jitter does not include system noise, resulting in a more accurate assessment of jitter, approximately 0.1 ps rms accuracy. The exclusion of system noise also results in more accurate assessment of signal-to-noise ratio. Another technical advantage of the present invention is that it does not require jitterless components to determine the overall jitter and internal jitter of a data converter. Practically jitterless components are often expensive and fail to meet the requirements needed to measure the jitter of a communications data converter. Therefore, the present invention allows for a more accessible, more accurate calculation of jitter, resulting in a more accurate test of a data converter.

Although an embodiment of the invention and its advantages are described in detail, a person skilled in the art could make various alternations, additions, and omissions without departing from the spirit and scope of the present invention as defined by the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A system for measuring jitter, the system comprising:

a signal generator operable to output a signal;

a data converter coupled to the signal generator, and operable to periodically measure the signal near maximum slew rate points of the signal to generate a first measurement set and to periodically measure the signal

near minimum slew rate points of the signal to generate a second measurement set; and

circuitry coupled to the data converter, for computing a measurement of jitter using the first measurement set and the second measurement set.

2. The system of claim 1 wherein the data converter is an analog-to-digital converter.

3. The system of claim 1 wherein the signal generator is a sine wave generator.

4. The system of claim 1 wherein the signal generator is a square wave generator.

5. The system of claim 1 further comprising a clock source coupled to the data converter, wherein the clock source is operable to output a clock signal to the data converter and is synchronized with the signal generator.

6. The system of claim 1 further comprising a clock source coupled to the data converter, wherein the clock source is operable to output a clock signal to the data converter and is phase locked with the signal generator.

7. The system of claim 1 wherein:

the variance of the first measurement set represents overall jitter and system noise;

the variance of the second measurement set represents system noise; and

the overall jitter is computable using the variance of the second measurement set and the variance of the first measurement set.

8. A method for measuring jitter, the method comprising:

inputting a signal into a data converter;

generating a first measurement set by periodically measuring the signal near its maximum slew rate points using the data converter;

generating a second measurement set by periodically measuring the signal near its minimum slew rate points using the data converter; and

computing the jitter using the first measurement set and the second measurement set.

9. The method of claim 8 wherein the data converter is an analog-to-digital converter.

10. The method of claim 8 wherein the signal is a sine wave.

11. The method of claim 8 further comprising inputting a clock signal into the data converter, wherein the clock signal is synchronized with the signal.

12. The method of claim 8 further comprising inputting a clock signal into the data converter, wherein the clock signal is phase-locked with the signal.

13. The method of claim 8 wherein the step of computing comprises:

computing the variance of the first measurement set, wherein the variance of the first measurement set represents overall jitter and system noise;

computing the variance of the second measurement set, wherein the variance of the second measurement set represents system noise; and

computing the overall jitter using the variance of the second measurement set and the variance of the first measurement set.

14. The method of claim 8 wherein the step of computing comprises:

computing the variance of the first measurement set using a first histogram of the first measurement set, wherein the variance of the first measurement set represents overall jitter and system noise;

computing the variance of the second measurement set using a second histogram of the second measurement set, wherein the variance of the second measurement set represents system noise; and

computing the overall jitter using the variance of the second measurement set and the variance of the first measurement set.

15. The method of claim 8 wherein the step of computing comprises:

computing the variance of the first measurement set using a Fourier transform of the first measurement set, wherein the variance of the first measurement set represents overall jitter and system noise;

computing the variance of the second measurement set using a Fourier transform of the second measurement set, wherein the variance of the second measurement set represents system noise; and

computing the overall jitter using the variance of the second measurement set and the variance of the first measurement set.

16. A system for measuring jitter, the system comprising:

a signal generator operable to generate a signal;

a splitter coupled to the signal generator and operable to split the signal into an input signal and a clock signal;

a data converter coupled to the splitter and operable to periodically measure the input signal near its maximum slew rate points using the clock signal to generate a first data set and to periodically measure the input signal using the clock signal near its minimum slew rate points to generate a second data set; and

circuitry, coupled to the data converter, f or computing the jitter using the first data set and the second data set.

17. The system of claim 11 wherein the data converter is an analog-to-digital converter.

18. The system of claim 11 wherein the signal generator is a sine wave generator.

19. The system of claim 11 wherein the signal generator is a square wave generator.

20. The system of claim 16 wherein:

the variance of the first data set represents internal jitter and system noise;

the variance of the second data set represents system noise; and

the internal jitter is computable using the variance of the second data set and the variance of the first data set.

21. A method for measuring external jitter, the method comprising:

measuring the overall jitter by:

inputting a signal into a data converter;

generating a first measurement set representing overall jitter and system noise by measuring the signal using the data converter;

generating a second measurement set representing system noise by measuring the signal using the data converter; and

computing the overall jitter using the first measurement set and the second measurement set;

measuring the internal jitter by:

providing a signal;

splitting the signal into an input signal and a clock signal;

inputting the input signal into a data converter;

providing the clock signal into the data converter;

generating a first data set representing internal jitter and system noise;

generating a second data set representing system noise; and

computing the external jitter using the first data set and the second data set; and

calculating the external jitter using the overall jitter and the internal jitter.

22. A method for measuring signal-to-noise ratio, the method comprising:

measuring the overall jitter by:

inputting a signal into a data converter;

generating a first measurement set representing overall jitter and system noise by measuring the signal using the data converter;

generating a second measurement set representing system noise by measuring the signal using the data converter; and

computing the overall jitter using the first measurement set and the second measurement set;

measuring the internal jitter by:

providing a signal;

splitting the signal into an input signal and a clock signal;

inputting the input signal into a data converter;

providing the clock signal into the data converter;

generating a first data set representing internal jitter and system noise;

generating a second data set representing system noise; and

computing the external jitter using the first data set and the second data set;

calculating the external jitter using the overall jitter and the internal jitter; and

calculating the signal-to-noise ratio using the external jitter.

* * * * *

【図8】

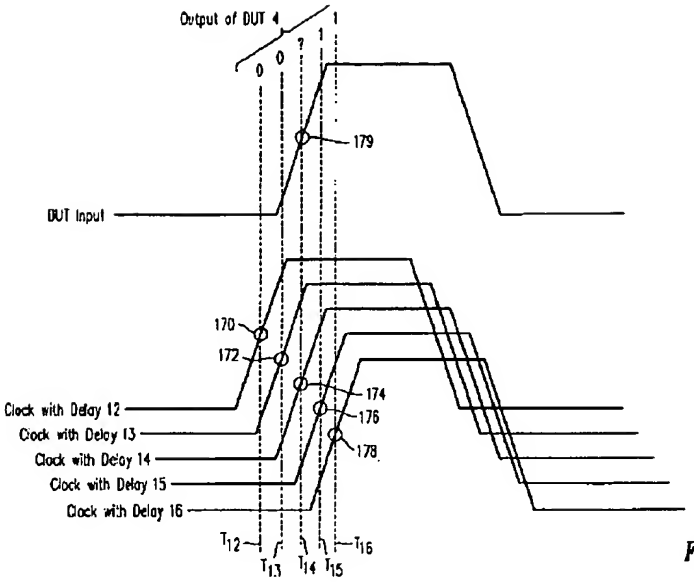

Output of DUT 4
0
0
?
1
1
179
DUT Input
170
172
174
176
178
Clock with Delay 12
Clock with Delay 13
Clock with Delay 14
Clock with Delay 15
Clock with Delay 16
T12
T13
T14
T15
T16

FIG. 8